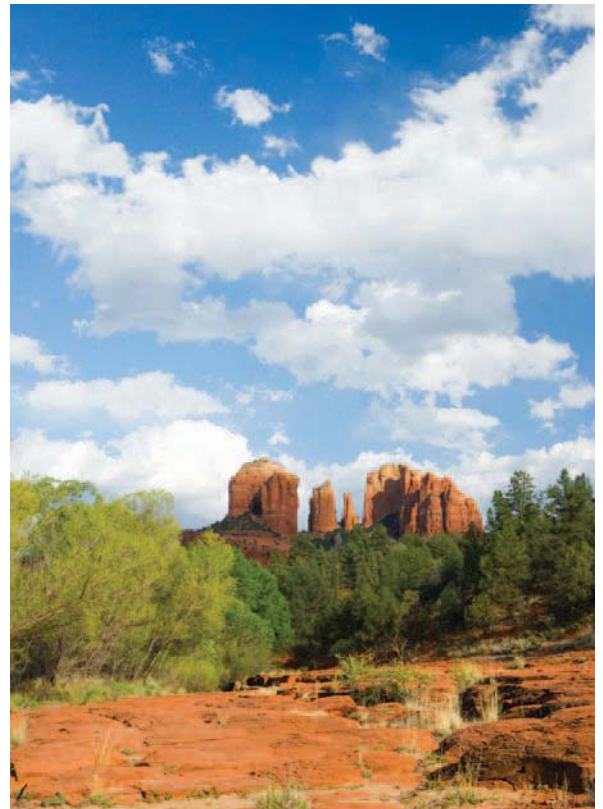


HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series Printer Software Technical Reference



www.hp.com/support/cljcp3525

HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series

Software Technical Reference



Copyright and license

©2008 Copyright Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P.

Reproduction, adaptation or translation without prior written permission is prohibited, except as allowed under the copyright laws.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice.

The only warranties for HP products and services are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty. HP shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein.

Edition 1, 8/2008

Trademark credits

Adobe®, Adobe Photoshop®, Acrobat®, and PostScript® are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

ENERGY STAR and the ENERGY STAR mark are registered U.S. marks.

FireWire® FireWire is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Microsoft®, Windows®, Windows NT®, and Windows® XP are U.S. registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

PANTONE® is the property of Pantone, Inc.

Intel®, Pentium®, and Intel® Core™ are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation or its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries.

UNIX® is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

Windows Vista® is either a registered trademark or trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Table of contents

1 Purpose and scope

| | |
|---|----|
| Introduction | 1 |
| HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series | 3 |
| Product comparison | 6 |
| Printing-system software | 7 |
| System requirements | 7 |
| Supported operating systems | 7 |
| Print driver support in other operating systems | 8 |
| Availability | 8 |
| Printing-system software on the Web | 8 |
| In-box printing-system software CD | 9 |
| Documentation availability | 15 |
| User documentation | 16 |
| HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series User Guide | 16 |
| HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series Install Notes | 17 |
| Show Me How | 17 |
| Product Tutorial | 18 |
| Administrator documentation | 18 |
| HP Embedded Web Server User Guide | 19 |
| HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide | 19 |
| Color Printing Access and Usage | 19 |
| HP Driver Preconfiguration User Guide | 19 |

2 Software description

| | |
|---|----|
| Introduction | 21 |
| Windows printing-system software features | 22 |
| Printing system and installer | 22 |
| HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series printing-system software CD for Windows systems | 22 |
| Installer features | 25 |
| HP Color LaserJet print drivers | 25 |
| HP PCL 6 Print Driver, PCL 5 Universal Print Driver, and PS Universal Print Driver | 25 |
| Print-driver version numbers for Windows operating systems | 26 |

| | |
|---|----|
| Driver Configuration for Windows | 27 |
| Driver autoconfiguration | 27 |
| Bidirectional communication | 27 |
| Enterprise AutoConfiguration | 27 |
| Update Now | 29 |
| HP Driver Preconfiguration | 30 |
| Lockable features | 32 |
| Continuous export | 32 |
| HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool | 33 |
| Color Access Control | 34 |
| International Color Consortium profiles | 36 |
| PANTONE color profiles | 37 |
| HP Easy Printer Care | 38 |
| Installation | 38 |
| Access | 38 |
| Find Other Printers | 40 |
| HP Easy Printer Care – Overview tab | 45 |
| HP Easy Printer Care – Support tab | 50 |
| Device Management | 52 |
| Troubleshooting and Help | 53 |
| Embedded Web server | 54 |
| HP Web Jetadmin | 55 |
| Font support | 56 |
| Basic fonts | 56 |
| Default fonts | 56 |
| HP Driver Deployment Utility | 62 |

3 Installing Windows printing-system components

| | |
|--|-----|
| Introduction | 71 |
| General Microsoft Windows installation instructions | 72 |
| Microsoft Windows installation for direct connections | 72 |
| Install from the printing-system CD | 72 |
| Install the print driver using the Microsoft Add Printer Wizard | 72 |
| Use an existing port for a direct connection | 73 |
| Create a new TCP/IP port for a direct connection | 80 |
| Print sever connection | 84 |
| Microsoft Windows installation for computers on a network | 88 |
| Point and Print installation for Windows 2000, XP, Server 2003, Server 2008, and Vista | 94 |
| Detailed MS Windows installation instructions | 96 |
| Perform the recommended print driver installation using the HP Driver Installation Utility (HPDIU) | 96 |
| Use the Back, Next, Finish, and Cancel buttons | 104 |

| | |
|---|-----|
| Performing an advanced print driver installation using the HP Driver Installation Utility (HPDIU) | 105 |
| Set a default printer | 114 |
| Uninstall instructions | 115 |

4 HP PCL 6 Print Driver for Windows

| | |
|--|-----|
| Introduction | 117 |
| Access print drivers | 118 |
| Printing Preferences driver tabs | 118 |
| Properties driver tabs | 119 |
| Help system | 120 |
| “What's this?” Help | 120 |
| Incompatible Print Settings messages | 120 |
| Advanced tab features | 122 |
| Paper/Output | 122 |
| Copy Count | 123 |
| Graphic | 123 |
| Image Color Management | 123 |
| True Type Font | 123 |
| Document Options | 123 |
| Advanced Printing Features | 124 |
| Print Optimizations | 124 |
| Printer Features | 124 |
| Layout Options | 125 |
| Printing Shortcuts tab features | 126 |
| Use defined printing shortcuts | 127 |
| General Everyday Printing | 127 |
| Paper type | 127 |
| Paper sizes | 128 |
| Paper source | 129 |
| Orientation | 130 |
| Print on both sides | 130 |
| Pages per sheet | 130 |
| Two-sided (Duplex) Printing | 130 |
| Envelopes | 131 |
| Booklet Printing | 131 |
| Factory Defaults | 131 |
| Document preview image | 131 |
| Create a custom printing shortcut | 132 |
| Paper/Quality tab features | 134 |
| Paper Options | 135 |
| Paper sizes | 135 |
| Custom Paper Size | 136 |
| Name | 136 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| Paper size | 137 |
| Units | 137 |
| Custom width and height control limits | 137 |
| Paper source | 138 |
| Paper type | 138 |
| Special pages | 140 |
| Covers | 140 |
| Print pages on different paper | 140 |
| Insert blank or preprinted pages | 141 |
| Chapter separator pages | 142 |
| Document preview image | 143 |
| Print Quality | 144 |
| Print Quality drop-down menu | 144 |
| Effects tab features | 145 |
| Resizing Options | 145 |
| Actual Size | 146 |
| Print Document On | 146 |
| Scale to Fit | 146 |
| % of Actual Size | 146 |
| Document preview image | 147 |
| Watermarks | 147 |
| Current watermarks | 148 |
| Watermark Message | 149 |
| Message Angle | 149 |
| Font Attributes | 149 |
| Default watermark settings | 151 |
| Finishing tab features | 152 |
| Document Options | 152 |
| Print on Both Sides | 153 |
| Print on both sides automatically | 153 |
| Print on both sides manually | 154 |
| Flip Pages Up | 155 |
| Booklet Layout | 156 |
| Book and Booklet Printing | 156 |
| Pages per Sheet | 157 |
| Print Page Borders | 157 |
| Page Order | 157 |
| Document preview image | 158 |
| Orientation | 158 |
| Job Storage tab features | 160 |
| Status group box | 162 |
| Job Storage Mode | 162 |
| Off | 162 |
| Proof and Hold | 162 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| Personal Job | 163 |
| Quick Copy | 163 |
| Stored Job | 163 |
| PIN to print | 164 |
| Job Notification Options | 164 |
| User Name | 164 |
| Job Name | 165 |
| Use job-storage features when printing | 165 |
| Release a job-storage print job | 166 |
| Delete a job-storage print job | 166 |
| Color tab features | 167 |
| Color Options | 168 |
| Automatic | 168 |
| Manual | 168 |
| General | 170 |
| Neutral Grays | 170 |
| Halftone | 170 |
| Color Themes | 171 |
| Default (sRGB) | 171 |
| Photo (sRGB) | 171 |
| Photo (Adobe RGB 1998) | 171 |
| Vivid (sRGB) | 171 |
| None | 171 |
| Custom Profile | 171 |
| Document preview image | 172 |
| Services tab features | 173 |
| Internet Services | 173 |
| Device services | 174 |
| Device Settings tab features | 175 |
| Form to Tray Assignment | 175 |
| Font Substitution Table | 176 |
| External Fonts | 177 |
| Installing external fonts | 178 |
| Removing external fonts | 179 |
| Installable Options | 179 |
| Automatic Configuration | 179 |
| Tray 3 | 180 |
| Duplex Unit (for 2-Sided Printing) | 180 |
| Allow Manual Duplexing | 180 |
| Printer Hard Disk | 180 |
| Job Storage | 180 |
| Job Separator | 180 |
| Mopier Mode | 180 |
| Mopier mode and collation | 181 |

| | |
|--------------------------|-----|
| About tab features | 182 |
|--------------------------|-----|

5 HP Universal Print Drivers for Windows — PS and PCL 5

| | |
|--|-----|
| Introduction | 183 |
| Access to print drivers | 185 |
| Printing Preferences driver tabs | 185 |
| Properties driver tabs | 186 |
| Help system | 187 |
| What's this? Help | 187 |
| Options Cannot be Combined messages | 187 |
| Advanced tab features | 188 |
| Paper/Output | 189 |
| Copy Count | 189 |
| Graphic | 190 |
| Image Color Management | 190 |
| True Type Font | 190 |
| Document Options | 190 |
| Advanced Printing Features | 190 |
| Print Optimizations – PCL 5 Universal Print Driver only | 191 |
| PostScript Output Options – PS Universal Print Driver only | 191 |
| Printer Features | 192 |
| Layout Options | 192 |
| Printing Shortcuts tab features | 194 |
| Factory Defaults | 195 |
| User Guide Print Settings | 195 |
| Document preview image | 195 |
| Paper/Quality tab features | 196 |
| Paper Options | 197 |
| Paper sizes | 197 |
| Custom Paper Size | 198 |
| Name | 198 |
| Paper size | 198 |
| Units | 198 |
| Custom width and height control limits | 199 |
| Paper source | 199 |
| Paper type | 199 |
| Special pages | 201 |
| Covers | 201 |
| Print pages on different paper | 201 |
| Document preview image | 202 |
| Print Quality | 203 |
| Print Quality | 203 |
| Gloss Level | 203 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| Gloss Level driver settings | 203 |
| Effects tab features | 204 |
| Resizing Options | 204 |
| Actual Size | 205 |
| Print Document On | 205 |
| Scale to Fit | 205 |
| % of Actual Size | 205 |
| Document preview image | 206 |
| Watermarks | 206 |
| Current watermarks | 207 |
| Watermark Message | 208 |
| Message Angle | 208 |
| Font Attributes | 208 |
| Default watermark settings | 210 |
| Finishing tab features | 211 |
| Document Options | 211 |
| Print on Both Sides | 212 |
| Print on both sides automatically | 212 |
| Print on both sides manually | 213 |
| Flip Pages Up | 214 |
| Booklet layout | 215 |
| Book and Booklet Printing | 215 |
| Pages per Sheet | 216 |
| Print Page Borders | 216 |
| Page Order | 216 |
| Document preview image | 217 |
| Orientation | 217 |
| Job Storage tab features | 219 |
| Status group box | 221 |
| Job Storage Mode | 221 |
| Off | 221 |
| Proof and Hold | 221 |
| Personal Job | 222 |
| Quick Copy | 222 |
| Stored Job | 222 |
| PIN to print | 223 |
| Job Notification Options | 223 |
| User Name | 223 |
| Job Name | 224 |
| Use job-storage features when printing | 224 |
| Release a job-storage print job | 225 |
| Deleting a job-storage print job | 225 |
| Color tab features | 226 |
| Color Options | 227 |

| | |
|---|-----|
| Automatic | 227 |
| Manual | 227 |
| General | 229 |
| Neutral Grays | 229 |
| Halftone | 229 |
| Color Themes | 230 |
| RGB Color | 230 |
| Default (sRGB) | 230 |
| Photo (sRGB) | 230 |
| Photo (Adobe RGB 1998) | 230 |
| Vivid (sRGB) | 230 |
| None | 230 |
| Custom Profile | 231 |
| Document preview image | 231 |
| Services tab features | 232 |
| Internet Services | 232 |
| Device Settings tab features | 234 |
| Form to Tray Assignment | 235 |
| Font Substitution Table | 236 |
| PS Universal Print Driver Device Settings | 237 |
| Available PostScript Memory | 237 |
| Output Protocol | 238 |
| Send Ctrl-D Before Each Job | 238 |
| Send Ctrl-D After Each Job | 238 |
| Convert Gray Text to PostScript Gray | 238 |
| Convert Gray Graphics to PostScript Gray | 238 |
| Add Euro Currency Symbol to PostScript Fonts | 239 |
| Job Timeout | 239 |
| Wait Timeout | 239 |
| Minimum Font Size to Download as Outline | 239 |
| Maximum Font Size to Download as Outline | 239 |
| Installable Options | 239 |
| Postscript Passthrough – PS Universal Print Driver only | 240 |
| JPEG Passthrough – PS Universal Print Driver only | 240 |
| Mopier Mode | 240 |
| Mopier mode and collation | 240 |
| Automatic Configuration | 241 |
| About tab features | 242 |
| | |
| 6 Macintosh software and utilities | 243 |
| Introduction | 243 |
| Supported Macintosh operating systems | 244 |
| Macintosh system requirements | 244 |

| | |
|---|-----|
| Printing-system software for Macintosh | 244 |
| PDEs | 244 |
| HP Embedded Web Server | 244 |
| Install notes | 244 |
| Online help | 244 |
| Screen fonts | 244 |
| Install and uninstall the Macintosh printing system | 245 |
| HP LaserJet software CD, Macintosh partition | 245 |
| Install the HP LaserJet printing-system software for the Macintosh OS | 245 |
| General installation instructions | 245 |
| Mac OS X installation | 246 |
| Main Install dialog box sequence | 246 |
| Setup instructions | 253 |
| Setting up a printer with Mac OS X v10.4, v10.5, and later | 253 |
| Setting up a printer with Mac OS X v10.3.9 | 255 |
| Troubleshooting the product setup | 257 |
| Uninstall the Macintosh printing system | 257 |
| Availability | 259 |
| HP Printer Utility for Macintosh | 260 |
| Access to the HP Printer Utility | 260 |
| Supplies Status | 261 |
| Device Information | 262 |
| HP Support | 262 |
| Color Usage | 263 |
| File Upload | 264 |
| Upload Fonts | 265 |
| Remote firmware update by using the HP Printer Utility | 265 |
| Duplex mode | 266 |
| Trays Configuration | 267 |
| Stored Jobs | 268 |
| E-mail Alerts | 268 |
| Network Settings | 269 |
| Supplies Management | 271 |
| Protect Direct Ports | 272 |
| Additional Settings | 272 |

7 Engineering Details

| | |
|---|-----|
| Introduction | 275 |
| Remote firmware update | 276 |
| Determining the current level of firmware | 276 |
| Downloading the new firmware from the HP Web site | 276 |
| Downloading the new firmware to the product | 276 |
| Printer messages during the firmware update | 277 |

| | |
|---|------------|
| Downloading custom color profiles | 278 |
| Remote firmware update by using FTP through a browser | 279 |
| Remote firmware update by using FTP on a direct network connection | 280 |
| Windows operating systems | 280 |
| Macintosh operating systems | 281 |
| Remote firmware update through a local Windows port | 282 |
| Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, or Windows Server 2008 | 282 |
| Remote firmware update through a USB port | 283 |
| Remote firmware update through a Windows network | 283 |
| Remote firmware update for UNIX systems | 284 |
| Remote firmware update by using the LPR command | 284 |
| HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility | 285 |
| Remote firmware update through HP Web Jetadmin | 288 |
| Printing print-ready documents | 290 |
| Print-ready file printing by using FTP through a browser | 290 |
| Print-ready file printing by using FTP on a direct network connection | 290 |
| Windows operating systems | 291 |
| Macintosh operating systems | 292 |
| Print-ready printing by using a local Windows port | 292 |
| Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008, or Windows Vista | 293 |
| Print-ready file printing in a Windows network | 293 |
| Print-ready file printing in UNIX systems | 293 |
| Print-ready file printing by using the LPR command | 293 |
| Media attributes | 295 |
| Paper sources and destinations | 295 |
| Paper-source commands | 295 |
| Driver-supported paper sizes | 296 |
| Driver-supported paper types | 298 |
| Custom paper sizes | 299 |
| Paper-type commands | 299 |
| Index | 301 |

List of tables

| | | |
|------------|--|-----|
| Table 1-1 | Software technical reference overview | 1 |
| Table 1-2 | HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series supported languages | 9 |
| Table 1-3 | Driver Languages | 11 |
| Table 1-4 | Installer component languages | 12 |
| Table 1-5 | Documentation languages | 13 |
| Table 1-6 | Documentation availability | 15 |
| Table 2-1 | Availability of automatic discovery and driver configuration through bidirectional communication in Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008, or Windows Vista | 27 |
| Table 2-2 | EAC availability in Microsoft Windows and Microsoft Share | 28 |
| Table 2-3 | EAC availability in Novell Netware environments | 29 |
| Table 2-4 | Operating systems that support HP Driver Preconfiguration | 32 |
| Table 2-5 | Color access control tools | 34 |
| Table 2-6 | Default fonts | 56 |
| Table 2-7 | Additional PS emulation fonts | 58 |
| Table 4-1 | PCL 6 custom paper sizes | 137 |
| Table 4-2 | Font Attribute settings for new and preset watermarks | 151 |
| Table 4-3 | Page orientation | 156 |
| Table 4-4 | Driver mopier mode and collation settings | 181 |
| Table 5-1 | HP PS Universal Print Driver and HP PCL 5 Universal Print Driver custom paper sizes | 199 |
| Table 5-2 | Font Attribute settings for new and preset watermarks | 210 |
| Table 5-3 | Page orientation | 214 |
| Table 5-4 | Driver mopier mode and collation settings | 241 |
| Table 6-1 | Adding a product in Macintosh operating systems | 246 |
| Table 7-1 | Troubleshooting a firmware update | 277 |
| Table 7-2 | Troubleshooting a firmware update failure | 277 |
| Table 7-3 | Update messages | 278 |
| Table 7-4 | HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series paper sources and destinations | 295 |
| Table 7-5 | Paper-source commands | 295 |
| Table 7-6 | Supported paper and print paper sizes | 296 |
| Table 7-7 | Supported envelopes and postcards | 297 |
| Table 7-8 | Tray 1 paper information | 298 |
| Table 7-9 | Tray 3 paper information | 298 |
| Table 7-10 | HP PCL 6 print driver custom paper sizes | 299 |
| Table 7-11 | paper-type commands | 299 |

List of figures

| | | |
|-------------|---|----|
| Figure 1-1 | Installation software CD – User Documentation screen | 16 |
| Figure 1-2 | Installation software CD – Administrator Documentation screen | 18 |
| Figure 2-1 | Installation software CD browser | 23 |
| Figure 2-2 | My HP Printers screen | 39 |
| Figure 2-3 | Step 1 of 3: Start Search screen | 40 |
| Figure 2-4 | Advanced Search Settings screen | 41 |
| Figure 2-5 | Searching for printers, please wait... screen | 41 |
| Figure 2-6 | Step 2 of 3: Verify Printer Found screen | 42 |
| Figure 2-7 | Step 2 of 3: Select Printers screen | 42 |
| Figure 2-8 | Step 3 of 3: Customize Settings screen | 43 |
| Figure 2-9 | Alert Settings screen | 43 |
| Figure 2-10 | My HP Printers – HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product | 44 |
| Figure 2-11 | Overview tab | 45 |
| Figure 2-12 | HP Easy Printer Care Help screen | 46 |
| Figure 2-13 | Supplies Ordering screen | 48 |
| Figure 2-14 | Transfer printer information to HP SureSupply? screen | 49 |
| Figure 2-15 | Welcome to HP SureSupply screen | 50 |
| Figure 2-16 | Support tab | 51 |
| Figure 2-17 | Support Help screen | 52 |
| Figure 2-18 | HP Proactive Support dialog box – HP Easy Printer Care | 53 |
| Figure 2-19 | Package Source | 64 |
| Figure 2-20 | Network Settings | 65 |
| Figure 2-21 | HP DDU Driver Configuration settings | 67 |
| Figure 3-1 | Add Printer Wizard — Local or Network Printer screen | 74 |
| Figure 3-2 | Add Printer Wizard — Select a Printer Port screen | 75 |
| Figure 3-3 | Add Printer Wizard — Install Printer Software screen | 76 |
| Figure 3-4 | Add Printer Wizard — Install from Disk screen | 76 |
| Figure 3-5 | Add Printer Wizard — Install Printer Software, screen 2 | 77 |
| Figure 3-6 | Add Printer Wizard — Name Your Printer screen | 78 |
| Figure 3-7 | Add Printer Wizard — Printer Sharing screen | 79 |
| Figure 3-8 | Add Printer Wizard — Print Test Page screen | 80 |
| Figure 3-9 | Local or Network Printer screen | 81 |
| Figure 3-10 | Select a Printer Port screen | 82 |
| Figure 3-11 | Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port screen | 82 |

| | | |
|-------------|--|-----|
| Figure 3-12 | Add Port screen | 83 |
| Figure 3-13 | Add Printer Wizard — Local or Network Printer screen | 85 |
| Figure 3-14 | Add Printer Wizard — Specify A Printer screen | 86 |
| Figure 3-15 | Add Printer Wizard — Find Printers screen | 87 |
| Figure 3-16 | Add Printer Wizard — Default Printer screen | 87 |
| Figure 3-17 | Add Printer Wizard — Browse for Printer screen | 88 |
| Figure 3-18 | Software Installation — License Agreement screen | 89 |
| Figure 3-19 | Software Installation — Device Connection screen | 90 |
| Figure 3-20 | Device Connection — Devices Found screen | 91 |
| Figure 3-21 | Software Installation — Device Connection screen 2 | 92 |
| Figure 3-22 | Software Installation — Driver Installation Complete screen 1 | 93 |
| Figure 3-23 | Software Installation — Driver Installation Complete screen 2 | 94 |
| Figure 3-24 | Software Installation — Initial screen | 97 |
| Figure 3-25 | Software Installation — License Agreement screen | 98 |
| Figure 3-26 | Software Installation — Device Connection screen | 99 |
| Figure 3-27 | Software Installation — Devices Found screenSoftware Installation — Devices Found screen | 100 |
| Figure 3-28 | Software Installation — Device Connection screen 2 | 101 |
| Figure 3-29 | Software Installation — Driver Installation Complete screen 1 | 102 |
| Figure 3-30 | Software Installation — Driver Installation Complete screen 2 | 103 |
| Figure 3-31 | Additional Options | 104 |
| Figure 3-32 | Installation Cancelled dialog box | 105 |
| Figure 3-33 | Software Installation — Initial screen | 106 |
| Figure 3-34 | Software Installation — Advanced Installation Options screen | 107 |
| Figure 3-35 | Software Installation — License Agreement screen | 108 |
| Figure 3-36 | Software Installation — Device Connection screen | 109 |
| Figure 3-37 | Software Installation — Devices Found | 110 |
| Figure 3-38 | Software Installation — Device Connection screen 2 | 111 |
| Figure 3-39 | Software Installation — Driver Installation Complete screen | 112 |
| Figure 3-40 | Software Installation — Driver Installation Complete screen 2 | 113 |
| Figure 3-41 | Software Installation — Additional Options screen | 114 |
| Figure 3-42 | Uninstall | 115 |
| Figure 4-1 | An Incompatible Print Settings message | 120 |
| Figure 4-2 | The default appearance of the Advanced tab | 122 |
| Figure 4-3 | Printing Shortcuts tab | 126 |
| Figure 4-4 | Document preview image | 132 |
| Figure 4-5 | Printing Shortcuts dialog box | 132 |
| Figure 4-6 | Printing Shortcuts tab – custom shortcut | 133 |
| Figure 4-7 | Paper/Quality tab | 134 |
| Figure 4-8 | Paper Options group box | 135 |
| Figure 4-9 | Custom Paper Size dialog box | 136 |
| Figure 4-10 | Print pages on different paper | 141 |
| Figure 4-11 | Insert blank or preprinted pages | 142 |
| Figure 4-12 | Chapter separator pages | 143 |

| | | |
|-------------|---|-----|
| Figure 4-13 | Effects tab | 145 |
| Figure 4-14 | Preview images – Legal on Letter; Scale to Fit off (left) and on (right) | 146 |
| Figure 4-15 | Watermark Details dialog box | 148 |
| Figure 4-16 | Finishing tab | 152 |
| Figure 4-17 | Print on Both Sides Instructions dialog box | 155 |
| Figure 4-18 | Page-order preview images | 158 |
| Figure 4-19 | Job Storage tab | 161 |
| Figure 4-20 | Color tab | 167 |
| Figure 4-21 | Color Settings dialog box | 169 |
| Figure 4-22 | Services tab | 173 |
| Figure 4-23 | Device Settings tab | 175 |
| Figure 4-24 | Font Substitution Table | 177 |
| Figure 4-25 | HP Font Installer dialog box | 178 |
| Figure 4-26 | About tab | 182 |
| Figure 5-1 | An Options cannot be combined message | 187 |
| Figure 5-2 | The default appearance of the Advanced tab – PS Universal Print Driver | 188 |
| Figure 5-3 | The default appearance of the Advanced tab – PCL 5 Universal Print Driver | 189 |
| Figure 5-4 | Printing Shortcuts tab | 194 |
| Figure 5-5 | Document preview image | 195 |
| Figure 5-6 | Paper/Quality tab | 196 |
| Figure 5-7 | Paper Options group box | 197 |
| Figure 5-8 | Print pages on different paper — First, or Last | 202 |
| Figure 5-9 | Effects tab | 204 |
| Figure 5-10 | Preview images – Legal on Letter; Scale to Fit off (left) and on (right) | 205 |
| Figure 5-11 | Watermark Details dialog box | 207 |
| Figure 5-12 | Finishing tab | 211 |
| Figure 5-13 | Print on Both Sides Instructions dialog box | 214 |
| Figure 5-14 | Page-order preview images | 217 |
| Figure 5-15 | Job Storage tab | 220 |
| Figure 5-16 | Color tab | 226 |
| Figure 5-17 | Color Settings dialog box | 228 |
| Figure 5-18 | Services tab | 232 |
| Figure 5-19 | Device Settings tab – PS Universal Print Driver | 234 |
| Figure 5-20 | Device Settings tab – PCL 5 Universal Print Driver | 235 |
| Figure 5-21 | Font Substitution Table | 237 |
| Figure 5-22 | About tab | 242 |
| Figure 6-1 | HP CLJ CP3525 CD-ROM icon | 246 |
| Figure 6-2 | HP Color LaserJet CP3525 screen | 247 |
| Figure 6-3 | HP LaserJet for Macintosh installer startup-screen dialog box | 247 |
| Figure 6-4 | ReadMe dialog box | 248 |
| Figure 6-5 | License dialog box | 248 |
| Figure 6-6 | Agree/Disagree dialog box | 249 |
| Figure 6-7 | Select Destination dialog box | 249 |
| Figure 6-8 | Installation Type dialog box | 250 |

| | | |
|-------------|---|-----|
| Figure 6-9 | HP LaserJet Installer dialog box (custom install) | 251 |
| Figure 6-10 | Authenticate dialog box | 251 |
| Figure 6-11 | Installing dialog box | 252 |
| Figure 6-12 | Finish Up dialog box | 253 |
| Figure 6-13 | Supplies Status screen | 261 |
| Figure 6-14 | Device Information screen | 262 |
| Figure 6-15 | HP Online Support screen | 262 |
| Figure 6-16 | Print Color Usage Job Log screen | 263 |
| Figure 6-17 | File Upload screen | 264 |
| Figure 6-18 | Upload Fonts screen | 265 |
| Figure 6-19 | Trays Configuration screen | 267 |
| Figure 6-20 | Enable Job Storing screen | 268 |
| Figure 6-21 | E-mail Alerts screen | 269 |
| Figure 6-22 | IPv4 Settings screen | 269 |
| Figure 6-23 | Bonjour Settings screen | 270 |
| Figure 6-24 | Replace Supplies screen | 271 |
| Figure 6-25 | Protect Direct Ports screen | 272 |
| Figure 6-26 | Additional Settings screen | 272 |
| Figure 7-1 | HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility screen 1 | 286 |
| Figure 7-2 | HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility screen 2 | 286 |
| Figure 7-3 | HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility progress screen | 287 |
| Figure 7-4 | HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility complete screen | 287 |

1 Purpose and scope

Introduction

This software technical reference (STR) provides information about and troubleshooting tips for the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series printing-system software.

This STR is prepared in an electronic format to serve as a quick-reference tool for Customer Care Center (CCC) agents, support engineers, system administrators, information technology (IT) personnel, and HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product end users, as appropriate.

The following information is included:

- Descriptions of drivers and platforms, with system modifications
- Procedures for installing and uninstalling software components
- Descriptions of various topics that are associated with the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product, including engineering details

The following table describes the structure of this STR.

Table 1-1 Software technical reference overview

| Chapter | Content |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Chapter 1, Purpose and scope | <p>This chapter contains basic information about the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product and its software:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Overview of the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product• Printing-system software overview, including the following topics:<ul style="list-style-type: none">◦ System requirements◦ Supported operating systems◦ Availability• HP LaserJet software documentation |
| Chapter 2, Software description | <p>This chapter provides an overview of the printing-system software installer and print drivers.</p> <p>This chapter also contains general information about optional software features.</p> <p>The following topics are included:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Driver configuration for Windows®• International Color Consortium (ICC) profiles |

Table 1-1 Software technical reference overview (continued)

| Chapter | Content |
|--|---|
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• PANTONE® color profiles• HP Easy Printer Care• HP Embedded Web Server• HP Web Jetadmin |
| Chapter 3, Installing Windows printing-system components | This chapter provides instructions for installing the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product in Windows operating systems by using various installation methods. |
| Chapter 4, HP PCL 6 Print Driver for Windows | <p>This chapter provides detailed descriptions of the HP PCL 6 Print Driver for Windows 2000, Windows® XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Vista®.</p> <p>This chapter also contains information about using job-storage features when printing, including the following topics:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Releasing a job-storage print job• Deleting a job-storage print job |
| Chapter 5, HP Universal Print Drivers for Windows – PS and PCL 5 | This chapter provides detailed descriptions of the HP PostScript (PS) Universal Print Driver and the HP PCL 5 Universal Print Driver for Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Vista. |
| Chapter 6, Macintosh software and utilities | This chapter provides Instructions for installing the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product in Macintosh operating systems and information about the printing-system software. The HP Printer Utility for Macintosh is also described. |
| Chapter 7, Engineering details | <p>This chapter contains information about the following special topics:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Remote firmware update• Printing print-ready documents• Media attributes |

For additional information about the location of information within these chapters, see the table of contents. An index is provided in the back of this STR.

Additional detailed information about the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series printing-system software is published in an addendum to this STR. The following information is available only in the addendum:

- Descriptions of known software issues and solutions
- Printing system reports

HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series





The following table contains descriptions of the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product features that are discussed. Product configurations might vary among countries/regions.

| | |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Speed and throughput | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Print up to 30 pages per minute (ppm) on letter-size paper and 30 ppm on A4-size paper.• As quick as 12 seconds to print the first page• Recommended maximum monthly print volume of 5,000 pages• A 515 megahertz (MHz) microprocessor |
| Resolution | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 600 dots per inch (dpi) with Image Resolution Enhancement technology 3600 for optimum overall imaging• 1200 x 600 dpi for detailed line work and small text |
| Memory | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• HP Color LaserJet CP3525: 256 MB of random-access memory (RAM), expandable to 1 gigabyte (GB) by adding into the open DIMM slot 200-pin small outline dual inline memory modules (DDR2 SODIMM) that support 128 MB, 256 MB, 512 MB, or 1 GB of RAM. NOTE: If you install a 1 GB DIMM in the open slot, the total amount of memory available is 1 GB.• HP Color LaserJet CP3525n: 256 MB of random-access memory (RAM), expandable to 1 gigabyte (GB) by adding into the open DIMM slot 200-pin small outline dual inline memory modules (DDR2 SODIMM) that support 128 MB, 256 MB, 512 MB, or 1 GB of RAM. NOTE: If you install a 1 GB DIMM in the open slot, the total amount of memory available is 1 GB.• HP Color LaserJet CP3525dn: 384 MB of random-access memory (RAM), expandable to 1 gigabyte (GB) by replacing the original DIMM with 200-pin small outline dual inline memory modules (DDR2 SODIMM) that support 128 MB, 256 MB, 512 MB, or 1 GB of RAM. NOTE: If you install a 1 GB DIMM, the total amount of memory available is 1 GB. For the HP Color LaserJet CP3525dn model, you must replace the original 128 MB DIMM with a 1 GB DIMM to increase memory to 1 GB.• HP Color LaserJet CP3525x: 512 MB of random-access memory (RAM), expandable to 1 gigabyte (GB) by replacing the original DIMM with 200-pin small outline dual inline memory modules (DDR2 SODIMM) that support 128 MB, 256 MB, 512 MB, or 1 GB of RAM. NOTE: If you install a 1 GB DIMM, the total amount of memory available is 1 GB. For the HP Color LaserJet CP3525x model, you must replace one of the original 256 MB DIMMs with a 1 GB DIMM to increase memory to 1 GB.• Memory Enhancement technology (MEt) automatically compresses data to use RAM more efficiently. |
| User interface | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Four-line color graphical display on the control panel• An embedded Web server to gain access to support and order supplies (for network-connected products)• HP Easy Printer Care software (a Web-based status and troubleshooting tool)• Internet-enabled supply-ordering capabilities through HP Easy Printer Care software and embedded Web server |

| | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| Paper-handling | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Tray 1 (multipurpose tray): A multipurpose tray for paper, transparencies, labels, envelopes, and other paper types. The tray holds up to 100 sheets of paper, 50 transparencies, or 10 envelopes ● Tray 2: 250-sheet tray. ● Optional Tray 3: 500-sheet paper and heavy media tray, and an optional HP Postcard media insert. (Both are included with the HP Color LaserJet CP3525x printer.) Holds standard and custom-size paper. This tray automatically detects common paper sizes. ● Two-sided printing: The HP Color LaserJet CP3525dn printer and HP Color LaserJet CP3525x printer support automatic two-sided printing. The other models support manual two-sided printing. ● Standard output bin: The standard output bin is located on the top of the product. This bin can hold up to 250 sheets of paper. The product has a sensor that indicates when the bin is full. |
| Languages and fonts | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● HP Printer Control Language PCL 5, PCL 6, and HP postscript level 3 emulation ● Direct PDF ● 80 scalable TrueType PS typefaces |
| Print cartridges | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● For information regarding print cartridges, see www.hp.com/go/learnaboutsupplies. ● Authentic HP print cartridge detection ● Automatic toner strip remover ● This product uses the following consumable supplies: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ Standard black print cartridge: CE250A ◦ High-capacity black print cartridge: CE250X ◦ Cyan print cartridge: CE251A ◦ Yellow print cartridge: CE252A ◦ Magenta print cartridge: CE253A ◦ Toner collection unit: CE254A |
| Supported operating systems | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Microsoft® Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Vista, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Server 2008 ● Macintosh OS X v10.3.9, v10.4, v10.5, and later ● Novell NetWare ● Unix® ● Linux |
| Connectivity | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● USB 2.0 connection ● Host USB 2.0-like port for third-party connection ● Local area network (LAN) connector (RJ-45) for the embedded HP Jetdirect print server (not included with the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 printer) ● One enhanced input/output (EIO) slot |

| | |
|--------------------|---|
| Environment | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sleep setting saves energy • High content of recyclable components and materials • Instant-on fuser saves energy |
| Security | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Secure Disk Erase • Security lock (optional) • Job retention • User PIN authentication for stored jobs • IPsec security • HP encrypted High Performance EIO hard drive (optional) |
| Self-help | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Show-me-how pages that you can print from the control panel • Job aids for specific tasks available from www.hp.com/support/cljcp3525. • Animations and help on the control panel • Animations on the CD |

Product comparison

| Model | Features |
|---|--|
| HP Color LaserJet CP3525  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 100-sheet multipurpose input tray (Tray 1) • 250-sheet input tray (Tray 2) • 250-sheet, face-down output bin • Hi-speed USB 2.0 port • 256 megabytes (MB) of random access memory (RAM) |
| HP Color LaserJet CP3525n  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 100-sheet multipurpose input tray (Tray 1) • 250-sheet input tray (Tray 2) • 250-sheet, face-down output bin • Hi-speed USB 2.0 port • HP Jetdirect embedded print server for connecting to a 10/100Base-TX network • 256 megabytes (MB) of random access memory (RAM) |
| HP Color LaserJet CP3525dn  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 100-sheet multipurpose input tray (Tray 1) • 250-sheet input tray (Tray 2) • 250-sheet, face-down output bin • Hi-speed USB 2.0 port • HP Jetdirect embedded print server for connecting to a 10/100Base-TX network • 384 megabytes (MB) of random access memory (RAM) • Automatic two-sided printing |
| HP Color LaserJet CP3525x  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 100-sheet multipurpose input tray (Tray 1) • 250-sheet input tray (Tray 2) • 250-sheet, face-down output bin • 500-sheet paper and heavy media tray (Tray 3), including HP postcard media insert for 101.6 x 152.4 mm (4 x 6 in) paper • Hi-speed USB 2.0 port • HP Jetdirect embedded print server for connecting to a 10/100Base-TX network • 512 megabytes (MB) of random access memory (RAM) • Automatic two-sided printing |

Printing-system software

Topics:

- [System requirements](#)
- [Supported operating systems](#)
- [Availability](#)

System requirements

The system requirements for installing and using the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series printing-system software for Windows and Macintosh are as follows:

- Same system requirements for running the supported Windows operating system (OS)
- Latest operating system updates installed through Windows Update
- 500 MB of available hard-disk space
- Mac OS X v10.3.9, v10.4, v10.5, and later with 150 MB of free hard-disk space
- CD drive, DVD drive, or Internet connection
- Dedicated universal serial bus (USB 1.1 or 2.0) connectivity port or network connection

Supported operating systems

Windows operating systems provide full-featured support for the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product. Operating systems that are not described here provide varying levels of functionality.

Windows XP is used to denote Windows XP Home Edition, Windows XP Professional, and Windows XP Media Edition unless noted otherwise. Windows Vista is used to denote Windows Vista Home Basic, Windows Vista Home Premium, Windows Vista Business, and Windows Vista Ultimate unless noted otherwise.

The following operating systems support the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product:

- Windows 2000 (32-bit)
- Windows XP (32-bit and 64-bit)
- Windows Server 2003 (32-bit and 64-bit)
- Windows Server 2008 (32-bit and 64-bit)
- Windows Vista (32-bit and 64-bit)

In any of the supported operating systems, you must have administrator privileges to install the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series printing-system software.

For more information about the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product, go to the following Web site:

www.hp.com/support/cljcp3525

Print driver support in other operating systems

The HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product is also supported in the following operating environments:

- Mac OS X (v10.3.9 or later). For more information, go to the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/cljcp3525_software

- Linux. For more information, go to the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/linuxprinting

- UNIX. For more information, go to the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/jetdirectunix_software

- UNIX model scripts. Available *only* on the Web at the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/unixmodelscripts.

- Windows Terminal Server

- Windows Cluster Server 8

- HP OpenVMS. For more information, go to the following Web site:

h71000.www7.hp.com/openvms/print/

- Tru64 UNIX printing. For more information, go to the following Web site:

h30097.www3.hp.com/printing/

- SAP printing. For more information, go to the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/sap/print

Availability

This section provides information about the availability of the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series printing-system software and related software and firmware. Printing-system software on a CD is available from HP fulfillment centers. For more information, go to the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/cljcp3525_cdrom

Printing-system software on the Web

All software that is contained on the installation CD is also available on the Web.

Web deployment is the preferred method for obtaining the latest software. The Web site offers an option for automatic e-mail notification about new software releases.



NOTE: This STR describes drivers that are shipped with the printing-system software CD. This STR does *not* describe any drivers that might be released for use by support personnel.

The HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series printing-system software is available for download at the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/cljcp3525_software

In-box printing-system software CD

The software CD for the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product contains a variety of files for installing the printing-system software on the computer. This section describes the files that are available on the software CD and provides additional information about support and availability.

The HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series printing-system software CD is divided into two partitions, one for Windows operating systems and one for Macintosh operating systems.

The files in each partition include documentation files and files that are required in order to install and uninstall the printing-system components.

HP LaserJet software CD, Windows partition

 **NOTE:** For information about the contents of the Macintosh partition of the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series printing-system software CD, see [HP LaserJet software CD, Macintosh partition on page 245](#).

The root directory in the Windows partition of the software CD contains the AUTORUN.EXE file, the SETUP.EXE file, and the following directories and support files:

- Autorun
- Driver Deployment Utility
- Drivers
- Fonts
- HPSU
- Manuals
- PortMonitor
- Shop for HP Supplies
- Temp

The printing-system files for each language reside in the following directories:

- Drivers
- Manuals

CD versions and language support

The HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series printing-system software CD is available in a single version which contains the following components and languages.

Table 1-2 HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series supported languages

| Language | Two-letter abbreviation | HP-preferred name | File designation |
|-----------|-------------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| Arabic | AR | Arabic | ARWW |
| Bulgarian | BG | Bulgarian | BGWW |
| Catalan | CA | Catalan | CAWW |
| Croatian | HR | Hrvatski | HRWW |
| Czech | CS | Cestina | CSWW |

Table 1-2 HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series supported languages (continued)

| Language | Two-letter abbreviation | HP-preferred name | File designation |
|---------------------|-------------------------|---------------------|------------------|
| Danish | DA | Dansk | DAWW |
| Dutch | NL | Nederlands | NLWW |
| English | EN | English | ENWW |
| Estonian | et | Eesti | ETWW |
| Finnish | FI | Suomi | FIWW |
| French | FR | Francais | FRWW |
| German | DE | Deutsch | DEWW |
| Greek | EL | Greek | ELWW |
| Hebrew | HE | Hebrew | HEWW |
| Hungarian | HU | Magyar | HUWW |
| Italian | IT | Italiano | ITWW |
| Japanese | JA | Japanese | JAWW |
| Korean | KO | Korean | KOWW |
| Latvian | LV | Latviski | LVWW |
| Lithuanian | LT | Lietuviskai | LTWW |
| Norwegian | NO | Norsk | NOWW |
| Polish | PL | Polski | PLWW |
| Portuguese | PT | Portugues | PTWW |
| Romanian | RO | Romanian | ROWW |
| Russian | RU | Russian | RUWW |
| Serbian | SR | Srpski | SRWW |
| Simplified Chinese | ZHCN | Simplified Chinese | ZHCN |
| Slovak | SK | Slovak | SKWW |
| Slovenian | SL | Slovenian | SLWW |
| Spanish | ES | Espanol | ESWW |
| Swedish | SV | Svenska | SVWW |
| Thai | TH | Thai | THWW |
| Traditional Chinese | ZHTW | Traditional Chinese | ZHTW |
| Turkish | TU | Turkce | TUWW |
| Ukrainian | UK | Ukrainian | UKWW |

Driver languages

The HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product provides driver support in the following languages.

Table 1-3 Driver Languages

| Component | Language list |
|---------------------------------|---|
| HP PCL 6 Print Driver | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Arabic |
| HP PCL 5 Universal Print Driver | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Bulgarian |
| HP PS Universal Print Driver | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Catalan• Czech• Danish• German• Greek• English• Spanish• Estonian• Finnish• French• Hebrew• Croatian• Hungarian• Italian• Japanese• Korean• Lithuanian• Latvian• Dutch• Norwegian• Polish• Portuguese• Romanian• Russian• Slovak• Slovenian• Serbian• Swedish• Thai• Turkish |

Table 1-3 Driver Languages (continued)

| Component | Language list |
|-----------|--|
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ukrainian • Simplified Chinese • Traditional Chinese |

Installer languages

The HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product provides installer component support in the following languages.

Table 1-4 Installer component languages

| Component | Language list |
|--|---|
| Administrator install | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Arabic |
| CD Browser | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Bulgarian |
| Common Windows Installer | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Catalan |
| Web Registration (with the following exceptions) | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Czech |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Arabic and Hebrew support in English only | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Danish |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Catalan support in Spanish only | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • German |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No support for Bulgarian, Estonian, Croatian, Lithuanian, Latvian, Romanian, Slovak, Slovenian, Serbian, Thai, Ukrainian | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Greek • English • Spanish • Estonian • Finnish • French • Hebrew • Croatian • Hungarian • Italian • Japanese • Korean • Lithuanian • Latvian • Dutch • Norwegian • Polish • Portuguese |

Table 1-4 Installer component languages (continued)

| Component | Language list |
|-----------|---|
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Romanian • Russian • Slovak • Slovenian • Serbian • Swedish • Thai • Turkish • Ukrainian • Simplified Chinese • Traditional Chinese |

Documentation languages

The HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product provides documentation in the following languages.

Table 1-5 Documentation languages

| Component | Language list |
|---|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series User Guide (.PDF file)</i> • <i>HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series User Guide (.CHM file)</i> • <i>HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series Embedded Web Server User Guide (.PDF file)</i> • <i>HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series Driver Preconfiguration User Guide</i> (Available in English only) • <i>HP JetDirect Administrator's Guide (.PDF file)</i> (with the following exceptions) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ Catalan documentation in Spanish only ◦ No documentation in Arabic, Bulgarian, Czech, Greek, Hebrew, Croatian, Estonian, Lithuanian, Latvian, Romanian, Slovak, Slovenian, Serbian, Turkish, Ukrainian • <i>HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series Install Notes (.HTML file)</i> • <i>HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series Installer Customization Guide</i> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Arabic • Bulgarian • Catalan • Czech • Danish • German • Greek • English • Spanish • Estonian • Finnish • French • Hebrew • Croatian • Hungarian • Italian • Japanese |

Table 1-5 Documentation languages (continued)

| Component | Language list |
|-----------|---|
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Korean• Lithuanian• Latvian• Dutch• Norwegian• Polish• Portuguese• Romanian• Russian• Slovak• Slovenian• Serbian• Swedish• Thai• Turkish• Ukrainian• Simplified Chinese• Traditional Chinese |

Documentation availability



NOTE: For information about language support for the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product, see [CD versions and language support on page 9](#).

The following table lists the availability of HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series printing-system documentation by operating system.

Table 1-6 Documentation availability

| Document | Windows 2000/XP/ Server 2003/Server 2008/Vista | Macintosh |
|---|--|-----------|
| <i>HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series User Guide</i> (.PDF file) | x | x |
| <i>HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series User Guide</i> (.CHM file) | x | |
| <i>HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series Install Notes</i> | x | |
| <i>Show Me How</i> content | x | |
| <i>HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series Embedded Web Server User Guide</i> | x | x |
| <i>HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide</i> | x | x |
| <i>Color Printing Access and Usage</i> | x | |
| <i>HP Driver Preconfiguration User Guide</i> | x | |
| <i>Installer Customization Guide</i> | x | |

Access to HP LaserJet documents depends on the type of document and its location:

- Some documents can be opened from the CD Browser.
- Some documents appear on the software CD and can be opened by navigating to the folder where they reside.
- Some documents are available on the Web through links in the CD Browser or CD folders.

Documents are available in the following file formats:

- **Portable Document Format (.PDF).** The HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series printing-system software CD includes Adobe® Acrobat® Reader for viewing online documentation.
- **Compiled HTML (.CHM).** When you click a documentation link to a .CHM document, a Microsoft HTML Viewer opens the file on the computer screen.
- **Hypertext Markup (.HTM).** When you click a documentation link to an .HTM document, a Web browser opens the file on the computer screen.
- **Rich Text format (.RTF).** This is a text file. You can navigate to files and open them in Microsoft Word or Microsoft WordPad.

Documentation for the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series is divided into the following categories:

- [User documentation](#)
- [Administrator documentation](#)

User documentation

The following figure shows the **User Documentation** screen, which appears when you click **User Documentation** on the main screen of the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series printing-system software CD.

Figure 1-1 Installation software CD – User Documentation screen



HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series User Guide

The *HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series User Guide* describes the basic product features.


To view this guide from the software CD, follow these steps:

1. In the main screen of the CD browser, click **User Documentation**.
2. Click **User Guide (Interactive)**.

The guide opens as a Windows Help file (.CHM file). This readable, onscreen version of the guide is provided in accordance with the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA).

You can also gain access to the file by following these steps:

1. Insert the software CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the Manuals\<language> folder.
3. Open the file that has the appropriate file name:

 **NOTE:** The "XXWW" in the file name corresponds to the language. For instance, the file name for the French version of the guide is CP3525_USE_FRWW.CHM


The *HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series User Guide* is provided as a .PDF file, which is viewable with Adobe Reader and which you can print. To print the guide, follow these steps:

1. In the CD Browser, click **User Documentation**.
2. Click **User Guide (Printer Friendly)**. The guide opens.
3. Print the guide.

You can also gain access to the file by following these steps:

1. Insert the software CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the Manuals\<language> folder.
3. Open the file that has the appropriate file name:

CP3525_USE_XXWW.PDF

 **NOTE:** The "XXWW" in the file name corresponds to the language. For instance, the file name for the French version of the guide is CP3525_USE_FRWW.PDF

When you have the file open, you can click **File** and then click **Save As** to save a copy of the file to another location.

HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series Install Notes

The *HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series Install Notes* (in .HTM format) contain important information about product features, instructions for installing the printing-system software, and technical assistance.


To view this guide from the software CD, follow these steps:

1. In the main screen of the CD browser, click **User Documentation**.
2. Click **Install Notes**.

You can also gain access to the file by following these steps:


1. Insert the software CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the Manuals\<language> folder.
3. Open the file that has the appropriate file name:

CP3525_INSTALL-NOTE_XXWW.HTM

 **NOTE:** The "XXWW" in the file name corresponds to the language. For instance, the file name for the French version of the document is CP3525_INSTALL-NOTE_FRWW.HTM.

Show Me How

Click **Show Me How** on the **User Documentation** screen of the CD browser to connect to a Web page that provides step-by-step instructions for performing specific tasks, including clearing jams and loading trays.

 **NOTE:** The **Show Me How** information is only available online. Internet access is required.

Product Tutorial

Click **Product Tutorial** on the **User Documentation** screen of the CD browser to watch a short video that describes the product's features and capabilities.

You can also gain access to the video by following these steps:

1. Insert the software CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the Manuals\<language> folder.
3. Click on the file that has the appropriate file name:

LJCP3525.EXE

Administrator documentation

The following figure shows the **Administrator Documentation** screen.

To navigate to this screen, click **Advanced Install Options** on the main screen of the CD browser, and then click **Administrator Documentation**.

Figure 1-2 Installation software CD – Administrator Documentation screen



HP Embedded Web Server User Guide

The *HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series Embedded Web Server User Guide* (in .PDF format) provides information about device status, settings, and networking for the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product.

To link to this guide from the software CD, follow these steps:

1. In the main screen of the CD browser, click **Advanced Install Options**, and then click **Administrator Documentation**.
2. Click **Embedded Web Server Guide**.

HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide

The *HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide* is a network administrator's guide (in .PDF format) that contains information about connecting the product directly to a network.

To view this guide from the software CD, follow these steps:

1. In the main screen of the CD browser, click **Advanced Install Options**, and then click **Administrator Documentation**.
2. Click **HP Jetdirect Guide**.

You can also gain access to the file by following these steps:

1. Insert the software CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the Manuals\<language> folder.
3. Open the file that has the appropriate file name:

HPJDIAG_XXWW.PDF



NOTE: The "XXWW" in the file name corresponds to the language. In French, the file name is HPJDIAG_FRWW.PDF.

When you have the file open, you can click **File** and then click **Save As** to save a copy of the file to another location.

Color Printing Access and Usage

Use the **Color Printing Access and Usage** option (Internet access required) to enable or disable color printing and to track color usage.

To link to this guide from the software CD, follow these steps:

1. In the main screen of the CD browser, click **Advanced Install Options**, and then click **Administrator Documentation**.
2. Click **Color Printing Access and Usage**.

HP Driver Preconfiguration User Guide

The *HP Driver Preconfiguration User Guide* (in .PDF format) describes how to use the associated software utility, which allows IT administrators to customize print-driver settings before deploying them. For more information about HP driver preconfiguration, see [HP Driver Preconfiguration on page 30](#).

To view this guide from the software CD, follow these steps:

1. In the main screen of the CD browser, click **Advanced Install Options**, and then click **Administrator Documentation**.
2. Click **HP Driver Preconfiguration User Guide**.

You can also gain access to the file by following these steps:

1. Insert the software CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the Manuals\<language> folder.
3. Open the file that has the appropriate file name:

PRECONFIG_SUPPORT_XXWW.PDF



NOTE: The "XXWW" in the file name corresponds to the language. In French, the file name is PRECONFIG_SUPPORT_FRWW.PDF.

When you have the file open, you can click **File** and then click **Save As** to save a copy of the file to another location.

2 Software description

Introduction

The HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product comes with software and installers for Microsoft Windows and Apple Computer, Inc., Macintosh systems. Linux and UNIX systems are supported, and software is available on the Web. For information about specific system installers, drivers, and components, see the section that corresponds to that system. For information about Mac software, see [Macintosh software and utilities on page 243](#).

This section contains information about the following topics:

- [Windows printing-system software features](#)
- [Driver Configuration for Windows](#)
- [HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool](#)
- [Color Access Control](#)
- [International Color Consortium profiles](#)
- [PANTONE color profiles](#)
- [HP Easy Printer Care](#)
- [Embedded Web server](#)
- [HP Web Jetadmin](#)
- [Font support](#)
- [HP Driver Deployment Utility](#)

Windows printing-system software features

This section contains information about the following topics:

- [Printing system and installer](#)
- [HP Color LaserJet print drivers](#)

Printing system and installer

The following sections contain information about the printing-system software and the installer on the software CD that came with the product.

HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series printing-system software CD for Windows systems

For the Microsoft Windows environment (Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Vista), the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series printing-system software CD provides an interactive CD browser that you can use to install the print drivers and related components, and to gain access to online user documentation and optional HP software.

The following figure shows the main screen of the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series printing-system software CD (part of the interactive CD browser), which appears when you insert the printing-system software CD in a CD-ROM drive. If the screen does not appear when you insert the software CD, follow these steps to open the CD browser:

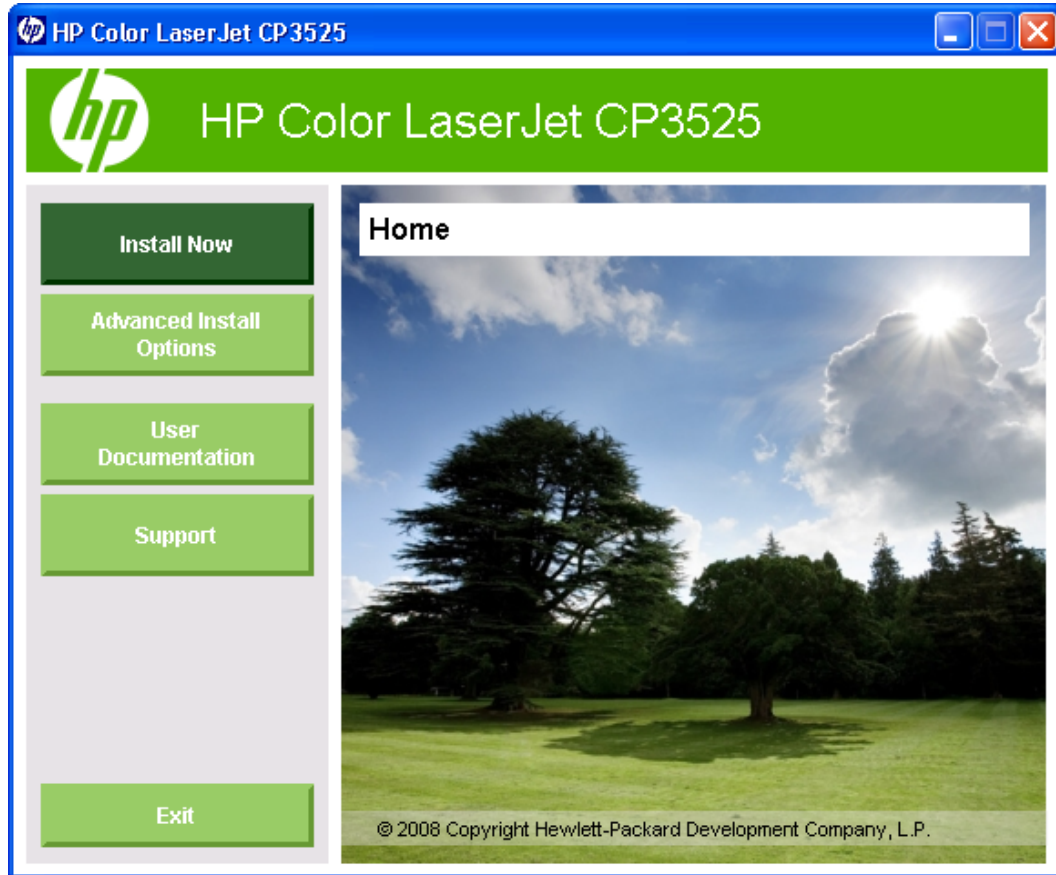
1. In Windows Vista, click the **Start** button, click **All Programs**, and then click **Accessories**.

For all other Windows operating systems, click **Start**.

2. Click **Run**.

3. Click **Browse....** and navigate to the root directory of the software CD.
4. Double-click the SETUP.EXE file to start the installer.

Figure 2-1 Installation software CD browser



The main screen of the software CD contains installation and documentation options in the left panel. As you move the cursor over each option, a description of the option appears under the product banner.

The following options are available on the main screen of the printing-system software CD.

- **Install Now.** The HP Driver Installation Utility (HPDIU) guides you through the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series printing-system software installation. When you click **Install Now**, only the HP PCL 6 driver, screen fonts, and user guide are installed.
- **Advanced Install Options.** Provides you with the flexibility to select the drivers and software components to install. The following options are available when you click this option:
 - **Install PCL 6 Driver**
 - **Install PS Driver**
 - **Install Documentation and Optional Software**
 - **Administrator Documentation.** Use this option to view the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series administrator documentation. The following document options are available:
 - Embedded Web Server Guide**
 - HP Jetdirect Guide**

Color Printing Access and Usage

HP Driver Preconfiguration User Guide

- **Administrator software.** Click this option to see a list of administrator software available for the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product. The following options are available:
 - HP Universal Print Driver.** Clicking this link redirects the browser to the HP Web site that provides more information about the HP Universal Print Driver and downloadable software.
 - Driver Deployment Utility.** Click this option to allow an administrator to create a driver install package for silent, unattended installation by end users.
 - HP Web Jetadmin.** Click this option to download HP Web Jetadmin software from the Web for a Web browser-based network-management tool designed for network administrators.
 - HP Easy Printer Care.** Use this option to download and install the HP Easy Printer Care software. This product management tool helps track and maintain the products by providing information about status, alert notifications, usage reports, and supplies ordering for up to 15 products.
- **User Documentation.** Use this option to view the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series user documentation. The following document options are available:
 - **User Guide (Interactive)**
 - **User Guide (Printer Friendly)**
 - **Install Notes**
 - **Show Me How**
 - **Product Tutorial** (video)
- **Support.** To increase productivity and get the most use from your HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product, the following links are available for these HP Web sites:
 - **Product Registration.** Register your product online, and then gain access to support and services, manage your profile, and sign up for free support alerts, driver notices, and personalized newsletters.
 - **Supplies.** Contains information about ordering HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product supplies.
 - **Product Information.** Contains support information and updates.
 - **hp.com.** Contains information about products and services, support, drivers, and HP online stores.

Installer features

The common installer is designed to provide a simple and consistent installation method for the product. The common installer is available for the Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Vista operating systems and offers the following features:

- The HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series printing-system software CD features an interactive software interface. See [HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series printing-system software CD for Windows systems on page 22](#).
- The network connection is integrated so that you can install drivers and connect to a networked product in a single process.
- After installation, the installer allows you to add additional drivers, documentation, and fonts.
- The **Additional Options** at the end of the installation process provides the opportunity to download the HP Easy Printer Care software, install HP Update and marketing resources software, check online for product-specific merchandise, as well as allow users to register their product using Web Registration.

All of the Windows system components are installed by using the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series printing-system installer. The installer automatically detects the language of choice and the operating system. You can select the type of installation that you prefer: **Install Now** (recommended installation) or **Advanced Install Options** (customized installation).

HP Color LaserJet print drivers

HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series print drivers provide the printing features and communication between the computer and the product. The software CD includes software for end users and network administrators who are working in the following operating environments:

- Windows 2000 (32-bit), Windows XP (32-bit and 64-bit), Windows Server 2003 (32-bit and 64-bit), Windows Server 2008 (32-bit and 64-bit), and Windows Vista (32-bit and 64-bit)
- Apple Mac OS X (v10.3.9 and later)

In Windows operating systems, automatic configuration, driver updates after a new configuration, and preconfiguration features are available with the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product.



NOTE: For additional information about installing the printing-system software, see the *HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series Install Notes* on the printing-system software CD.


All of the drivers provide access to the paper-handling and print-quality features.

HP PCL 6 Print Driver, PCL 5 Universal Print Driver, and PS Universal Print Driver

All of the Windows drivers are supported by Microsoft 32-bit operating systems. Separate versions of the HP PCL 6, PCL 5 Universal Print Driver, and PS Universal Print Driver are available for Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Vista 64-bit operating systems and are also included on the printing-system software CD.

The following drivers are available on the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series printing-system software CD:

- The HP PCL 6 Print Driver for Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Vista
- The HP PS Universal Print Driver for Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Vista


 **NOTE:** The HP PCL 5 Universal Print Driver for Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Vista is available at the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/cljcp3525_software

NOTE: If you select the recommended installation by clicking **Install Now** on the main screen of the CD browser, the HP PCL 6 Print Driver is installed by default.

Print-driver version numbers for Windows operating systems

Access to print-driver version numbers varies, depending on the operating system in which the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product is installed.

 **NOTE:** For a list of HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series print drivers, updated HP printing-system software, and product-support information, go to:

www.hp.com/go/cljcp3525_software

The Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Vista operating systems support the HP PCL 6, PCL 5 Universal Print Driver, and PS Emulation Universal Print Drivers. If you are using an HP print driver in a Windows environment, follow these steps to find driver-version information:

1. In Windows Vista, click the **Start** button, click **Control Panel**, click **Hardware and Sound**, and then click **Printers**.

In Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Server 2008, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.

In Windows 2000, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

2. Right-click the product icon.
3. Click **Properties**.
4. Click the **About** tab.

You can also gain information about driver versions by clicking the **About** button that appears on most driver tabs.

Driver Configuration for Windows

The HP print drivers feature bidirectional communication technology which, in supported environments, provide automatic discovery and driver configuration for product accessories at the time of installation.

Some accessories that are automatically discovered and configured include the duplexing unit, optional paper trays, printer hard disk, and dual inline memory modules (DIMMs).

Driver autoconfiguration

Automatic discovery and driver configuration through bidirectional communication occurs in the following circumstances:

- When a print driver is installed by using the installer
- When using the Update Now feature for a driver that is already installed

However, as shown in the following table, driver autoconfiguration and Update Now are *not* available in Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008, or Windows Vista operating systems over a direct connection when the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product is installed by using the Add Printer wizard.

Table 2-1 Availability of automatic discovery and driver configuration through bidirectional communication in Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008, or Windows Vista

| Connection type | Add Printer Wizard install | Common installer |
|-------------------|----------------------------|------------------|
| Network | Yes | Yes |
| Direct connection | No | Yes |

Bidirectional communication

In environments that support bidirectional communication, the computer communicates with the product during installation, determines the physical configuration, and then configures the driver accordingly.

Bidirectional communication is the capability of the product to respond to data inquiries from the computer and report information back, such as what type of print paper is available or what accessories are connected to the product. Bidirectional communication depends on the network operating system and on the type of connection that exists between the computer and the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series. If the connection does not have this capability (that is, if it has no bidirectional mode), it can only accept commands from the host and cannot report information back to the host computer.

Enterprise AutoConfiguration

Enterprise AutoConfiguration (EAC) uses bidirectional communication to provide autoconfiguration functionality for installation of the print driver over a network, whether you use the installer on the printing-system software CD or the Add Printer wizard to install the driver. Driver installation that includes EAC is configured with the same settings as the physical configuration of the product. Configuration occurs without user interaction.

If bidirectional-communication software has been installed previously, EAC is not activated, and the pre-existing bidirectional-communication software is used to configure the print driver.

If bidirectional communication software has not been installed, EAC installs bidirectional-communication software that allows it to communicate with the product and automatically match the print driver with the

actual product configuration. EAC is activated during installation of the driver or whenever the Update Now feature is used.

If the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product configuration changes after installation, the driver can be automatically updated with the new configuration in environments that support bidirectional communication by using the Update Now feature. For more information, see [Update Now on page 29](#).

The following tables show the availability of EAC for various operating systems and network environments that support bidirectional communication.

Table 2-2 EAC availability in Microsoft Windows and Microsoft Share

| Method | Connection type | | | Microsoft Share ¹ | | |
|-------------|-----------------|-----------|--------------|------------------------------|----|--|
| | | | | 2000 | XP | 2000/XP host with 2000/XP client/ Windows Server 2008/ Windows Vista |
| | Network | Jetdirect | TCP/IP | x | x | x |
| | | | IPX/SPX | x | x | x |
| | | Standard | TCP/IP (HP) | x | x | x |
| | | | TCP/IP (MS) | x | x | x |
| | | | IPX/SPX (HP) | x | x | x |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| Add Printer | Direct connect | Parallel | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | USB | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | Network | Jetdirect | | | |
| | | | TCP/IP | x | x | x |
| | | | IPX/SPX | x | x | x |
| | | | Standard | | | |
| | | | TCP/IP (HP) | x | x | x |
| | | | TCP/IP (MS) | x | x | x |
| | | | IPX/SPX (HP) | x | x | x |

¹ This column represents the following Microsoft Share configurations: Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008, or Windows Vista host with Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008, or Windows Vista client.

Table 2-3 EAC availability in Novell Netware environments

| Method | Connection type | | Novell | | |
|---------|-----------------|-------------|---------------|-----------|---------------|
| | | | Netware 4.x | | Netware 5.x |
| | | | Bindery queue | NDS queue | Bindery queue |
| Network | USB | Jetdirect | TCP/IP | x | x |
| | | | | | |
| | Standard | TCP/IP (HP) | x | x | x |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |


¹ Bidirectional functionality is supported only with the client software from Novell. It is not supported with Microsoft Client Service for NetWare.

Update Now

If you have modified the configuration of the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product since installation, the driver can be automatically updated with the new configuration in environments that support bidirectional communication. Use the Update Now feature to automatically reflect the new configuration in the driver.

For example, if the product is installed and an optional paper-handling accessory is added later, use the Update Now feature to query the product and update the settings to match the new product configuration.

The feature automatically updates the registry and changes the configuration information that appears on the **Device Settings** tab.

 **NOTE:** Depending on which settings were updated, the Update Now feature might change the configuration information that displays on the print-driver tabs, instead of (or in addition to) changing the information on the **Device Settings** tab.

NOTE: The Update Now feature is not supported in environments where shared Windows 2000 or Windows XP clients are connected to Windows 2000 or Windows XP hosts.

To activate the Update Now feature, follow these steps:

1. In Windows Vista, click the **Start** button, click **Control Panel**, click **Hardware and Sound**, and then click **Printers**.

In Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Server 2008, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.

In Windows 2000, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

2. Right-click the product name.
3. Click **Properties**.
4. Click **Device Settings**.
5. If necessary, click **Installable Options** to expand it and show the options.

6. In the **Automatic Configuration** drop-down menu, select **Update Now**.
7. Click **OK** to save the setting.

HP Driver Preconfiguration

HP Driver Preconfiguration is a software architecture and set of tools that permits HP printing-system software to be customized and distributed in managed corporate printing environments. Using HP Driver Preconfiguration, information technology (IT) administrators in corporate and enterprise environments can preconfigure the printing and device defaults for HP print drivers before installing the drivers in the network environment.

HP Driver Preconfiguration is most beneficial when configuring print drivers for multiple workstations or print servers for print queues that share the same configuration. Two types of features can be configured:

- device settings
- printing-preferences settings

The driver is configured to match the product hardware so that access to all of the product accessories through the driver is enabled correctly (for example, for duplexing units and additional input trays). Most driver-feature settings can also be configured.

HP Driver Preconfiguration configures the driver to match the accessories that are installed on the product, or to match the settings that IT administrators make in the configuration (.CFG) file (for example, optional trays, total amount of memory, job-storage settings, or mopier settings).

The preconfiguration process consists of three basic steps:

- driver acquisition
- driver preconfiguration
- driver installation and deployment

These steps can be accomplished in different ways, depending on the tool that is being used to define the configuration.

The configuration process for driver preconfiguration is supported through three distinct tools. All three are designed with the same basic user-interface (UI) controls for interacting with the .CFG file, but are packaged differently, either to support established product installation workflows or to leave the deployment and installation of the driver entirely up to the user. The following tools support driver preconfiguration:

- **HP Driver Configuration Editor.** The HP Driver Configuration Editor is a small, standalone, Windows-software program that the administrator can use to open the .CFG file that is associated with a particular driver and make modifications that are applied when that driver is installed on the target computer. It is intended for use in environments that have an established process for deploying drivers. This is the preconfiguration tool of choice to support any Novell or HP Print Server Appliance (PSA) Point and Print environments. It is used in the way that any ordinary Windows software program is used.

The HP Driver Configuration Editor is available at the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/hpdpc_sw

- **The HP Web Jetadmin Driver Configuration Plugin.** The HP Web Jetadmin provides a queue-creation program that can be used to create printer queues on Windows 2000, Windows XP,

Windows Server 2003, or Windows Server 2008. The HP Web Jetadmin Driver Configuration Plugin adds a number of screens to the existing queue-creation workflow from which the drivers that are being installed for the queues can be customized as part of the process. The plug-in is limited to Internet Explorer browsers. Netscape Navigator is not supported.

HP Web Jetadmin v10.0 is supported by the following:

- Windows XP Professional (with Service Pack 2 or higher)
- Windows Server 2003
- Windows Vista Business Edition
- Windows Vista Enterprise Edition



NOTE: Windows 2000 Professional with Service Pack 4 is supported as a Smart Client.

The HP Web Jetadmin print management features are supported by the following:

- Windows XP Professional (with Service Pack 2 or higher)
- Windows Server 2003
- Windows 2000 Professional
- Windows 2000 Server

HP Web Jetadmin v8.1 is supported by the following:

- Windows Server 2003 R2
- Sun's Java Runtime Environment (JRE) 1.5.0 08
- Windows XP Professional (with Service Pack 2 or higher)
- Windows Vista Business Edition
- Windows Vista Enterprise Edition
- Windows 2000 Professional
- Windows 2000 Server
- Windows 2000 Advanced Server
- Windows Service Pack 4 Update Rollup 1

The HP Web Jetadmin Driver Configuration Plugin is available at the following Web site:

www.hp.com/bizsupport/wja/live/manual/8.0/html/wjacomp_winnt.html

- **HP Driver Deployment Utility.** The HP Driver Deployment Utility (HP DDU) was created to simplify the deployment of print drivers onto a client computer. It is a simple utility that packages the print-driver files, and the code needed to deploy them, into 2 files: an .EXE file and a .CAB file. These files are run on the client computer to copy the print-driver files to the Windows driver store and, for network packages, to install the product. This utility is supported on the Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008, and Vista operating systems.

To gain access to the HP DDU, insert the software CD into the CD-ROM drive, and then navigate to the Driver Deployment Utility folder.

For more information about the HP DDU, refer to [HP Driver Deployment Utility on page 62](#)

For detailed information about gaining access to and installing these tools, see the **HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide** at the following Web site and click on the **Manuals** link.

www.hp.com/go/hpdpc_sw

Lockable features


The following driver features can be locked to prevent end-users from changing settings:

- **Print on Both Sides** (duplex). The options are **True** or **False**.
- **Print in Grayscale**. The options are **Disable** or **Enabled**.
- **Media Type**. The options include all the paper types that the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product supports.
- **Paper Source**. The options are **Printer Auto Select**, **Manual Feed (Tray 1)**, **Tray 1**, **Tray 2**. **Tray 3** is standard on the HP Color LaserJet CP3525x product model, and an option on the other HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series models.
- **Job retention mode**. The option is **Off**.

When a feature is locked, the selected default option is the only option that is available to users. Generally, the feature is unavailable in the driver UI after it has been locked.

Continuous export

The term "continuous export" refers to the ability of the print driver to copy the latest print-driver settings back to the working copy of the preconfiguration file. Using this feature, the exported values can be transferred when a compatible version of the print driver is used to upgrade the print driver. For instance, if the orientation is set to **Landscape** for a driver originally installed in Windows 2000, then the orientation setting automatically remains **Landscape** when the operating system is upgraded to Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, or Windows Server 2008. The continuous export feature functions transparently from the user's perspective and works only between print drivers of identical product models.

 **NOTE:** Not all of the driver parameters can be exported; however, the exportable components are always the same as the components that can be preconfigured.

The following table shows drivers and operating systems that support HP Driver Preconfiguration.

Table 2-4 Operating systems that support HP Driver Preconfiguration

| Driver | Windows 2000 | Windows XP | Windows Server 2003 | Windows Server 2008 | Windows Vista | Macintosh v.10.3.9 and later | Linux |
|---------------------------------|--------------|------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------|------------------------------|-------|
| HP PCL 6 Print Driver | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | NA | NA |
| HP PCL 5 Universal Print Driver | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | NA | NA |
| HP PS Universal Print Driver | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | NA | NA |

¹ NA: Not applicable; the driver is not supported in this operating system.

HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool

The HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool is a Web-based diagnostic software that you can use to determine whether you are using the correct and most current print driver for the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product. Two methods are available to gain access to the HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool:

1. Open an Internet browser.
2. Go to the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/drivercheck

Or, use this alternative method.

1. Open an Internet browser.
2. Go to the HP Business Support Center (BSC) at the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/bsc

3. Click the **self-help resources** link on the left navigation bar.
4. Click **automatic driver checker** to run the HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool.

When the HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool runs, the products that are currently installed on the computer appear in a list. When you select the HP product that you would like to check, the HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool gathers information about your product, drivers, and system setup in order to diagnose the software driver configuration and check the print driver. The tool then verifies whether you are using the latest driver, informs you if you are using an incorrect driver for the HP product, and lets you know if an updated driver version is available for the product. If an updated driver is available, you can download and install the latest driver version by clicking it.

The data that the HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool gathers is stored anonymously so that HP can analyze and continuously improve its diagnostic tools. No private data is gathered from the computer.

Color Access Control

The HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series has the ability to monitor and control color print-job use. For more information about color access control, go to the following Web site and look under **Learn More**.


www.hp.com/go/cac

The following table shows various tools that can be used to control color-printing access.

Table 2-5 Color access control tools

| Tool | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| HP Embedded Web Server | <p>The HP Embedded Web Server (HP EWS) is a Web-browser-based utility that provides an interface to the product that you can use to change product settings, including color access control settings. No special software needs to be installed or configured. It allows you to set color printing restrictions and view a log of color printing use. The HP EWS is designed for one-to-one product configuration monitoring and management.</p> <p>For more information, see Embedded Web server on page 54.</p> |
| HP Web Jetadmin | <p>The HP Web Jetadmin provides an interface to the product through a Web browser on single network-administration servers. Use HP Web Jetadmin to manage HP Jetdirect-connected products within an intranet.</p> <p>For more information, see the following Web site:</p> <p>www.hp.com/go/webjetadmin</p> |
| Color usage job log | <p>The color usage job log shows color and monochrome print job statistics for a product.</p> <p>For more information, see HP Easy Printer Care on page 38.</p> |
| Product control panel | <p>Use the product control panel to restrict color use in network-connected products.</p> <p>For more information, see the following procedure.</p> |

To restrict color-printing access to a network-connected HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series from the product control panel, follow these steps:

1. Press the **menu** button  to open the menus.
2. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to **CONFIGURE DEVICE**, and then press **OK**.
3. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to **SYSTEM SETUP**, and then press **OK**.

4. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to **RESTRICT COLOR USE**, and then press **OK**.
5. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to one of the following options, and then click **OK**:
 - **ENABLE COLOR**. This is the default setting. Use of color-printing features is unrestricted.
 - **COLOR IF ALLOWED**. Network administrators can use this setting to allow color-printing to certain users and restrict it for other users. User privileges can be set using HP EWS. For more information, see the *HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series Embedded Web Server User Guide*.
 - **DISABLE COLOR**. This setting denies the use of color-printing features to all users.

International Color Consortium profiles

HP provides cyan-magenta-yellow-black (CMYK) (HPCP3525C.ICC) and standard red-green-blue (sRGB) (HPCP3525R.ICC) International Color Consortium (ICC) custom profiles with the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product. The CMYK profile can only be used with a postscript driver; the sRGB profile can be used with any of the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series print drivers. The profiles are available at the following HP Web site:

www.hp.com/go/cljcp3525_software


The ICC profiles describe the way color is interpreted in the default CMYK and RGB modes. These profiles can be used for color conversions in a color-managed workflow. The sRGB profile matches the default RGB mode (sRGB), which is enabled with the **Default (sRGB)** color setting in either a PCL or postscript driver. The product interprets CMYK data according to the Specifications for Web Offset Publications (SWOP) simulation when **Default CMYK+** is the selected **CMYK Color** setting in the postscript driver, and a more accurate SWOP rendering can be produced by selecting the **SWOP** setting. This standard defines how a particular set of CMYK ink colors should behave. Emulation for Dainippon Press (DIC) and Euro-standard CMYK inks used in Asia and Europe are also available and can be selected from the print driver.

PANTONE color profiles

Most software programs that support the use of PANTONE colors for graphic objects include the PANTONE name in the postscript output along with the color values that are assigned to the object. Select a software program that uses a PANTONE palette in a CMYK workspace, and print with the HP PS Universal Print Driver in Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008, or Windows Vista.

When **SWOP** is selected as the **CMYK Color** setting, these CMYK values provide a good reproduction of the PANTONE 4C spot-color simulations.

Vector graphics, such as company logos that are created in PANTONE Application Palettes, can be imported into Microsoft Word, PowerPoint, or other Microsoft Office software programs. The color program must create an encapsulated postscript (.eps) file of the image that will be imported. Use the **Insert file** function to import the file into the Office document.

 **NOTE:** Cutting and pasting from the clipboard does not work. These tasks do not preserve the PANTONE name or the CMYK palette value.

HP Easy Printer Care

HP Easy Printer Care is a standalone software program that manages from one to 15 products. It enables you to view the status of all HP products, set up product and status alerts, generate printer usage reports, and reorder supplies.

 **NOTE:** At this time, the **HP Easy Printer Care Software** is only available on the Web at the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/easyprintercare

Or, on the printing-system CD, click **Advanced Install Options**, **Administrator software**, and then click **HP Easy Printer Care** to be redirected to the HP Web site.

Installation

The **HP Easy Printer Care Software** is only available on the Web at the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/easyprintercare

Follow the instructions on the web site for downloading and installing the software.

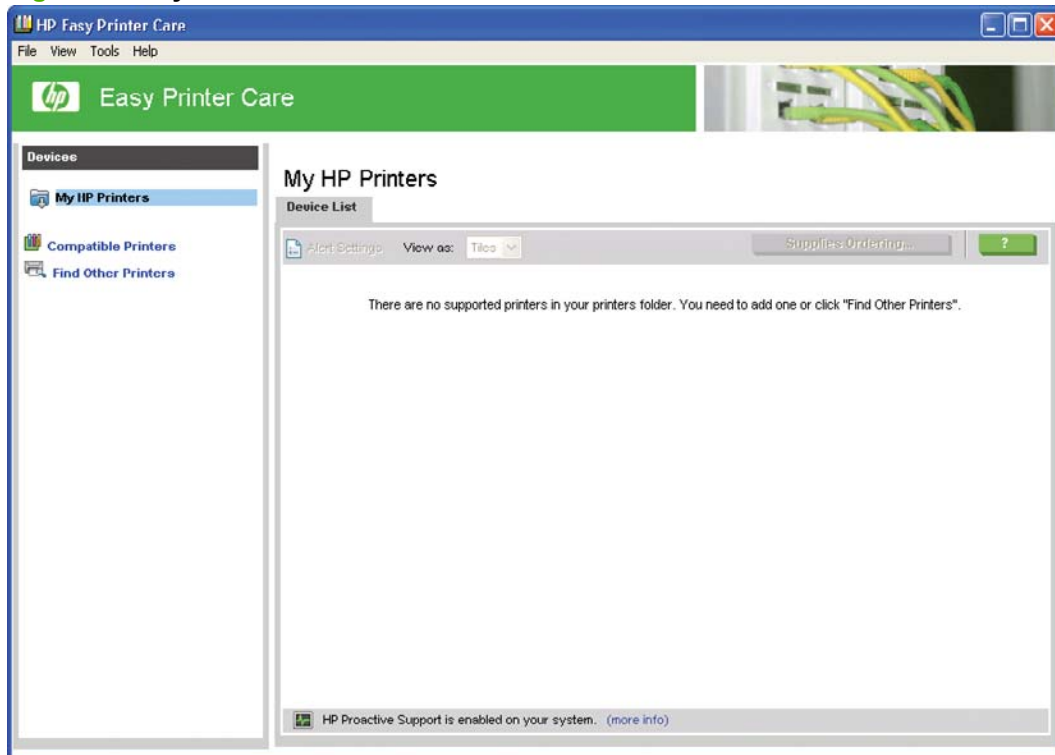
Access

To gain access to the HP Easy Printer Care once it has been installed, follow these steps:

1. Click **Start**.
2. Select **All Programs**.
3. Select **Hewlett-Packard**.

4. Select **HP Easy Printer Care**.
5. Click **Start HP Easy Printer Care**. The **My HP Printers** screen appears.

Figure 2-2 My HP Printers screen



If the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product is connected directly through a USB port, an icon for the product appears in the main pane of the **My HP Printers** screen. See [Figure 2-10 My HP Printers – HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product on page 44](#).

If the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product is connected over a network, click **Find Other Printers**.

Find Other Printers

Click **Find Other Printers** on the left pane of the **My HP Printers** screen to open the **Step 1 of 3: Start Search** screen.

Figure 2-3 Step 1 of 3: Start Search screen

The screenshot shows a window titled "HP Easy Printer Care" with a green header bar that says "Find Other Printers". Below the header, the text "Step 1 of 3: Start Search" is displayed. A paragraph follows: "To find other printers on your network and add them to your printer list, first select the type of search you want to perform." Below this, the instruction "Specify the type of network search to perform:" is shown. There are two radio button options: "Quick find (search for a specific IP address)" which is selected, and "General search (searches for all HP printers on your network)". Under the "Quick find" option, there is a text field labeled "Search for:" with the placeholder text "<Enter IP Address>". Below the radio buttons is a green button labeled "Advanced Search Settings...". At the bottom right of the window are two green buttons: "Next >" and "Cancel".

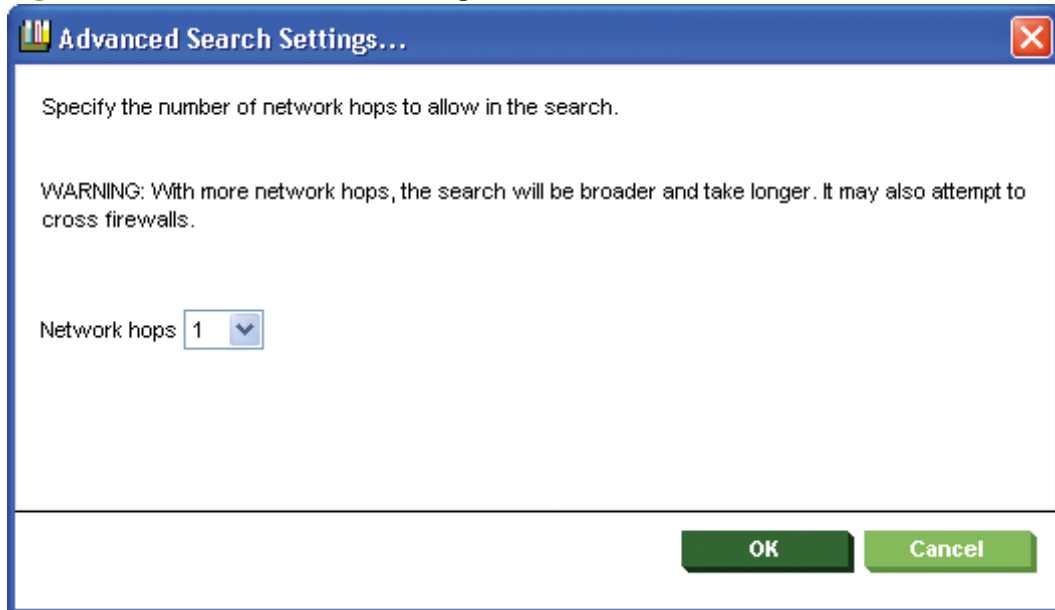
If you know the TCP/IP address of the product, type the address in the **Search for** field and then click **Next**.

To conduct a search for products over a network, select the **General search (searches for all HP printers on your network)** option.

Click **Advanced Search Properties** to open a screen that you can use to select the number of “hops” that the system makes. The **Advanced Search Settings** screen appears.

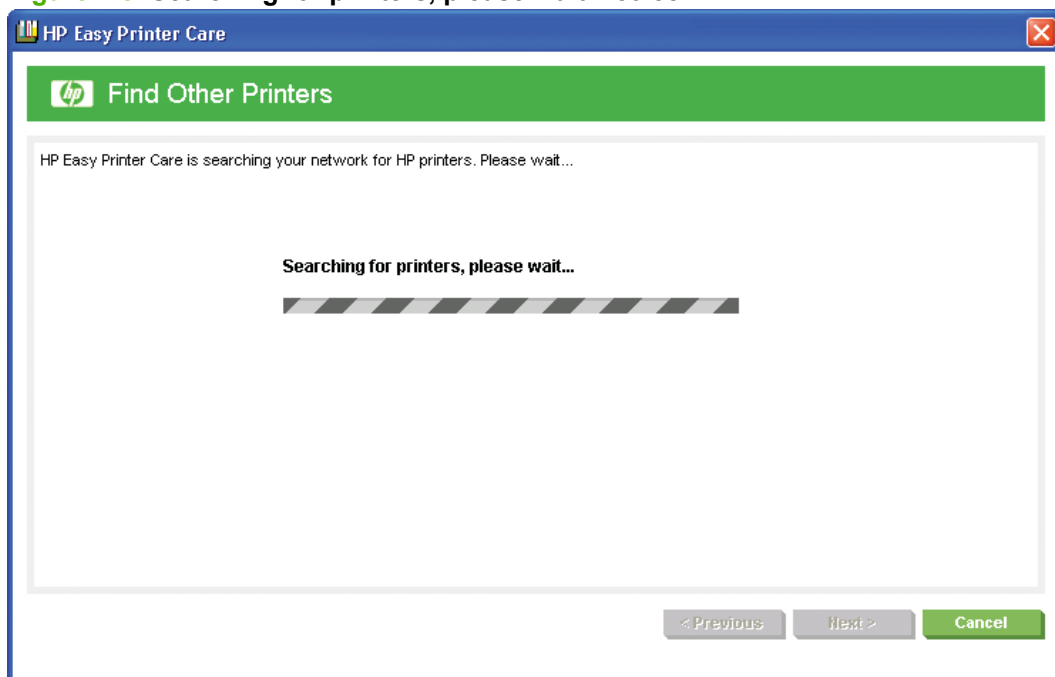
Click **Cancel** on any screen to return to the **My HP Printers** screen.

Figure 2-4 Advanced Search Settings screen



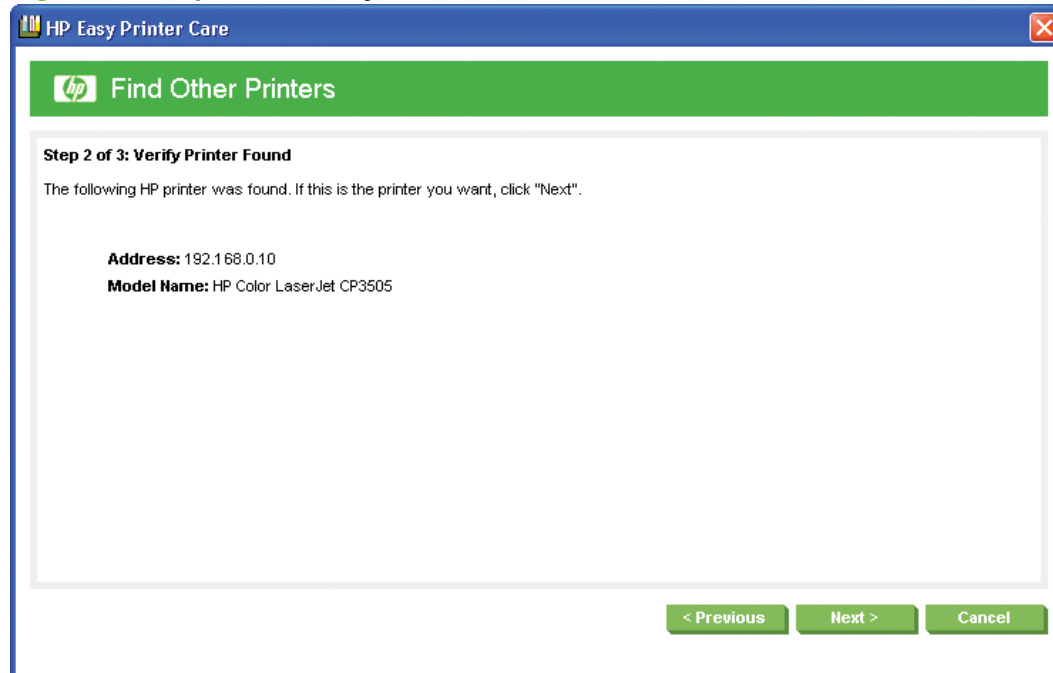
When you click **Next** on the **Find Other Printers** screen, the **Searching for printers, please wait...** screen appears.

Figure 2-5 Searching for printers, please wait... screen



When a product has been found, one of two screens appears: the **Step 2 of 3: Verify Printer Found** screen or the **Step 2 of 3: Select Printers** screen. The screens are shown in the following figures.

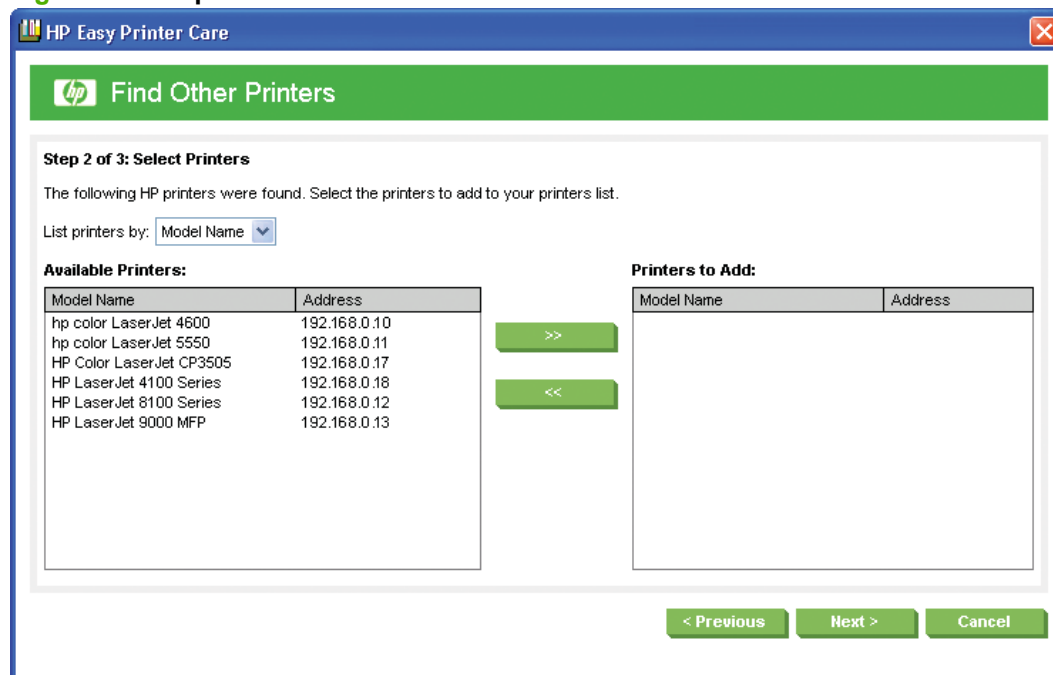
Figure 2-6 Step 2 of 3: Verify Printer Found screen



If the results do not list the product, click **Previous** to search again.

If the product that you want is listed, click **Next**.

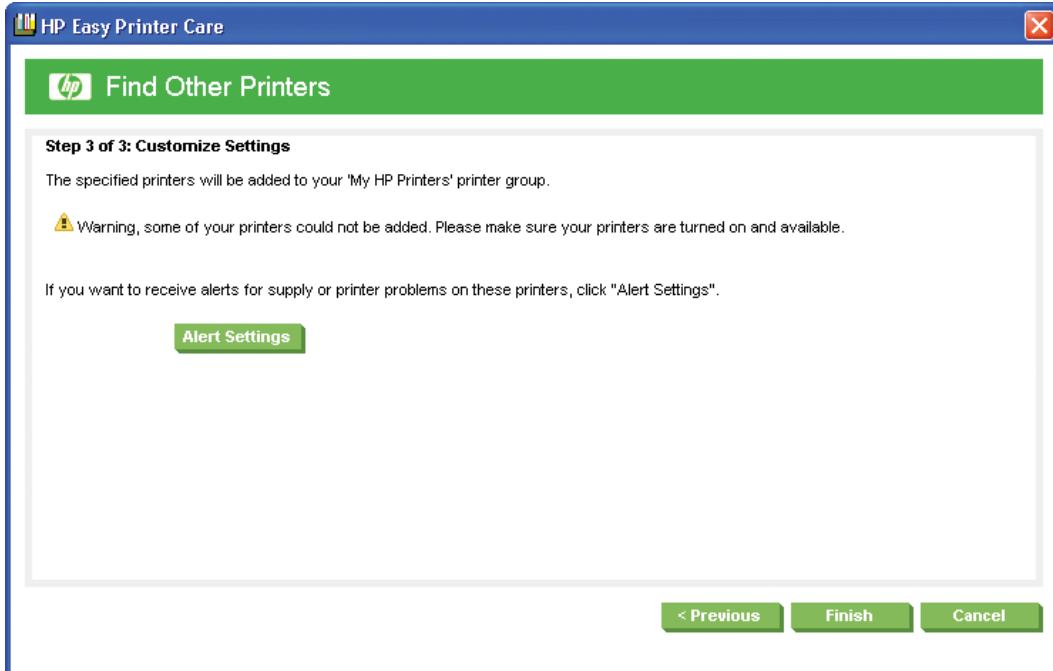
Figure 2-7 Step 2 of 3: Select Printers screen



Select the product in the **Available Printers:** pane and click the green double-arrows button. The model name moves to the **Printers to Add:** pane.

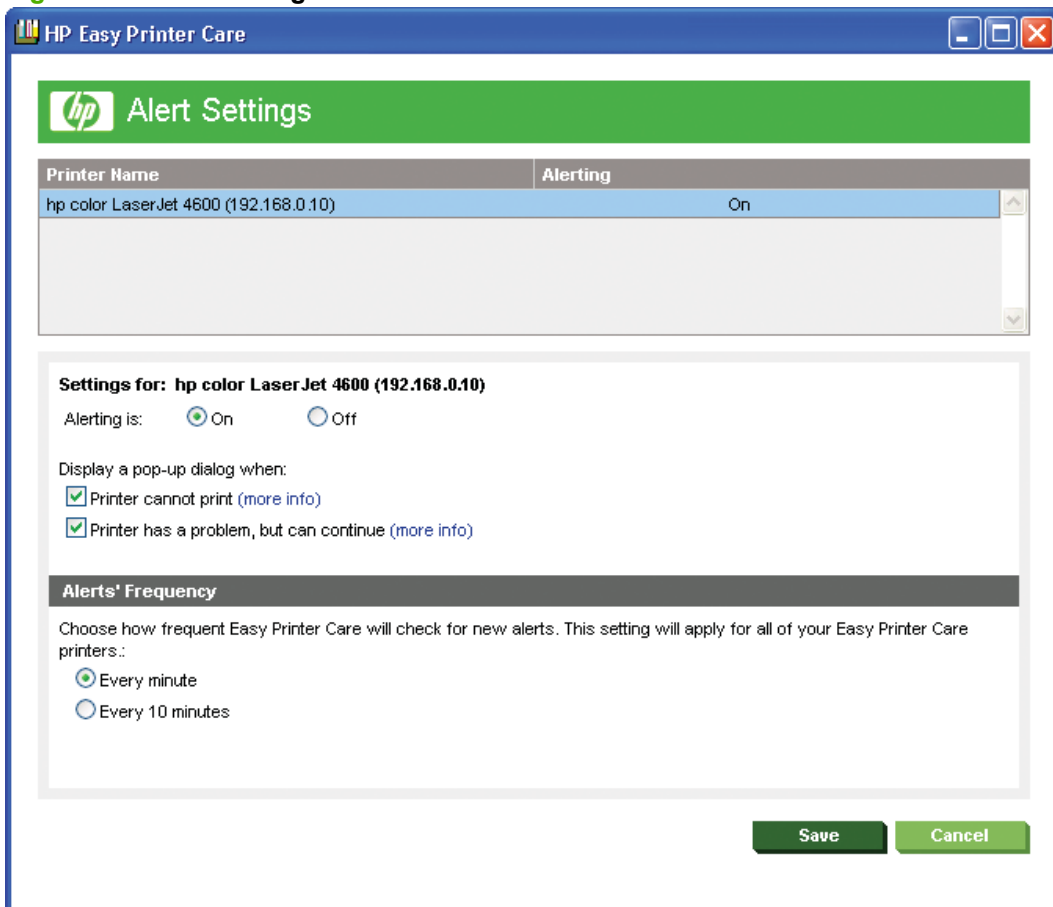
Click **Next** to add the product. The **Step 3 of 3: Customize Settings** screen appears.

Figure 2-8 Step 3 of 3: Customize Settings screen



Click **Alert Settings** to open the **Alert Settings** screen.

Figure 2-9 Alert Settings screen




Turn alert notification on and off by selecting an option in the **Settings for:** field.

Under **Printer Alerts**, select the kind of alert notifications that you want to receive:

- Printer cannot print
- Printer has a problem, but can continue

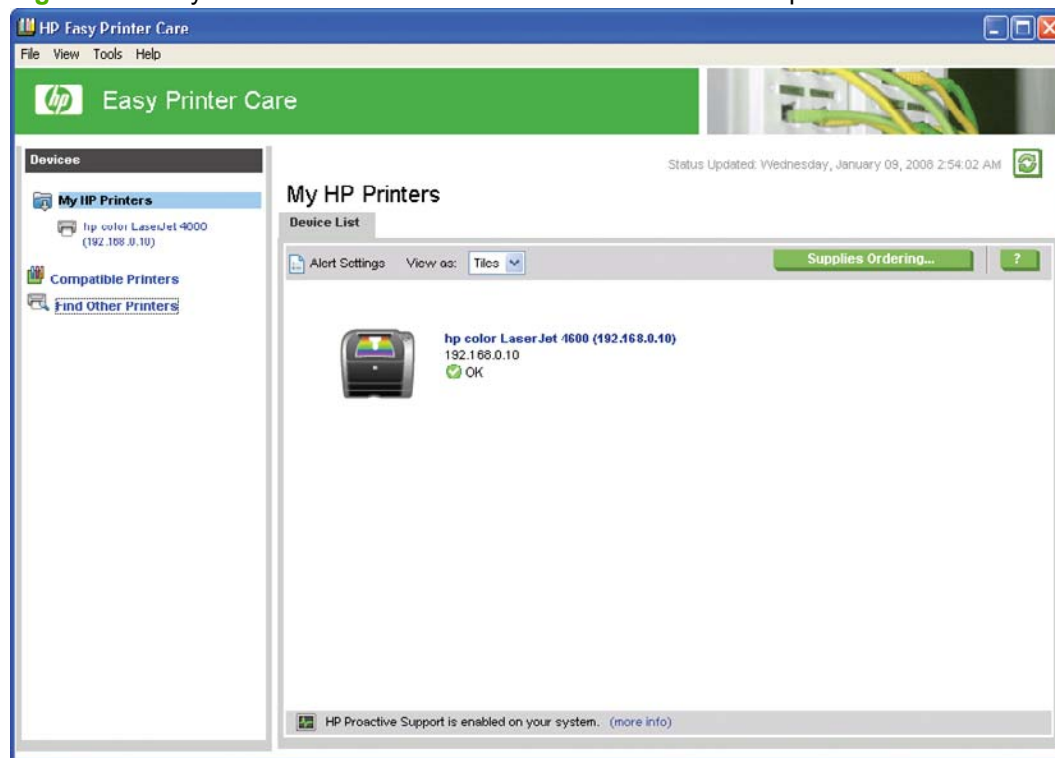
Under **Alerts' Frequency**, choose how frequent HP Easy Printer Care will check for new alerts. The following options are available:

- **Every minute**
- **Every 10 minutes**

 **NOTE:** This setting applies to all printers that you have set up in HP Easy Printer Care.

Click **Save** to save your alert-notification settings. The **My HP Printers** screen appears.

Figure 2-10 My HP Printers – HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product



HP Easy Printer Care – Overview tab

Click the product icon on the **My HP Printers** screen to open the **Overview** tab.

Figure 2-11 Overview tab

The screenshot shows the HP Easy Printer Care application window. The left sidebar contains a 'Devices' section with 'My HP Printers' and 'Compatible Printers'. The main area displays the 'Overview' tab for the 'hp color LaserJet 4600 (192.168.0.10)'. The 'Device Status' section shows the printer icon, name, and IP address, along with a 'Cartridge Status' bar chart and a 'No Problems Detected' message. Below this, the 'Supplies Status' section includes a 'Paper' table, a 'Cartridges' table, and an 'Other Supplies' table. A 'Notes' section at the bottom provides additional information.

Device: hp color LaserJet 4600 (192.168.0.10)

Cartridge Status:

Items Needing Attention: No Problems Detected

Supplies Status

Paper:

| Paper Source | Type | Size | Status |
|--------------|---------------------|------------------|--------|
| Tray 1 | HP Any Support Type | Any Size | Out |
| Tray 2 | HP Plain | Letter 8.5X11in. | OK |
| Tray 3 | HP Plain | Legal 8.5X14in. | OK |

Cartridges:

| Print Cartridge | Estimated Status* | Pages Remaining** | HP Part Number |
|-----------------|-------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| Black | 93% | 7,843 | C9720A |
| Cyan | 81% | 5,064 | C9721A |
| Magenta | 54% | 7,666 | C9723A |
| Yellow | 67% | 8,000 | C9722A |

Other Supplies:

| Supply Name | Estimated Status* | Pages Remaining** | HP Part Number |
|--------------------|-------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|
| Image Transfer Kit | 100% | 120,000 | C9724A |
| Image Fuser Kit | 43% | 64,151 | 110V-C9725A, 220V-C9726A |


Notes:
* - Estimate only. Actual supply level may vary.
** - Approximate only. Pages remaining will vary depending on types of documents printed.

HP Proactive Support is enabled on your system. (more info)

The **Overview** tab shows the following information under **Device Status**:

- Printer name
- Printer TCP/IP address

- A graph showing usage for each color print cartridge
- A list of any problems that require attention

If the status of the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product changes after you open the HP Easy Printer Care screen (for instance, if you have sent a print job to the product), click  (the refresh button) in the upper-right corner of any screen where it appears.


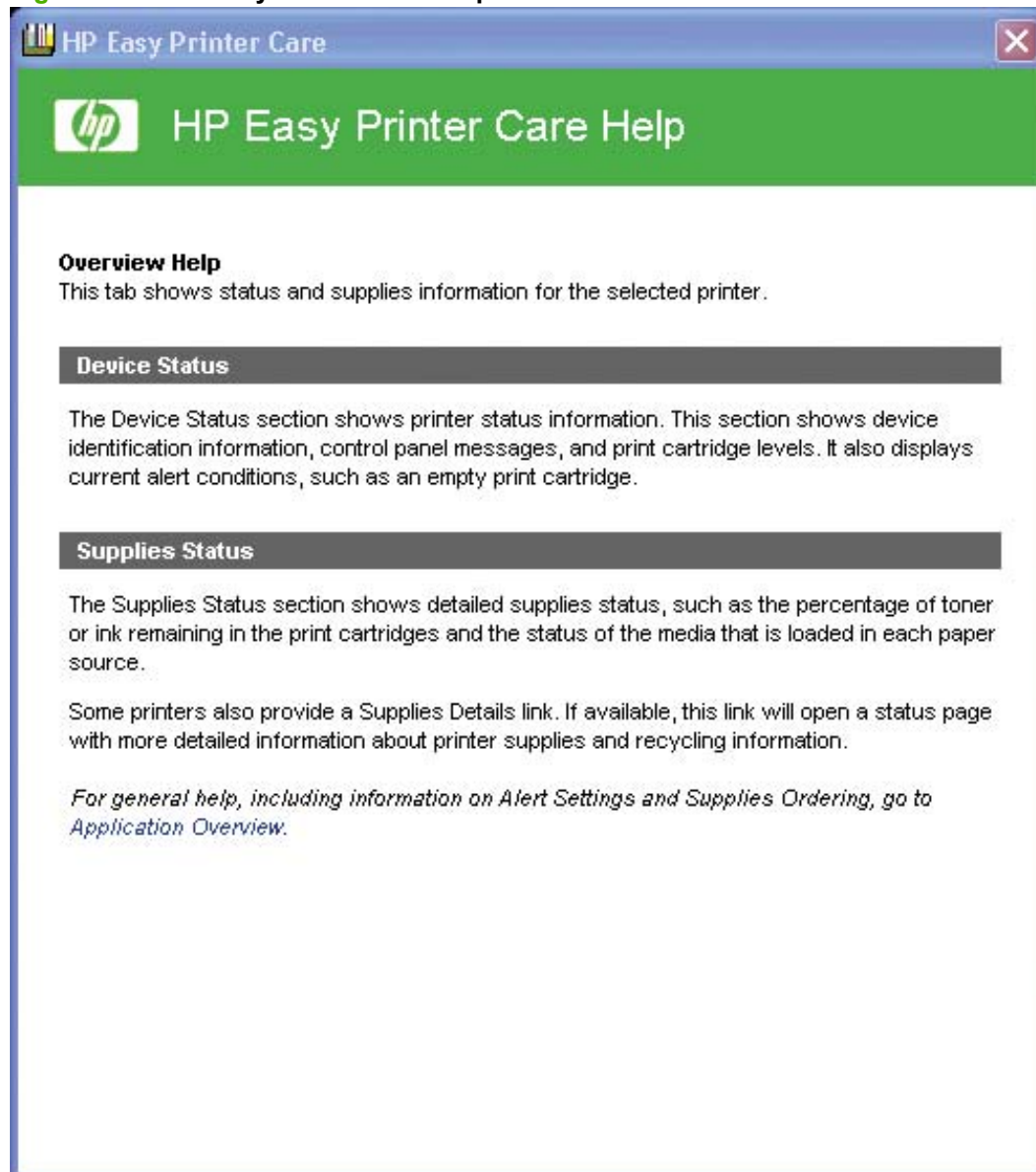
Click  (the help button) to open the **HP Easy Printer Care Help** screen.

Figure 2-12 HP Easy Printer Care Help screen



The **Overview Help** screen provides an overview of the **Device Status** and **Supplies Status** sections of the **Overview** tab.

Under **Supplies Status** on the **Overview** tab, the following information is provided about print paper:

- **Paper Source** (by tray)
- **Type** (paper type)
- **Size** (paper size)
- **Status** (OK, Out)

Under **Cartridges**, the following information is provided for each color cartridge:

- Print Cartridge (color)
- Estimated Status (percentage)
- Pages Remaining
- HP Part Number

Under **Other Supplies**, the following information is provided for supplies such as the Image Transfer Kit and the Image Fuser Kit:

- Supply Name
- Estimated Status (percentage)
- Pages Remaining
- HP Part Number

Click **Supplies Ordering...** to open the **Supplies Ordering** screen.

Figure 2-13 Supplies Ordering screen

Supplies Ordering

View Supplies for: hp color LaserJet 4600 (192.168.0.10) View All Printers

Sort Supplies By: Printers, then Supply Type

hp color LaserJet 4600 (192.168.0.10)

| Supply Name | Estimated Status* | Pages Remaining** | HP Part Number | Order | Quantity |
|--------------------|-------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|
| Black Cartridge | 93% | 7,843 | C9720A | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> |
| Cyan Cartridge | 81% | 5,064 | C9721A | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> |
| Magenta Cartridge | 54% | 7,866 | C9723A | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> |
| Yellow Cartridge | 67% | 8,000 | C9722A | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> |
| Image Transfer Kit | 100% | 120,000 | C9724A | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> |
| Image Fuser Kit | 43% | 64,151 | 110V-C9725A, 220V-C9726A | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> |

Notes:
 * = Estimate only. Actual supply level may vary.
 ** = Approximate only. Pages remaining will vary depending on types of documents printed.

Shop Online for Supplies Print Shopping List Cancel

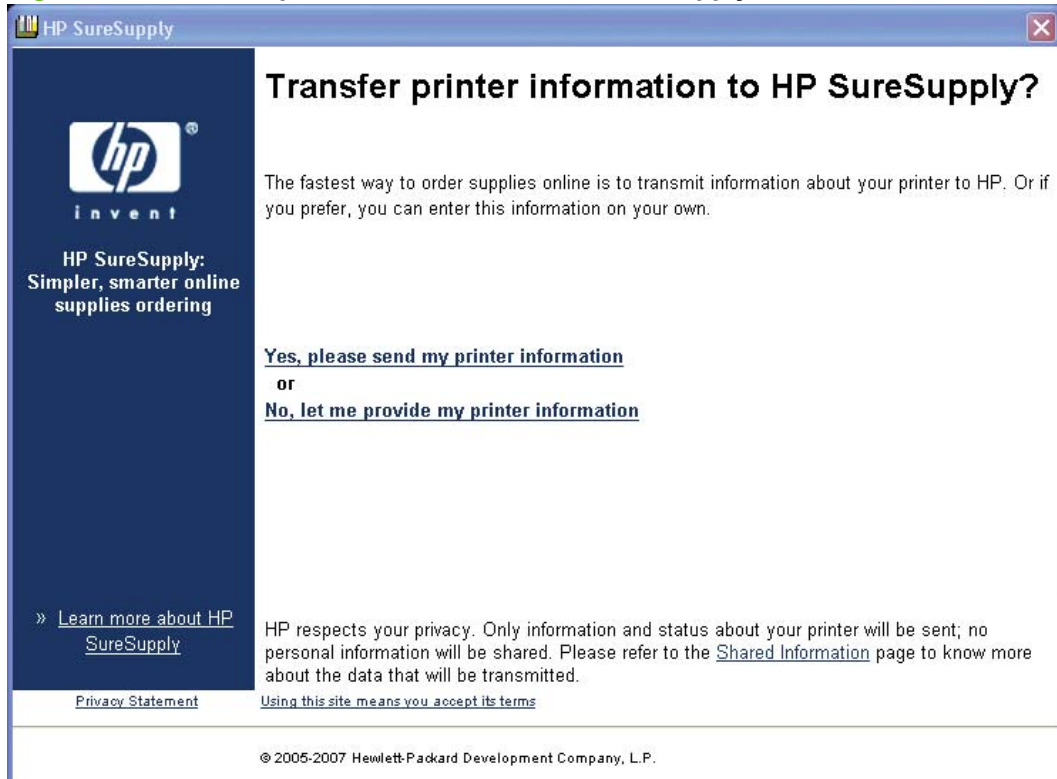
Select the appropriate check boxes in the **Order** column for each supply that you want. In the **Quantity** column, type the quantity that you want to order in each field.

Click **Cancel** to return to the **My HP Printers** screen.

Click **Print Shopping List** for a hard-copy list of the supplies that you are ordering.

Click **Shop Online for Supplies** if you have access to the Web and would like to place an online order. The **Transfer printer information to HP SureSupply?** screen appears.

Figure 2-14 Transfer printer information to HP SureSupply? screen



If you click **Yes, please send my printer information**, only information and status about your product will be sent; no personal information will be shared. If you click **No, let me provide my printer information**, no information is sent. The **Welcome to HP SureSupply** screen opens.

Figure 2-15 Welcome to HP SureSupply screen

>> HP Home

>> Products & Services


>> Support & Drivers

>> Solutions

>> How to Buy

>> Contact HP


Search:



Welcome to HP SureSupply

SureSupply

>> About SureSupply



[Printable version](#)

identify printer > shop for supplies > select vendor

Identify your Printer

Enter product name/number:
(e.g. LaserJet 4500 or 4500)

Or select a product category:

Inkjet

>> HP Deskjet

>> HP PSC

>> HP Photosmart

>> HP Officejet

>> HP Business Inkjet

LaserJet

>> HP LaserJet


>> HP Color LaserJet

>> HP Color LaserJet MFP

>> HP LaserJet MFP

>> HP Mopier

Or download and run HP SureSupply Software Utility



This application will automatically detect your printer product names and numbers.

>> Download software

[Privacy Statement](#)

[Using this site means you accept its terms](#)

© 2008 Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P.

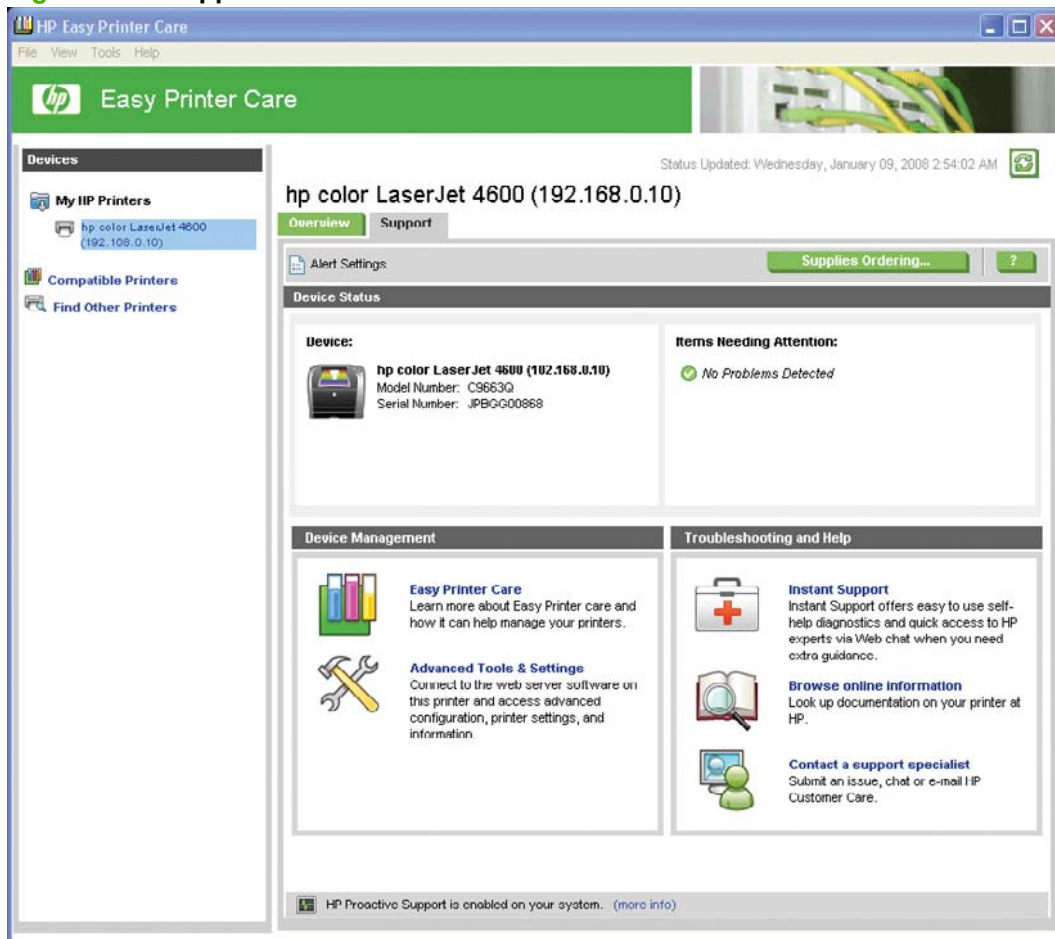
50 Chapter 2 Software description

ENWW

HP Easy Printer Care – Support tab

Click the **Support** tab to open the **Support** screen.

Figure 2-16 Support tab




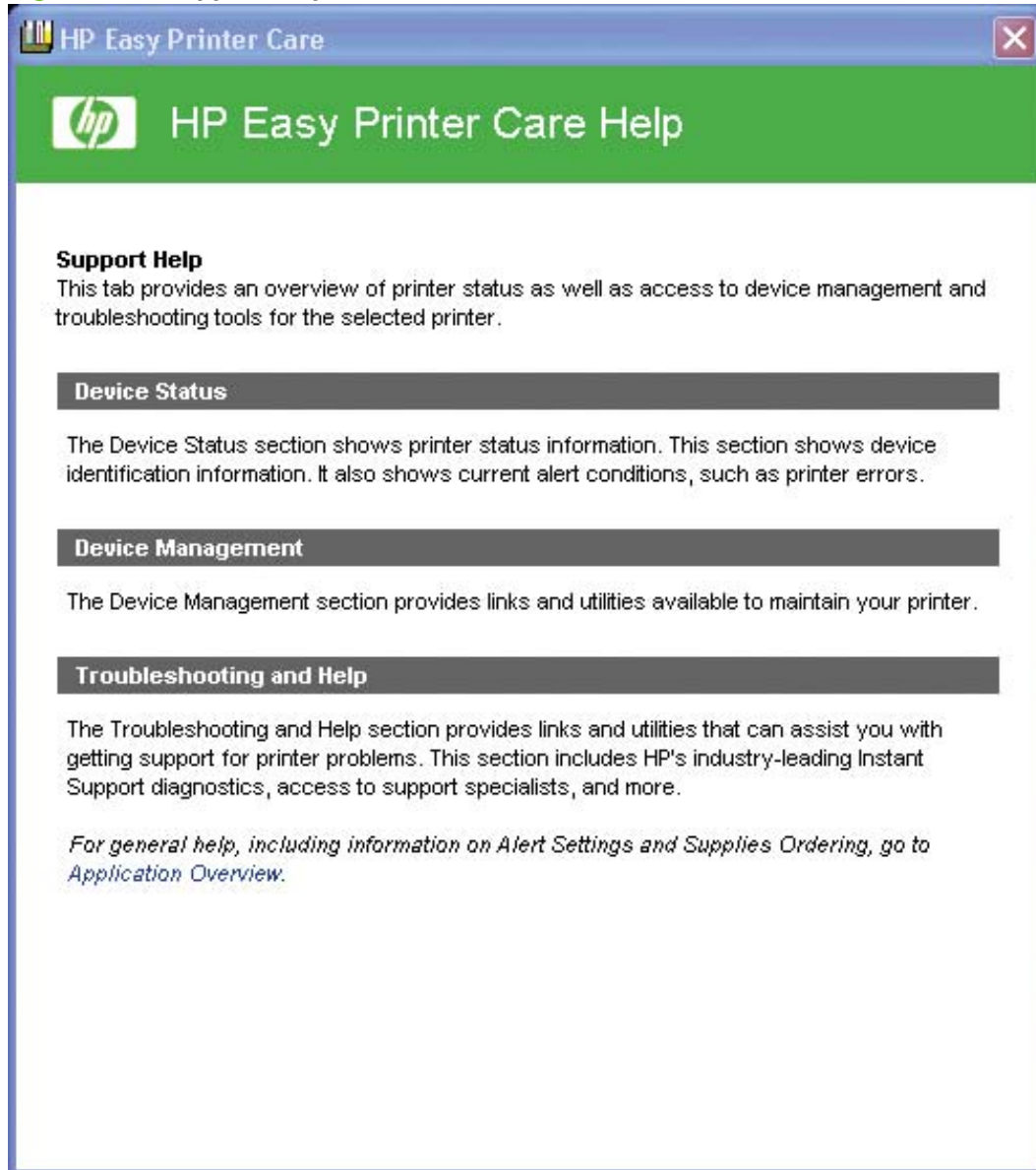
Click  (the help button) to open the **Support Help** screen.

Figure 2-17 Support Help screen



The **Support Help** screen provides an overview of the **Device Status**, **Device Management**, and **Troubleshooting and Help** sections of the **Support** tab.

On the **Support** tab, click **Supplies Ordering** to open the **Supplies Ordering** screen. The **Transfer printer information to HP InstantSupport?** screen opens. See [Figure 2-14 Transfer printer information to HP SureSupply? screen on page 49](#) to proceed with your order.

Device Management

The following tools are available in the **Device Management** pane:

- Easy Printer Care
- Advanced Tools & Settings

Clicking **Easy Printer Care** opens the Web browser to the HP web site and displays information pages about the HP Easy Printer Care software.

Clicking **Advanced Tools & Settings** opens the HP Embedded Web Server. For more information, see [Embedded Web server on page 54](#) or consult the *HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series Embedded Web Server User Guide*.



NOTE: HP Easy Printer Care software is a Windows program and does not require any browser support. The link to the HP Embedded Web Server, however requires a Web browser.

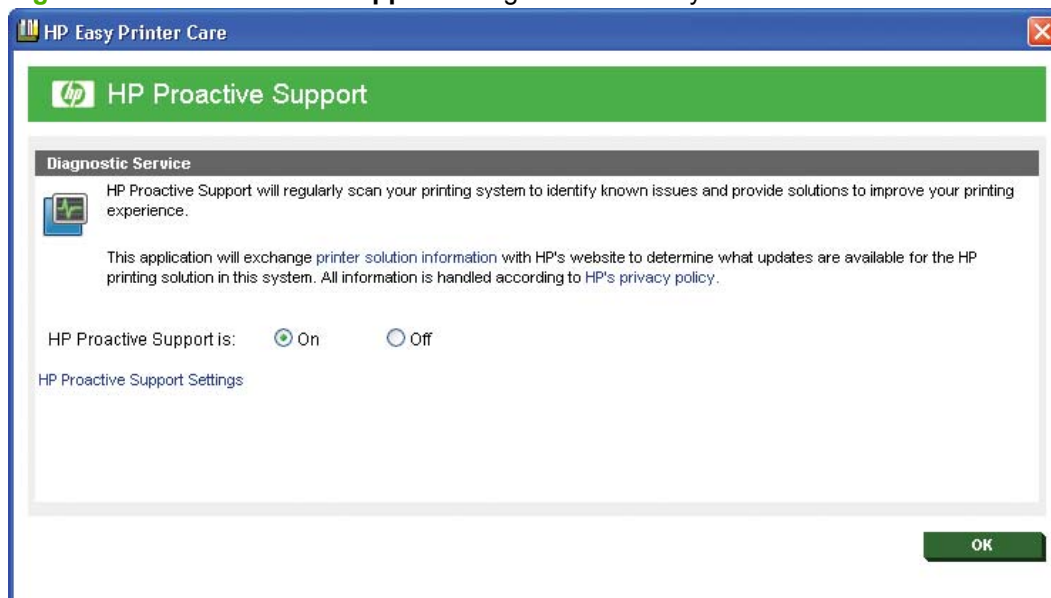
Troubleshooting and Help

The following tools are available in the **Troubleshooting and Help** pane of the **Support** tab:

- **Instant Support.** Click to open a Web page about the product to find specialized information and support.
- **Browse online information.** Click to open a Web page to find information about the product.
- **Contact a support specialist.** Click to open a Web page where you can supply information about the product and receive customized support. You can send an instant message, an e-mail, or submit a problem and view the case status online. The page also provides telephone numbers for HP customer care centers.

The **HP Proactive Support** icon appears at the bottom of most of the HP Easy Printer Care screens. Click to enable the HP Easy Printer Care software to poll the product periodically to supply diagnostic information to HP. The HP Proactive Support dialog box is shown in the following illustration.

Figure 2-18 HP Proactive Support dialog box – HP Easy Printer Care



Embedded Web server

The product is equipped with an embedded Web server, which provides access to information about product and network activities. This information appears in a Web browser, such as Microsoft Internet Explorer, Netscape Navigator, Apple Safari, or Firefox.

The embedded Web server resides on the product. It is not loaded on a network server.

The embedded Web server provides an interface to the product that anyone who has a network-connected computer and a standard Web browser can use. No special software is installed or configured, but you must have a supported Web browser on the computer. To gain access to the HP Embedded Web Server, type the IP address for the product in the address line of the browser.

A complete explanation of the features and functionality of the embedded Web server is available in the *HP Embedded Web Server User Guide*.

You can gain access to the guide from the following Web site:

www.hp.com/support/cljcp3525

Click **Manuals** in the column on the left side of the Web page to view the *HP Embedded Web Server User Guide*.

HP Web Jetadmin

Use HP Web Jetadmin and a browser to manage HP Jetdirect-connected products within an intranet. HP Web Jetadmin is a browser-based management tool and should be installed only on a single network-administration server.

To download a current version of HP Web Jetadmin and for the latest list of supported host systems, go to the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/webjetadmin

Font support

The basic fonts listed here are included with Microsoft Windows software. The additional PS fonts are available on the CD that came with the product.

Basic fonts

Microsoft Windows software includes these basic fonts, which can be used with any HP printing product:

- Arial
- Courier New Italic
- Times New Roman Italic
- Arial Italic
- Courier New Bold
- Times New Roman Bold
- Arial Bold
- Courier New Bold Italic
- Times New Roman Bold Italic
- Arial Bold Italic
- Symbol
- Wingdings
- Courier New
- Times New Roman

Default fonts

The following default fonts are installed through a Full Installation of the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series printing-system software.

Table 2-6 Default fonts

| Font name | Font style | File name |
|---------------------|-------------|-------------|
| Albertus Extra Bold | Regular | ALBR85W.TTF |
| Albertus Medium | Regular | ALBR55W.TTF |
| Antique Olive | Regular | OLVR55W.TTF |
| Antique Olive | Bold | OLVR75W.TTF |
| Antique Olive | Italic | OLVR56W.TTF |
| CG Omega | Regular | CGOR45W.TTF |
| CG Omega | Bold | CGOR65W.TTF |
| CG Omega | Bold Italic | CGOR66W.TTF |

Table 2-6 Default fonts (continued)

| Font name | Font style | File name |
|-----------------------------|-----------------|---------------|
| CG Omega | Italic | CGOR46W.TTF |
| CG Times | Regular | CGTR45W.TTF |
| CG Times | Bold | CGTR65W.TTF |
| CG Times | Bold Italic | CGTR66W.TTF |
| CG Times | Italic | CGTR46W.TTF |
| Clarendon Condensed | Bold | CLAR67W.TTF |
| Coronet | Regular | CORONET.TTF |
| CourierPS | Regular | CPSR45W.TTF |
| CourierPS | Bold | CPSR65W.TTF |
| CourierPS | Bold Oblique | CPSR66W.TTF |
| CourierPS | Oblique | CPSR46W.TTF |
| Garamond | Antiqua | GARR45W.TTF |
| Garamond | Halbfett | GARR65W.TTF |
| Garamond | Kursiv | GARR46W.TTF |
| Garamond | Kursiv Halbfett | GARR66W.TTF |
| Helvetica | Regular | HELR45W.TTF |
| Helvetica | Bold | HELR65W.TTF |
| Helvetica | Bold Oblique | HELR66W.TTF |
| Helvetica Narrow | Regular | HELR47W.TTF |
| Helvetica Narrow | Bold | HELR67W.TTF |
| Helvetica Narrow | Bold Oblique | HELR68W.TTF |
| Helvetica Narrow | Oblique | HELR48W.TTF |
| Helvetica | Oblique | HELR46W.TTF |
| ITC Avant Garde Gothic | Book | AVGR45W.TTF |
| ITC Avant Garde Gothic | Book Oblique | AVGR46W.TTF |
| ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi | Regular | AVGR65W.TTF |
| ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi | Oblique | AVGR66W.TTF |
| ITC Bookman Light | Regular | BOKR35W.TTF |
| ITC Bookman Light | Italic | BOKR36W.TTF |
| ITC Bookman Demi | Regular | BOKR75W.TTF |
| ITC Bookman Demi | Italic | BOKR76W.TTF |
| ITC Zapf Chancery | Medium Italic | CHANC____.TTF |
| ITC Zapf Dingbats | Regular | DINGS____.TTF |
| Letter Gothic | Regular | LETR45W.TTF |

Table 2-6 Default fonts (continued)

| Font name | Font style | File name |
|------------------------|---------------|--------------|
| Letter Gothic | Bold | LETR65W.TTF |
| Letter Gothic | Italic | LETR46W.TTF |
| Marigold | Regular | MARIGOLD.TTF |
| New Century Schoolbook | Bold | NCSR75W.TTF |
| New Century Schoolbook | Bold Italic | NCSR76W.TTF |
| New Century Schoolbook | Italic | NCSR56W.TTF |
| New Century Schoolbook | Roman | NCSR55W.TTF |
| Palatino | Bold | PALR65W.TTF |
| Palatino | Bold Italic | PALR66W.TTF |
| Palatino | Italic | PALR46W.TTF |
| Palatino | Roman | PALR45W.TTF |
| SymbolPS | Regular | SYMP5___.TTF |
| Times* | Bold | TIMR65W.TTF |
| Times | Bold Italic | TIMR66W.TTF |
| Times | Italic | TIMR46W.TTF |
| Times | Roman | TIMR45W.TTF |
| Univers | Bold | UNVR65W.TTF |
| Univers | Bold Italic | UNVR66W.TTF |
| Univers Condensed | Bold | UNVR67W.TTF |
| Univers Condensed | Bold Italic | UNVR68W.TTF |
| Univers Condensed | Medium | UNVR57W.TTF |
| Univers Condensed | Medium Italic | UNVR58W.TTF |
| Univers | Medium | UNVR55W.TTF |
| Univers | Medium Italic | UNVR56W.TTF |

Ninety-two additional PS emulation fonts are also available on the CD.

Table 2-7 Additional PS emulation fonts

| Font name | Font style | File name |
|-------------------------|------------|--------------|
| Albertus MT | Regular | PS_12639.TTF |
| Albertus MT | Italic | PS_12640.TTF |
| Albertus MT Lt | Regular | PS_14530.TTF |
| Antique Olive CompactPS | Regular | PS_11120.TTF |
| Antique Olive Roman | Regular | PS_11119.TTF |
| Antique Olive Roman | Bold | PS_11118.TTF |

Table 2-7 Additional PS emulation fonts (continued)

| Font name | Font style | File name |
|-------------------------|-------------|--------------|
| Antique Olive Roman | Italic | PS_11846.TTF |
| Apple Chancery | Italic | PS_24516.TTF |
| Bodoni Poster | Regular | PS_12704.TTF |
| Bodoni PosterCompressed | Regular | PS_14508.TTF |
| BodoniPS | Regular | PS_12581.TTF |
| BodoniPS | Bold | PS_12585.TTF |
| BodoniPS | Bold Italic | PS_12586.TTF |
| BodoniPS | Italic | PS_12582.TTF |
| Candid | Regular | PS_24517.TTF |
| Chicago | Regular | PS_24518.TTF |
| Clarendon Light | Regular | PS_14513.TTF |
| ClarendonPS | Regular | PS_10269.TTF |
| ClarendonPS | Bold | PS_12968.TTF |
| Cooper Black | Regular | PS_10369.TTF |
| Cooper Black | Italic | PS_10370.TTF |
| Copperplate32bc | Regular | PS_14514.TTF |
| Copperplate33bc | Regular | PS_14515.TTF |
| CoronetPS | Italic | PS_10249.TTF |
| Eurostile | Regular | PS_10267.TTF |
| Eurostile Bold | Regular | PS_10268.TTF |
| Eurostile ExtendedTwo | Bold | PS_14512.TTF |
| Eurostile ExtendedTwo | Regular | PS_14511.TTF |
| Geneva | Regular | PS_24509.TTF |
| GillSans | Regular | PS_13872.TTF |
| GillSans | Bold | PS_13874.TTF |
| GillSans | Bold Italic | PS_13875.TTF |
| GillSans Condensed | Regular | PS_14053.TTF |
| GillSans Condensed | Bold | PS_14054.TTF |
| GillSans ExtraBold | Regular | PS_14051.TTF |
| GillSans | Italic | PS_13873.TTF |
| GillSans Light | Italic | PS_13871.TTF |
| GillSans Light | Regular | PS_13870.TTF |
| Goudy | Bold | PS_12544.TTF |
| Goudy | Bold Italic | PS_10695.TTF |

Table 2-7 Additional PS emulation fonts (continued)

| Font name | Font style | File name |
|------------------------|-------------|--------------|
| Goudy | Regular | PS_12542.TTF |
| Goudy ExtraBold | Regular | PS_12545.TTF |
| Goudy | Italic | PS_12543.TTF |
| Helvetica Condensed | Regular | PS_14526.TTF |
| Helvetica Condensed | Bold | PS_14528.TTF |
| Helvetica Condensed | Bold Italic | PS_14529.TTF |
| Helvetica Condensed | Italic | PS_14527.TTF |
| Hoefler Text | Regular | PS_24519.TTF |
| Hoefler Text Black | Regular | PS_24521.TTF |
| Hoefler Text Black | Italic | PS_24522.TTF |
| Hoefler Text | Italic | PS_24520.TTF |
| Hoefler Text Ornaments | Regular | PS_24523.TTF |
| Joanna MT | Regular | PS_14503.TTF |
| Joanna MT | Bold | PS_14505.TTF |
| Joanna MT | Bold Italic | PS_14506.TTF |
| Joanna MT | Italic | PS_14504.TTF |
| Letter Gothic | Italic | PS_13778.TTF |
| Letter GothicPS | Regular | PS_13777.TTF |
| Letter GothicPS | Bold | PS_13779.TTF |
| Letter GothicPS | Bold Italic | PS_13780.TTF |
| Lubalin Graph | Regular | PS_12675.TTF |
| Lubalin Graph | Bold | PS_12677.TTF |
| Lubalin Graph | Bold Italic | PS_12625.TTF |
| Lubalin Graph | Italic | PS_12623.TTF |
| MarigoldPS | Regular | PS_94073.TTF |
| Mona Lisa Recut | Regular | PS_14525.TTF |
| Monaco | Regular | PS_24524.TTF |
| New York | Regular | PS_24510.TTF |
| Optima | Regular | PS_12506.TTF |
| Optima | Bold | PS_12510.TTF |
| Optima | Bold Italic | PS_12511.TTF |
| Optima | Italic | PS_12507.TTF |
| Oxford | Italic | PS_14072.TTF |
| StempelGaramond Roman | Italic | PS_11546.TTF |

Table 2-7 Additional PS emulation fonts (continued)

| Font name | Font style | File name |
|---------------------------|-------------|--------------|
| StempelGaramond Roman | Regular | PS_11545.TTF |
| StempelGaramond Roman | Bold | PS_11547.TTF |
| StempelGaramond Roman | Bold Italic | PS_11548.TTF |
| Taffy | Regular | PS_14507.TTF |
| Univers 45 Light | Regular | PS_13501.TTF |
| Univers 45 Light | Bold | PS_14023.TTF |
| Univers 45 Light | Bold Italic | PS_14024.TTF |
| Univers 45 Light | Italic | PS_13502.TTF |
| Univers 47 CondensedLight | Bold | PS_14030.TTF |
| Univers 47 CondensedLight | Bold Italic | PS_14040.TTF |
| Univers 55 | Regular | PS_14021.TTF |
| Univers 55 | Italic | PS_14022.TTF |
| Univers 57 Condensed | Regular | PS_14029.TTF |
| Univers 57 Condensed | Italic | PS_14039.TTF |
| Univers ExtendedPS | Bold | PS_13548.TTF |
| Univers ExtendedPS | Regular | PS_13547.TTF |
| Univers ExtendedPS | Bold Italic | PS_14481.TTF |
| Univers ExtendedPS | Italic | PS_14480.TTF |


HP Driver Deployment Utility

The HP Driver Deployment Utility (HP DDU) was created to simplify the deployment of print drivers onto a client computer. It is a simple utility that packages the printer-driver files, and the code needed to deploy them, into 2 files: an .EXE file and a .CAB file. These files are run on the client computer to copy the printer-driver files to the Windows driver store, and for network packages, to install the product.

The HP DDU works with print drivers that can be installed by an .INF file. It is designed to work with print drivers that have their files contained in one directory structure. Because this utility is generic, it does not detect how specific print drivers are packaged. It package sup all files in the directory (and subdirectories) where the print driver .INF file is found. The print driver must be expanded so that the HP DDU can process the .INF file. If you download an .EXE file with the print-driver files, you need to run it first to unpack all of the files. Then, run the HP DDU to package it for deployment on the client system.


HP DDU can be used to pre-configure a print driver for deployment. When the package is run on the client computer, the new configuration file is used to configure the print driver after it is installed. This does not break WHQL certification.

If the print driver was WHQL certified, and the print-driver files are organized within one directory structure, then HP DDU will not break WHQL certification. HP DDU packages all of the files found in the printer-driver directory structure without modifying them. If printer-driver pre-configuration is done, the new configuration file is used to configure the print driver after it is installed. This does not break WHQL certification.

 **NOTE:** If you need the ability to configure unique settings for printer-driver deployment, the Universal Print Driver installer may be a better choice as an install tool. The Universal Print Driver installer allows the configuration of settings from the command line.

The HP DDU can be used with the Universal Print Driver installer, but the Universal Print Driver command line will not be accessible. The HP DDU is designed to package and stage/install print drivers. Print-driver specific features, like those found in the Universal Print Driver installer, are specific to the Universal Print Driver installer and not supported by the HP DDU.

The HP DDU installer could be used with the Universal Print Drivers to deploy a direct connect driver in traditional mode or a network install in traditional mode.

 **NOTE:** Administrative rights are necessary on the client system where the install is being performed. For a direct connect, administrative rights are only required to run the .EXE package. The user can then connect the product without administrative rights. For a network connection, the .EXE package will copy files to the driver store, create the port, install the print driver and create the printer object.

Supported operating systems

- Microsoft Windows 2000 Service Pack 4
- Microsoft Windows XP
- Microsoft Windows XP 64-Bit Edition
- Microsoft Windows Server 2003
- Microsoft Windows Server 2003 64-Bit Edition
- Microsoft Windows Server 2008
- Microsoft Windows Server 2008 64-Bit Edition

- Microsoft Windows Vista
- Microsoft Windows Vista (64-bit)

Install and run the HP DDU

Install the HP DDU

Copy the files to the administrative computer. If using the self-extracting .EXE file, just copy it to the administrative computer, then double click – it will expand the files into the proper directory structure.

DDU does not require an installation program. All of the files are contained in the “Driver Deployment Utility” directory. DDU does not require any registry entries.

Run the HP DDU

1. Create the printer-driver package to deploy by opening the HP DDU application. This can be done by double clicking HPDDU.EXE, which is found in the Driver Deployment Utility root directory. This utility packages the print driver and the code needed to stage/install the print driver into an .EXE file and a .CAB file. An informational .XML file is also created and can be used to identify the package selections.
2. Run the new printer-driver package (created in step 1) on the client computer. It can be copied to the client computer and run by double clicking, or it can be run from a server by pointing to it and double clicking. The package can also be run in a batch file.

For a **direct connect package**, the HP DDU will silently copy the printer-driver files into the Windows driver store and exit. Prior to exiting, an optional dialog can be shown to prompt the user to connect their product after the files are copied. Upon completion of the package executable, when the user connects the product to the computer, the operating system will install the product using Plug and Play software.



NOTE: If the product is never connected to the computer, the product will not be installed.

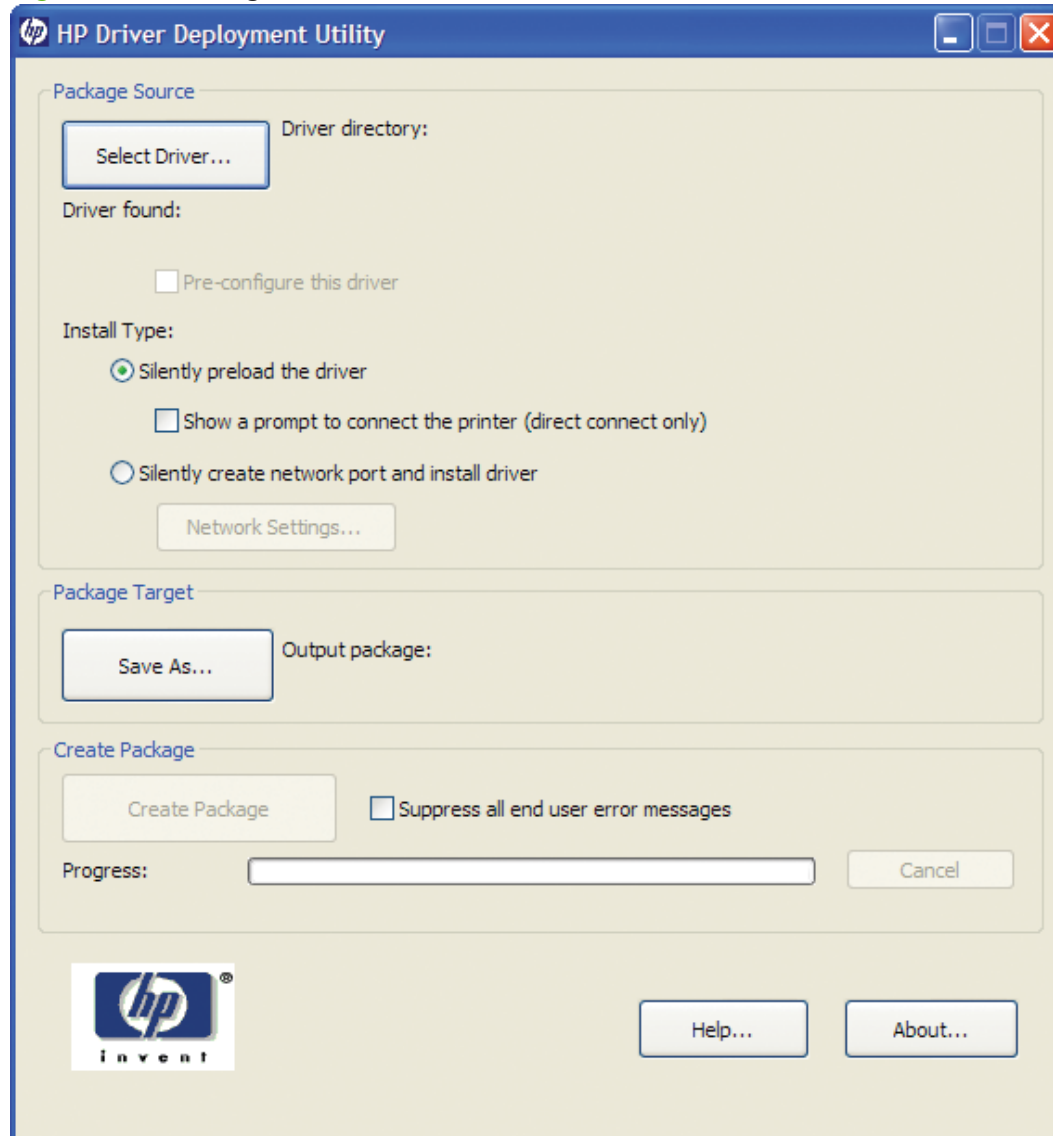
For a **network package**, the HP DDU will silently copy the printer-driver files into the Windows driver store, and then install the product using the network information entered by the administrator.

Use the HP DDU

The HP DDU user interface is divided into the following sections:

- **Package Source** describes the package type and printer-driver location that you want to create.
- **Package Target** identifies the name and location of the installation package.
- **Create Package** initiates the package creation process.

Figure 2-19 Package Source



Driver Directory—Use the **Select Driver** button to enter the directory where the print driver resides by browsing or typing it in. You should only have one printer-driver package in this directory because this utility will package all the files found in this directory (and sub directories) into the executable file. If you have downloaded a compressed printer-driver package, you must expand it before using this utility.

In some cases, you may have multiple print-driver .INF files in the directory (sometimes one is for color and another for mono products). In this case, an additional dialog will allow you to select which print driver to package.

You will also get a warning if the directory is large. This is to help prevent packaging more than one print driver. You can choose to continue or not at this point.

Once the printer-driver directory is selected, and one print driver has been found, the printer-driver information is displayed below the directory selection box.

For print drivers that support preconfiguration, the check box below will be enabled. Selecting this will run a configuration dialog after clicking the **Create Package**.

Install Type—Silently preload the driver is the option to select for users that will be using a direct connection, like a USB cable. A future Plug and Play event will be necessary to install the print driver, but all the files will be installed in the Windows driver store by this package for future use.

By default the executable file runs silently. If you would like to prompt the end user to connect the product at the end of the install, select the **Show a prompt to connect the printer** checkbox.

For products using a network connection, select the **Silently create the network port and install driver** option. The **Network Settings** button will become enabled, and you should click on it to enter the required network settings.


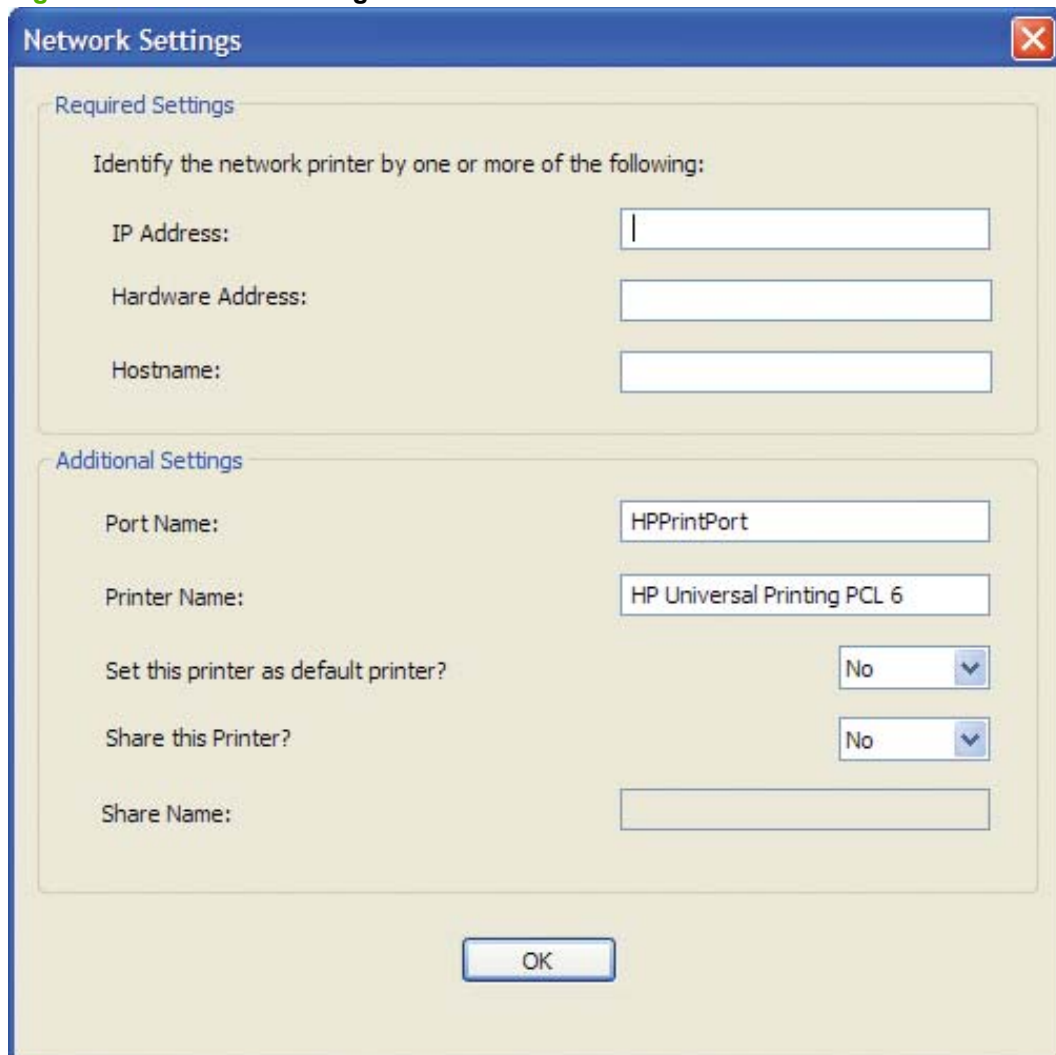
 **NOTE:** If you do not select the print driver first, an error dialog box appears. You must select the print driver first so that the product name can be derived from the printer-driver name.

Figure 2-20 Network Settings



Network Settings

Required Settings

Identify the network printer by one or more of the following:

IP Address:

Hardware Address:

Hostname:

Additional Settings

Port Name:

Printer Name:

Set this printer as default printer? ▼

Share this Printer? ▼

Share Name:

You must identify the network product by one of the following methods. This utility does not communicate with the product to determine if the settings are valid, but it does perform syntax checking. The

administrator is responsible for identifying the product using either the correct IP address, the Hardware address, or the Hostname.

- **IP Address** — enter the IPv4 or IPv6 address of the product.
- **Hardware Address** — enter the hardware address of the product.
- **Hostname** — enter the hostname of the product.

The following network settings are additional. You may accept the default values pre-entered or change any of them.

- **Port Name:** This is the network port name that will be created. If the name already exists, a number will be appended to make it unique.
- **Printer Name:** This is the product name that will appear in the printers' folder. If the name already exists, a number will be appended to make it unique.
- **Set this printer as default:**
 - Yes - will make this product the default when printing from other applications.
 - No - will retain the current default, unless this is the only product installed.
- **Share this printer:** Yes - will allow others to use this product.
- **Share Name:** Share name for the product. Only enabled if 'Share this printer' is Yes. If the name already exists, a number will be appended to make it unique.

To exit the Network Settings dialog without saving, use the Windows close button in the upper corner.

Package Target

Use the **Save as** button to enter the name and location for the output package by browsing or typing it in. The utility will create the package in the temp directory and then move it to the final location.

Create Package

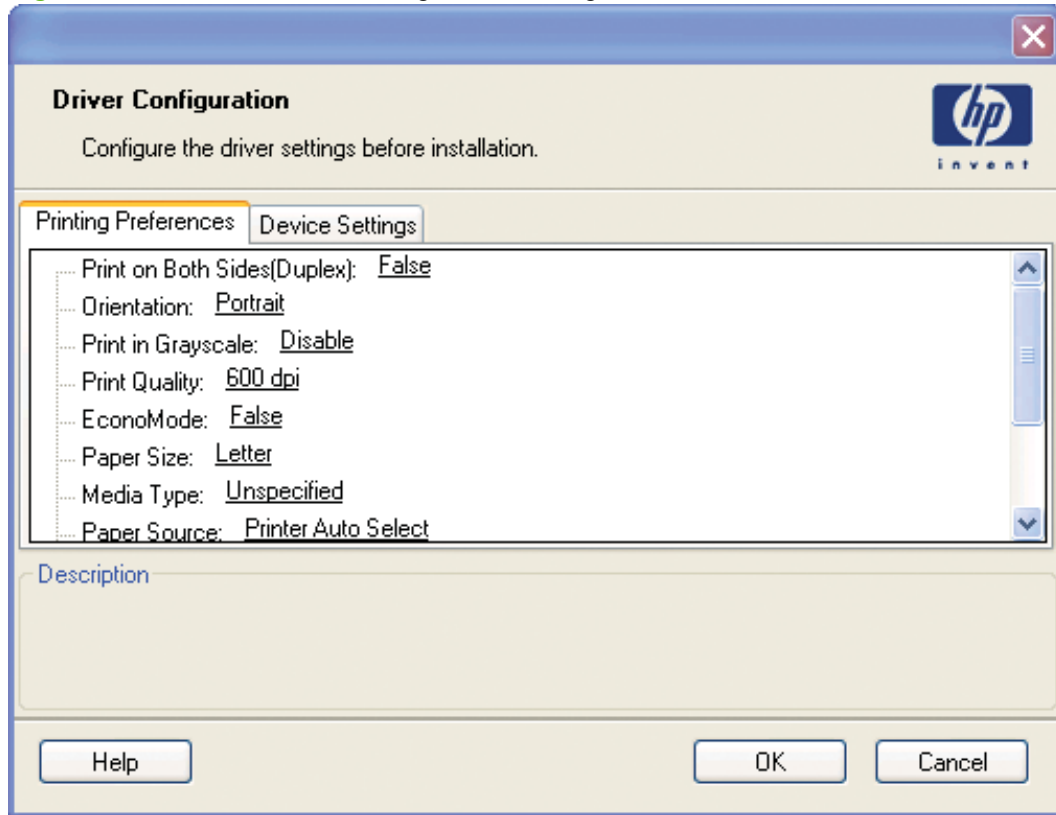
Click the **Create Package** button when you have entered all the above information. This button will be disabled until you have entered the required information. Once it is clicked, the **Cancel** button and Progress bar will be enabled.

To stop the package creation, click the **Cancel** button.

The executable file runs silently, unless a user prompt is requested for a direct-connect product. If an error is encountered during execution, an error dialog will appear. To suppress the error dialog, select the **Suppress all end user error messages** check box.

If you selected the **Pre-configure this driver** checkbox, the print driver configuration dialog will open when you click the **Create Package** button. Once you have configured the print driver, select **OK** to save the new configuration settings and continue creating the package. Clicking **Cancel** will cancel the entire package creation process.

Figure 2-21 HP DDU Driver Configuration settings



HP DDU Frequently Asked Questions

How do I use the HP DDU to deploy a direct connect driver with preconfiguration?


If you load multiple PDLs for one product, the operating system will determine which one satisfies the Plug and Play event. The operating system will create one printer object for that PDL.


1. Run HPDDU.EXE to start the package creation.
2. From Package Source section:
 - a. Select the print driver to package by browsing to the .INF file in the directory.
 - b. Select the **Pre-configuration** checkbox. This checkbox is enabled only for print drivers that support preconfiguration.
 - c. Select the **Silently preload the driver** install type.
 - d. Select the **Show a prompt to connect the printer** checkbox if you want to prompt the user after the files are copied.

3. From **Package Target** section:


Select the output name and location. Three files will be written here: an .EXE file, a .CAB file, and an .XML file with information about the package.

4. From **Create Package** section:
 - a. If you want to suppress any error messages, select the **Suppress all end user error messages** checkbox.
 - b. Click the **Create Package** button
5. Run the new .EXE file from the client computer. You must have administrator rights to run the .EXE file because it will be copying files into the Windows driver store. Now the printer-driver files are on the system, and any user can connect the product to trigger the Plug and Play event.

 **NOTE:** The printer object is not created until the product is connected.

 **NOTE:** If you deploy multiple direct connect print drivers, with preconfiguration, and they all use a pre-config file with the same name, the first one connected will be the only one configured properly. This might happen if you deploy the PCL6 and PCL5 print drivers for the same product. The reason is that the config file is copied to the \3 directory awaiting the product being connected. Each deployment will just copy over the same config file since they all use the same name. Once the product is connected, this config file gets consumed and deleted. Future Plug and Play events will not have the config file available.

How do I use the HP DDU to deploy a network product with preconfiguration?

 **NOTE:** Before running the HP DDU, you must download the driver you want to package, expand the driver, and place the driver in its own directory on the computer where the HP DDU will run.

1. Run HPDDU.EXE to create the package.
2. From **Package Source** section:
 - a. Select the print driver to package by browsing to the .INF file in the directory.
 - b. Select the **Pre-configuration** checkbox. This checkbox is enabled only for print drivers that support preconfiguration.
 - c. Select the **Silently create network port and install driver** install type.
 - d. Click the **Network Settings** button to enter the network settings.
3. From **Network Settings** dialog:
 - a. From the **Required Settings** section, enter at least one way of identifying the product (IP address, Hardware address, or Hostname).
 - b. Make any changes to the **Additional Settings** section (port name, product name, default printer, sharing and share name). You can leave the default settings if you don't need to make changes.
4. From **Package Target** section:

Select the output name and location. Three files will be written here: an .EXE file, a .CAB file and an .XML file with information about the package.

5. From **Create Package** section:
 - a. If you want to suppress any error messages, select the **Suppress all end user error messages** checkbox.
 - b. Click the **Create Package** button.
 - c. The configuration dialog will open and allow you to set configuration details for this print driver. After accepting the configuration changes, the package will be created.
6. Run the new .EXE file from the client computer. You must have administrator rights to run the .EXE file because it will be copying files into the Windows driver store. A port and printer object will be created with the information provided above.

Common Problems

I get a warning when I select the print driver.

If there are too many files in the driver directory, or the directory is really large, a warning appears so that the user doesn't accidentally package up something they didn't intend to (like the root directory). Some print drivers are really large, and you can choose to ignore this warning and continue.

To minimize package size, each print driver should be in its own directory. This is usually the default behavior when you expand a print driver.

I get an error when I try to open the "Network Settings" dialog.

You need to first select a print driver before opening the "Network Settings" dialog. This populates the product name field based on the printer-driver name.

The Create Package button is not enabled.

This button will not be enabled until you have:

1. Selected the print driver.
2. If network connect – filled out one of the required network settings.
3. Selected the **Save as** name and directory.

How do I exit the HP DDU?

Use the Windows close button in the upper corner.

The Network Settings dialog keeps displaying an error, and I just want out.

If you do not want to save settings, or change your mind and don't want a network install, you need to close the network settings dialog with the Windows close button in the upper corner. Using the **OK** button, will try to validate the settings, and that is what is causing an error.

What if the user connects the printer before the HP DDU package is run?

If the user connects the product, but then cancels the Plug and Play event before it finishes, this creates an incomplete Plug and Play event. After copying the printer-driver files to the Windows driver store, the HP DDU code will cleanup incomplete Plug and Play events for products supported by this print driver. Then it will refresh the bus, causing the operating system to Plug and Play the product (installing the print driver and creating the printer object.)

How do I uninstall HP DDU?

Delete all the files in the root HP DDU directory.



NOTE: No registry changes have been made with this utility.

3 Installing Windows printing-system components

Introduction

The HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product comes with software and installers for Microsoft Windows and Apple, Inc., Macintosh systems. Linux and UNIX systems are supported, and software is available on the Web. For detailed information about operating systems that support printing-system software installation for the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product, see [Supported operating systems on page 7](#).

This chapter provides procedures for installing and removing the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series printing-system software for Windows operating systems. The chapter provides information about these topics:

- [General Microsoft Windows installation instructions](#)
- [Detailed MS Windows installation instructions](#)
- [Uninstall instructions](#)



NOTE: If the computer is running a 64-bit Windows operating system, you must install the corresponding 64-bit print driver. For instructions, see [Install the print driver using the Microsoft Add Printer Wizard on page 72](#).

General Microsoft Windows installation instructions

These are instructions for installing the print drivers on various Windows operating systems.

Installation is similar for the Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Vista operating systems.

If the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product is connected through a file or print server, the printing-system software must first be installed on the server before being installed on any client systems. If the HP LaserJet printing-system software is not first installed on the server, then bidirectional communication and some driver autoconfiguration methods are not available to the client systems.


Microsoft Windows installation for direct connections

The printing-system software should be installed *before* the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product is connected to the computer through a parallel or USB connection and turned on. During the installation process, the software prompts you to connect the product.

Install from the printing-system CD

Follow these instructions to install the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series printing system from the CD that came with the product.


1. Quit all software programs.
2. Insert the CD in the CD-ROM drive.

 **NOTE:** If the CD does not start automatically, click **Start**, click **Run**, and then browse to and double-click the SETUP.EXE file in the root directory of the CD.

NOTE: In Windows Vista, you will be prompted to elevate the permissions to administrator in order to complete the installation process.

3. Click **Install Now** and follow the onscreen prompts.

Install the print driver using the Microsoft Add Printer Wizard

 **NOTE:** You can return to the previous screen by clicking the **< Back** button, or exit the Add Printer Wizard by clicking the **Cancel** button.

Select one of the following three options to install The print driver using the Microsoft Add Printer Wizard:

- **Use an existing port for a direct connection:** The product is connected to the computer using a USB cable or is connected via the network without using a print server and the printer port already exists.
- **Create a new TCP/IP port for a direct connection:** The product is connected via the network without using a print server and the printer port does not exist.
- **Print server connection:** The product is connected via the network using a print server.

Use an existing port for a direct connection

Perform the following when the product is connected to the computer using a USB cable or when printing via the network without using a print server:

1. On the **Start** menu, click the **Settings** option, and then

Windows 2000: Click the **Printers** option.

-or-

Windows XP Home: Click the **Printers and Other Hardware Devices** option.

-or-


Windows XP Professional, Windows Server 2003, and Windows 2008: Click the **Printers and Faxes** option.

-or-

Windows Vista: Under the **Hardware and Sound** category, click the **Printer** option.

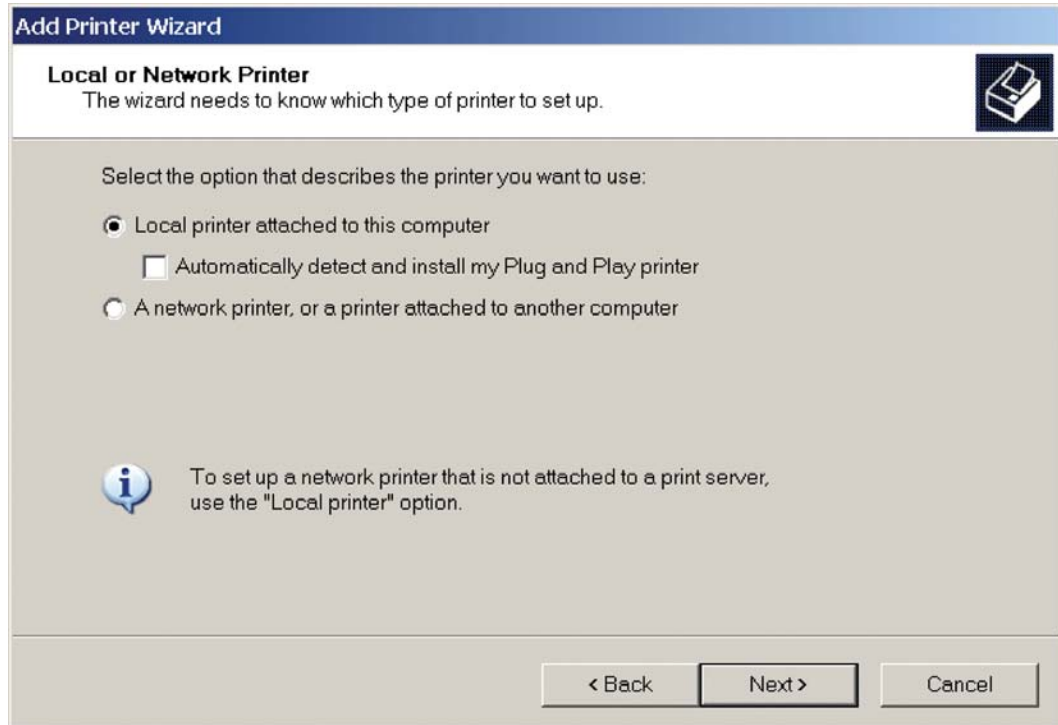
2. Click the **Add a printer** option. The Add Printer Wizard opens.
3. Click the **Next** button on the **Add Printer Wizard** welcome dialog box.

4. If the product is connected to the computer using a USB cable or is connected via the network without using a print server, select the **Local printer attached to this computer** option, and then click the **Next >** button.

 **NOTE:** If you select the **Automatically detect an install my Plug and Play printer** check box prior to clicking the **Next >** button, the computer will automatically install the print driver.

NOTE: If the product is connected via the network using a print server, select the **A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer** option (Point and Print installation), and then click the **Next >** button. For detailed installation instructions, see [Print sever connection on page 84](#).

Figure 3-1 Add Printer Wizard — Local or Network Printer screen



5. If the product is connected to the computer using a USB cable or is connected via the network without using a print server and the printer port already exists, select the **Use the following port** option, select the product name, print path, or IP address of the product from the **Use the following port** drop-down list, and then click the **Next >** button.


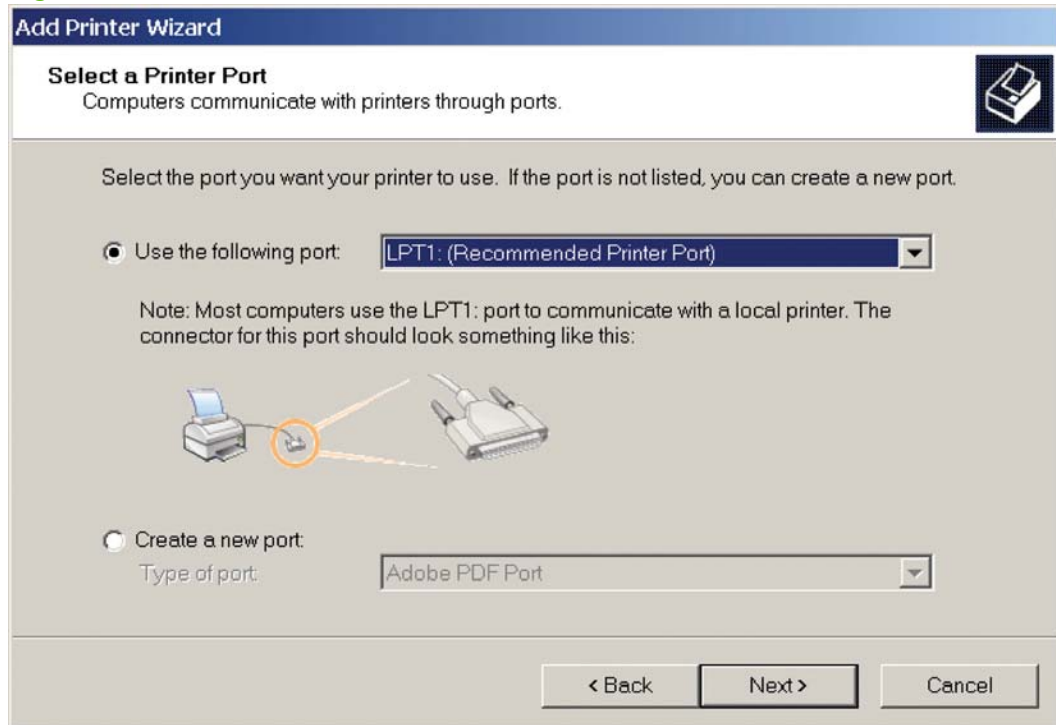
 **NOTE:** If the printer port does not appear in the **Use the following port** drop-down list, see [Create a new TCP/IP port for a direct connection on page 80](#). If the product is connected via the network using a print server, see [Print sever connection on page 84](#).

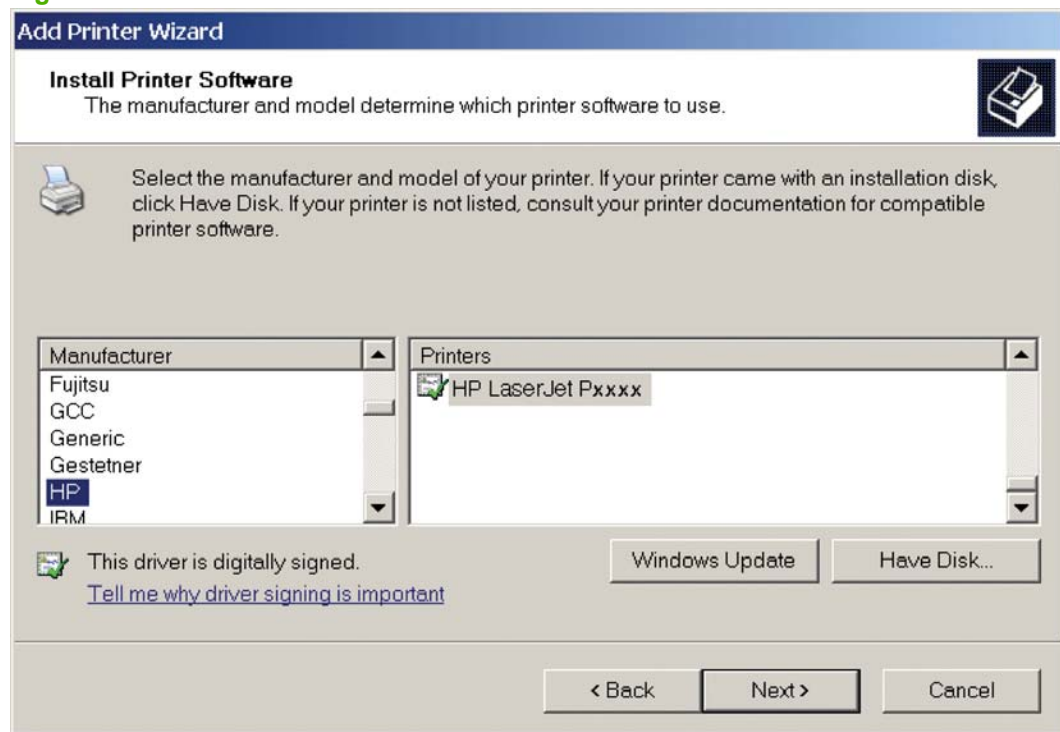
Figure 3-2 Add Printer Wizard — Select a Printer Port screen



6. (Optional) Click the **Windows Update** button to display a list of drivers that can be downloaded from the Microsoft Windows Update Web site.

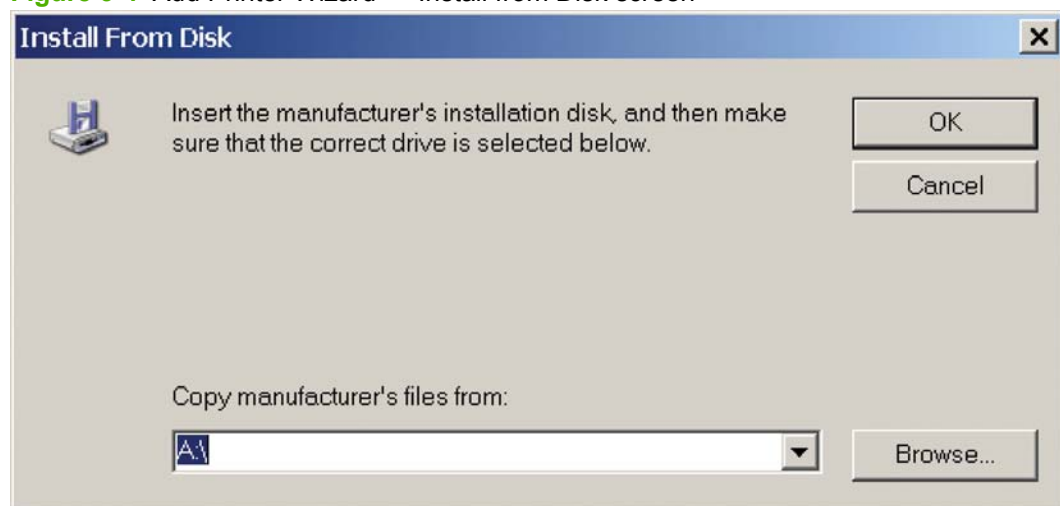
If the appropriate model of HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series is already listed, select it and click the **Next >** button. If the product is not listed, click the **Have Disk** button to continue to the **Install From Disk** screen.

Figure 3-3 Add Printer Wizard — Install Printer Software screen



7. If the correct path to the CD-ROM drive is listed in the **Copy manufacturer's files from** text box, click the **OK** button. If not, click the **Browse** button to continue to the **Locate File** screen.

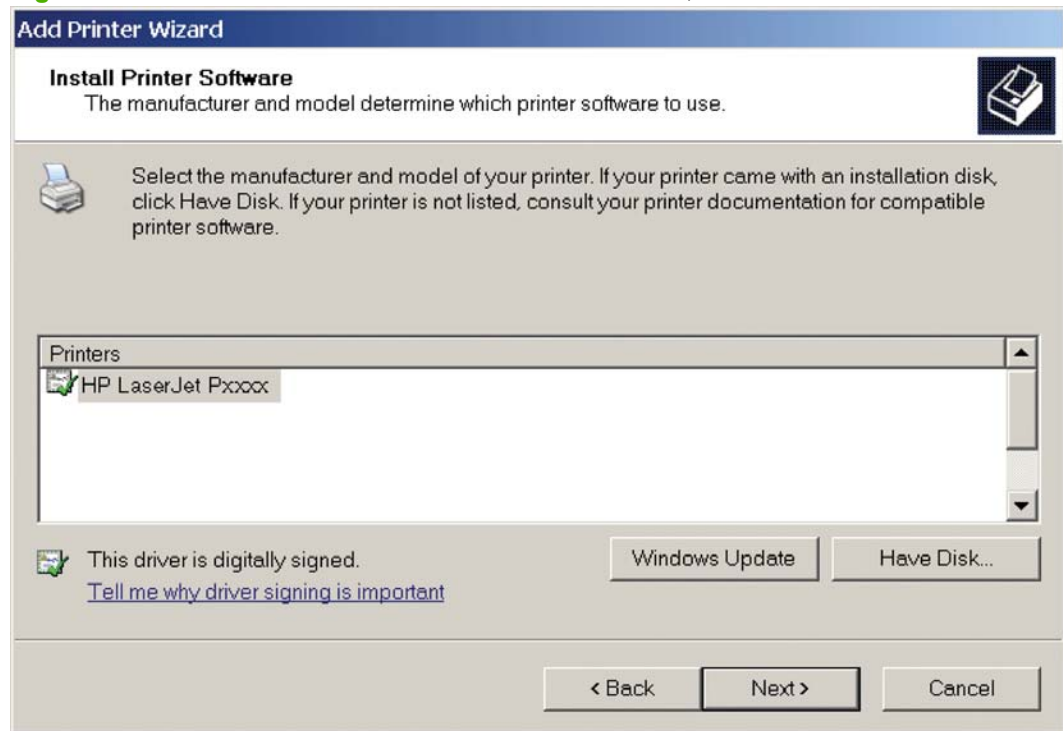
Figure 3-4 Add Printer Wizard — Install from Disk screen



8. Navigate to your CD-ROM drive, and then select the .INF file for your product.
9. Click the **OK** button to continue to the **Install Printer Software** screen.

10. Select the appropriate model of HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series from the list and click the **Next >** button to continue to the **Name Your Printer** screen.

Figure 3-5 Add Printer Wizard — Install Printer Software, screen 2

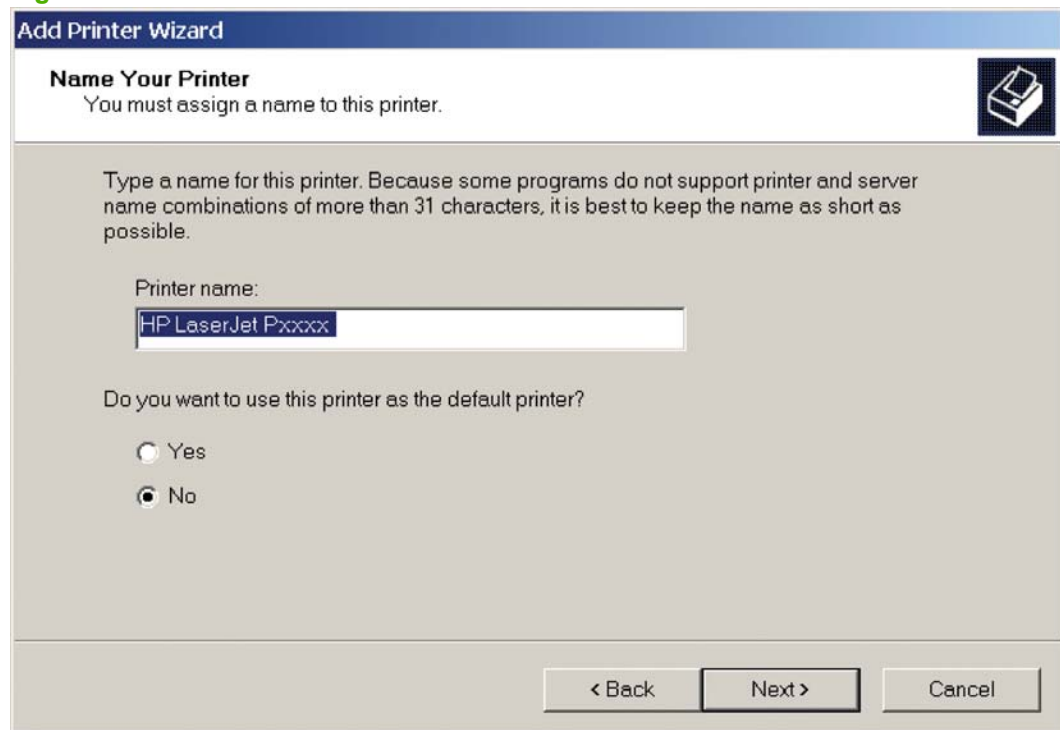


11. You can either type a name for the product in the **Printer name** text box or use the default name provided.

Select the **Yes** option to use this printer as the default printer or select the **No** option to keep the existing product as the default printer.

Click the **Next >** button to continue to the **Printer Sharing** screen.

Figure 3-6 Add Printer Wizard — Name Your Printer screen

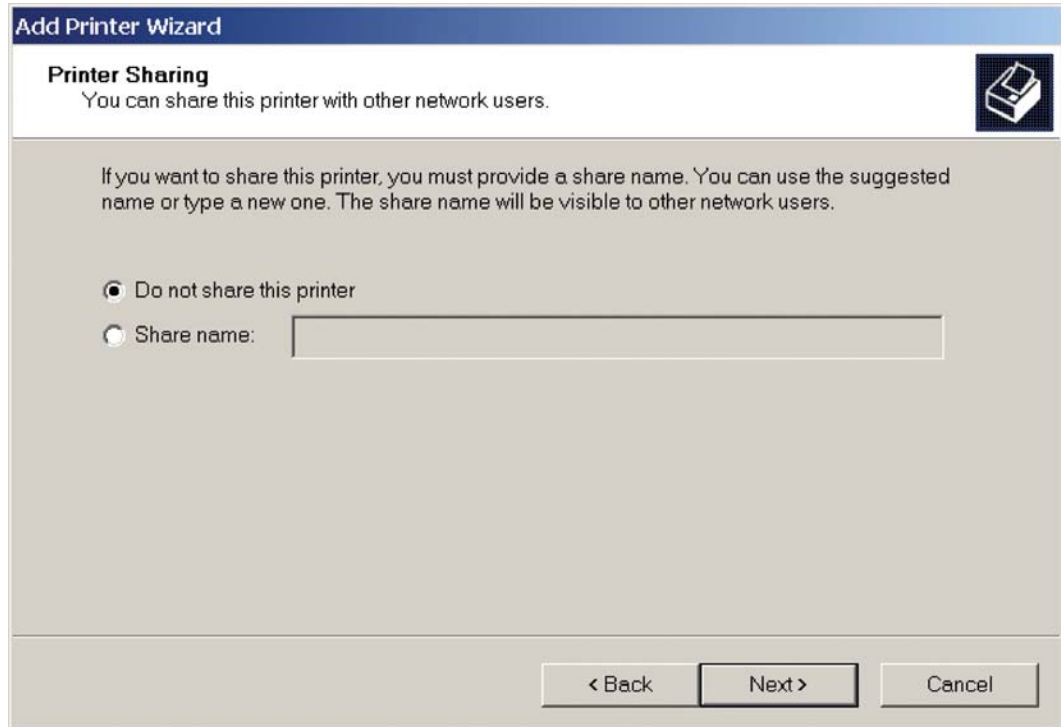


The screenshot shows the 'Add Printer Wizard' window with the 'Name Your Printer' step. The title bar reads 'Add Printer Wizard'. Below the title bar, the section is titled 'Name Your Printer' with a printer icon. The text says 'You must assign a name to this printer.' Below this, a message states: 'Type a name for this printer. Because some programs do not support printer and server name combinations of more than 31 characters, it is best to keep the name as short as possible.' There is a text box labeled 'Printer name:' containing the text 'HP LaserJet Pxxxx'. Below the text box, the question 'Do you want to use this printer as the default printer?' is followed by two radio buttons: 'Yes' (unselected) and 'No' (selected). At the bottom right, there are three buttons: '< Back', 'Next >', and 'Cancel'.

12. Select either the **Do not share this printer** option, or select the **Share name:** option and type share name, and then click the **Next >** button to continue to the **Print Test Page** screen.

 **NOTE:** For more information, see [Point and Print installation for Windows 2000, XP, Server 2003, Server 2008, and Vista on page 94.](#)

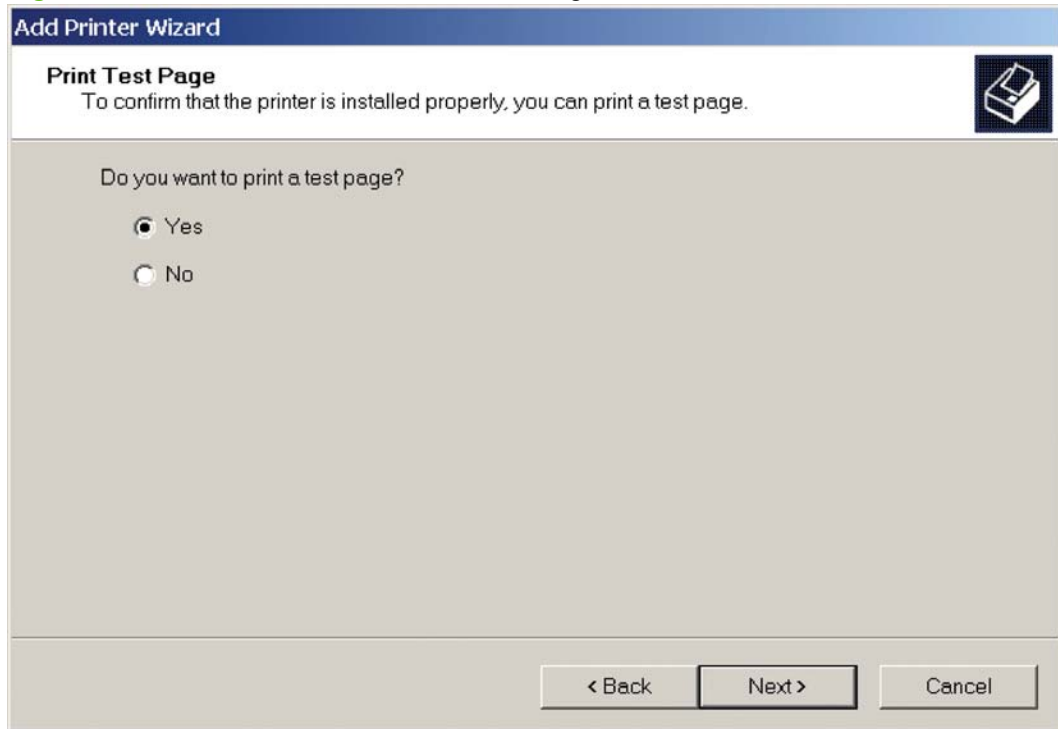
Figure 3-7 Add Printer Wizard — Printer Sharing screen



13. Select the **Yes** option if you want to print a test page after the software is installed. Select the **No** option if you do not want to print a test page after the software is installed.

Click the **Next >** button to continue to the **Completing the Add Printer Wizard** screen.

Figure 3-8 Add Printer Wizard — Print Test Page screen



14. Review the installation details, and then click the **Finish** button to complete the Add Printer Wizard.

Create a new TCP/IP port for a direct connection

Perform the following when the product is connected via the network without using a print server and a printer port does not exist:

1. On the **Start** menu, click the **Settings** option, and then

Windows 2000: Click the **Printers** option.

-or-

Windows XP Home: Click the **Printers and Other Hardware Devices** option.

-or-


Windows XP Professional, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Server 2008: Click the **Printers and Faxes** option.

-or-

Windows Vista: Under the **Hardware and Sound** category, click the **Printer** option.

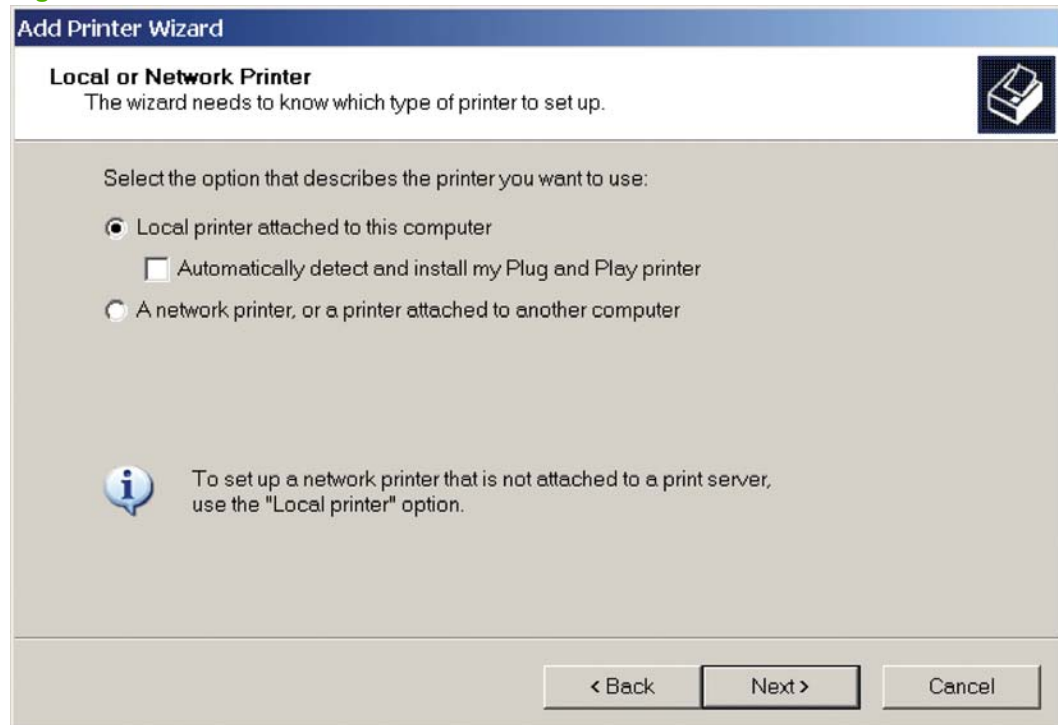
2. Click the **Add a printer** option on the **Printer Tasks** pane.
3. Click the **Next** button on the **Add Printer Wizard** welcome dialog box.

4. If the product is connected to the computer using a USB cable, or is connected via the network without using a print server, select the **Local printer attached to this computer** option, and then click the **Next >** button.

 **NOTE:** If you select the **Automatically detect and install my Plug and Play printer** check box prior to clicking the **Next >** button, the computer will automatically install the print driver.


NOTE: If the product is connected via the network using a print server, select the **A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer** option (Point and Print installation), and then click the **Next >** button. For detailed installation instructions, see [Print sever connection on page 84](#).

Figure 3-9 Local or Network Printer screen



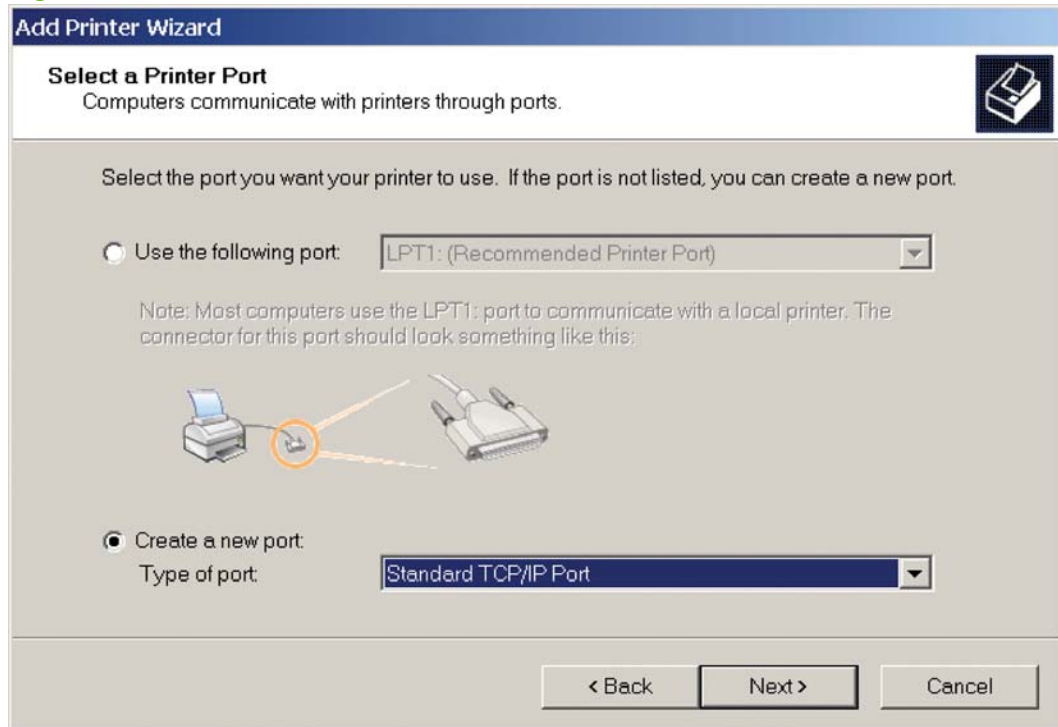
5. If the printer port does not appear in the **Use the following port** drop-down list, select the **Create a new port** option.

- If the **HP Standard TCP/IP Port** option appears in the **Type of port** drop-down list, select this option, and then click the **Next** button. The **Welcome to the Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard** dialog box appears.
- If the **HP Standard TCP/IP Port** option does not appear in the **Type of port** drop-down list, select the **Standard TCP/IP Port** option from the **Type of port** drop-down list, and then click the **Next** button. The **Welcome to the Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard** dialog box appears.

 **NOTE:** The **HP Standard TCP/IP Port** option provides additional network functionality and is the recommended printer port for HP products.

NOTE: If the printer port already appears in the **Use the following port** drop-down list, see [Use an existing port for a direct connection on page 73](#). If the product is connected via the network using a print server, see [Print sever connection on page 84](#).

Figure 3-10 Select a Printer Port screen




6. Click the **Next >** button.

Figure 3-11 Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port screen

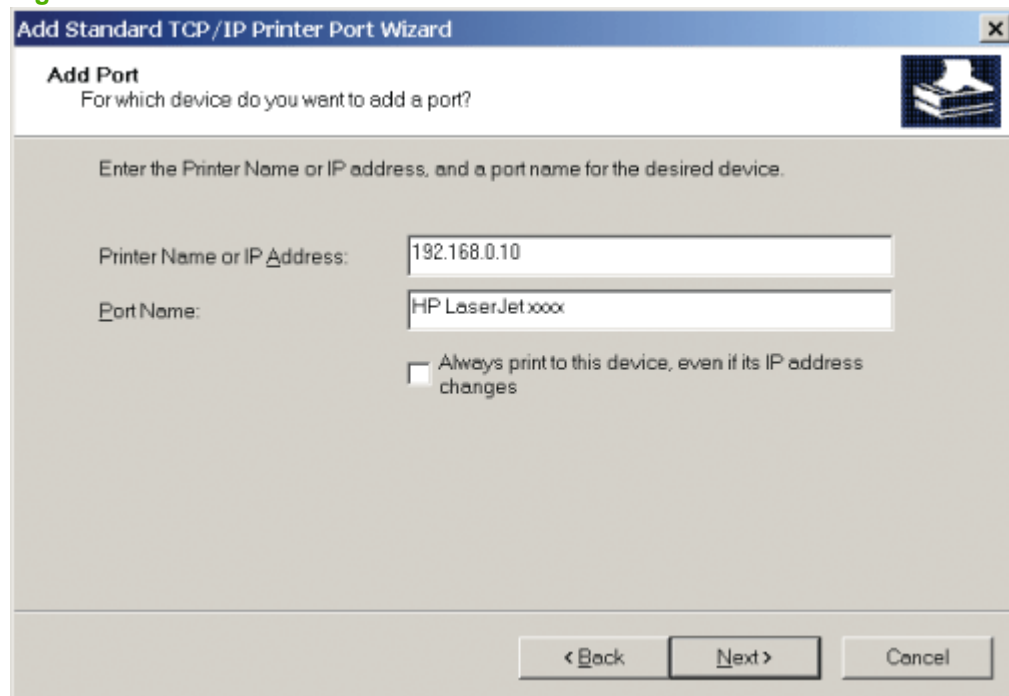


7. Type the product's IP address or host name in the **Printer Name or IP Address** text box, and then click the **Next** button.

 **NOTE:** The default port name is the name that you typed in the **Printer Name or IP Address** text box. You can change this name by typing a new name in the **Port Name** text box.

NOTE: The **Always print to this device, even if its IP address changes** check box is only available if you select the **HP Standard TCP/IP Port** option from the **Select a Printer Port** dialog box. This feature allows the computer to communicate with the product using the MAC address of the network card rather than the IP address.

Figure 3-12 Add Port screen



8. Review the installation details, and then click the **Finish** button to complete the Add Printer Wizard.

Print sever connection

Perform the following when the product is connected via the network using a print server:

1. On the **Start** menu, click the **Settings** option, and then
Windows 2000: Click the **Printers** option.
-or-
Windows XP Home: Click the **Printers and Other Hardware Devices** option.
-or-
Windows XP Professional, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Server 2008: Click the **Printers and Faxes** option.
-or-
Windows Vista: Under the **Hardware and Sound** category, click the **Printer** option.
2. Click the **Add a printer** option. The Add Printer Wizard opens.
3. Click the **Next** button on the **Add Printer Wizard** welcome dialog box.

4. If the product is connected via the network using a print server, select the **A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer** option, and then click the **Next >** button.


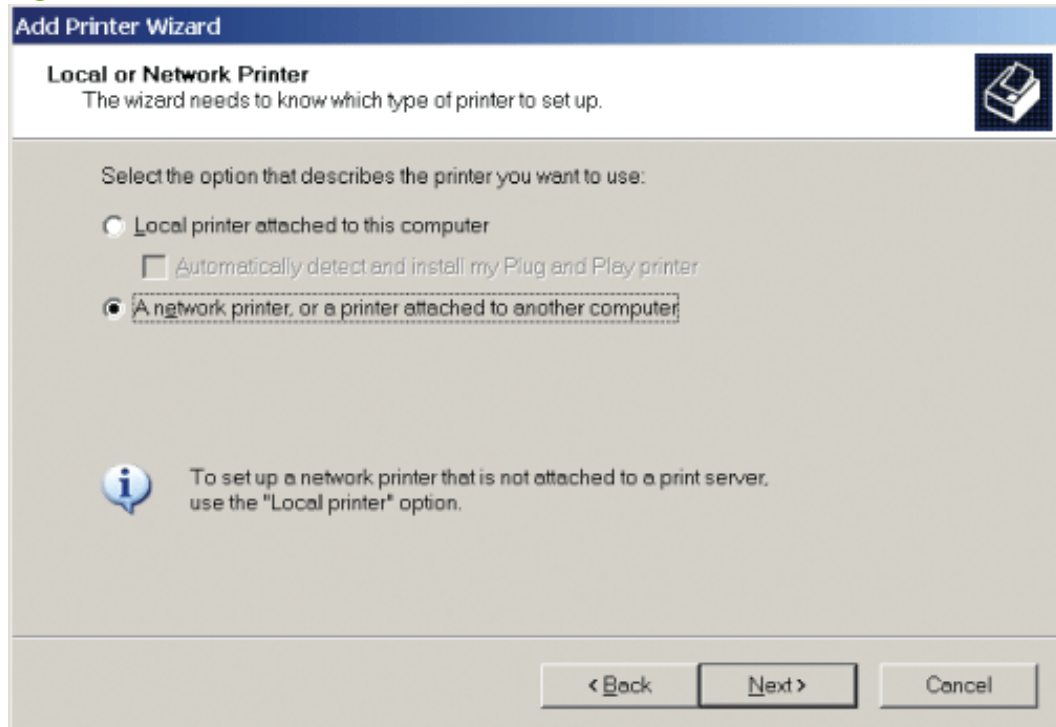
 **NOTE:** If the product is connected to the computer using a USB cable, or is connected via the network without using a print server, select the **Local printer attached to this computer** option, and then click the **Next >** button. You can also select the **Automatically detect and install my Plug and Play printer** check box prior to clicking the **Next >** button to have the computer automatically install the print driver. For detailed installation instructions, see either [Use an existing port for a direct connection on page 73](#) or see [Create a new TCP/IP port for a direct connection on page 80](#).

Figure 3-13 Add Printer Wizard — Local or Network Printer screen



5. Select either the **Find a printer in the directory** option, the **Connect to this printer (or to browse for a printer, select this option and click Next)** option, or the **Connect to a printer on the Internet or on a home or office network** option, and then click the **Next >** button.

Figure 3-14 Add Printer Wizard — Specify A Printer screen

Add Printer Wizard

Specify a Printer
If you don't know the name or address of the printer, you can search for a printer that meets your needs.

What printer do you want to connect to?

☒ Find a printer in the directory

☐ Connect to this printer (or to browse for a printer, select this option and click Next):

Name:

Example: \\server\printer

☐ Connect to a printer on the Internet or on a home or office network:

URL:

Example: http://server/printers/myprinter/.printer

< Back Next > Cancel

If you select the **Find a printer in the directory** option and then click the **Next >** button, you will continue to the **Find Printers** dialog box.

If you select the **Connect to this printer (or to browse for a printer, select this option and click Next)** option and then click the **Next >** button, you will continue to the **Browse for Printer** dialog box.

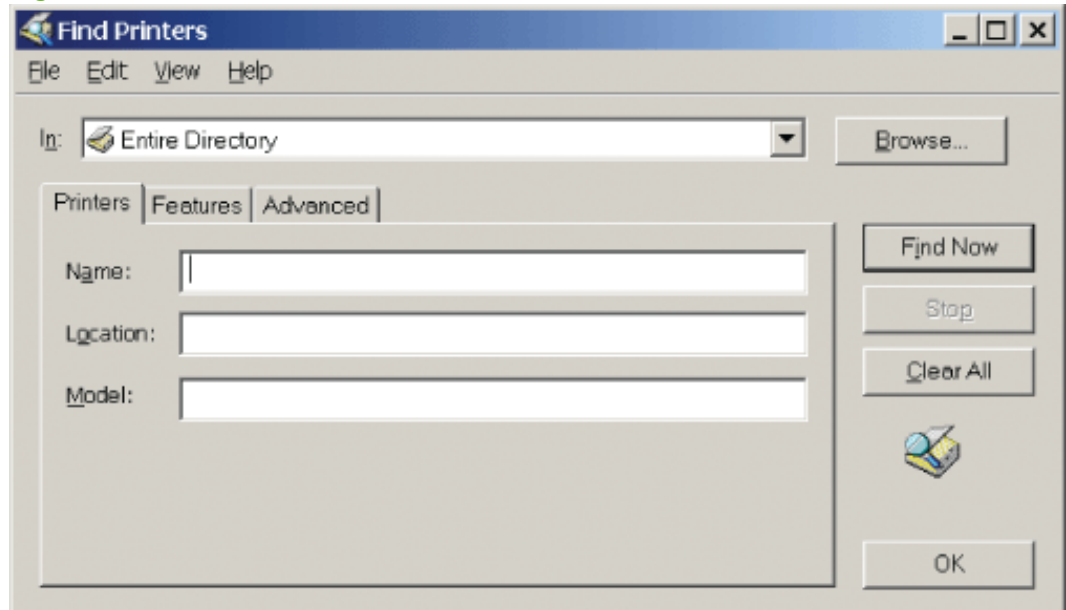
If you select the **Connect to a printer on the Internet or on a home or office network** option and then click the **Next >** button, you will continue to the **Completing the Add Printer Wizard** dialog box.

Select one of the following options:

a. (Find a printer in the directory option only)

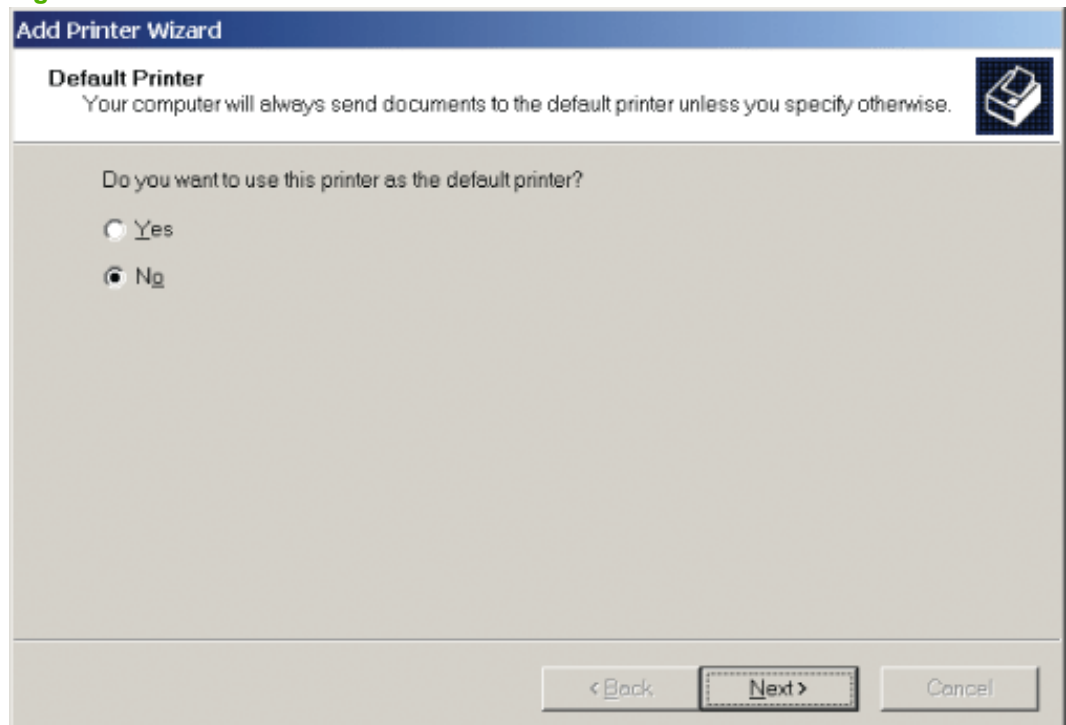
Specify search attributes to find your product on the network, and then click the **Find Now** button to search the specified location for your product. Once the search has completed, select the product, and then click the **OK** button to continue to the **Default Printer** dialog box.

Figure 3-15 Add Printer Wizard — Find Printers screen



Select either the **Yes** option to use this printer as the default printer, or select the **No** option to keep the existing product as the default printer, and then click the **Next >** button to continue to the **Completing the Add Printer Wizard** dialog box.

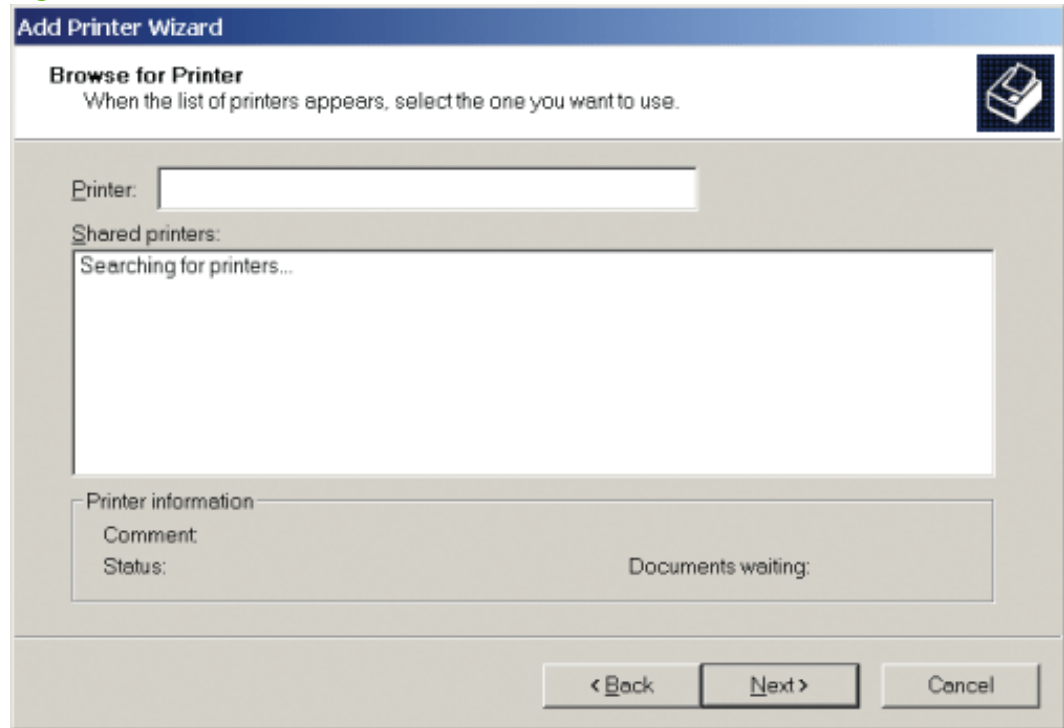
Figure 3-16 Add Printer Wizard — Default Printer screen



- b. (Connect to this printer (or to browse for a printer, select this option and click Next) option only)

Specify the print path for the product and then click the **Next >** button. The computer will search the network for shared products. Select the product from the list and then click the **Next >** button to continue to the **Completing the Add Printer Wizard** dialog box.

Figure 3-17 Add Printer Wizard — Browse for Printer screen



- c. (Connect to a printer on the Internet or on a home or office network option only)

Type the URL for the product, and then click the **Next >** button. Follow the onscreen instructions to connect to the product, and then you will continue to the **Completing the Add Printer Wizard** dialog box.

6. Review the installation details, and then click the **Finish** button to complete the Add Printer Wizard.

Microsoft Windows installation for computers on a network

Install the driver from a network location or from downloaded files

Follow these instructions if you are installing the printing-system files from a network location or from downloaded files. You might need to see your network administrator for the location of the printing-system software file.

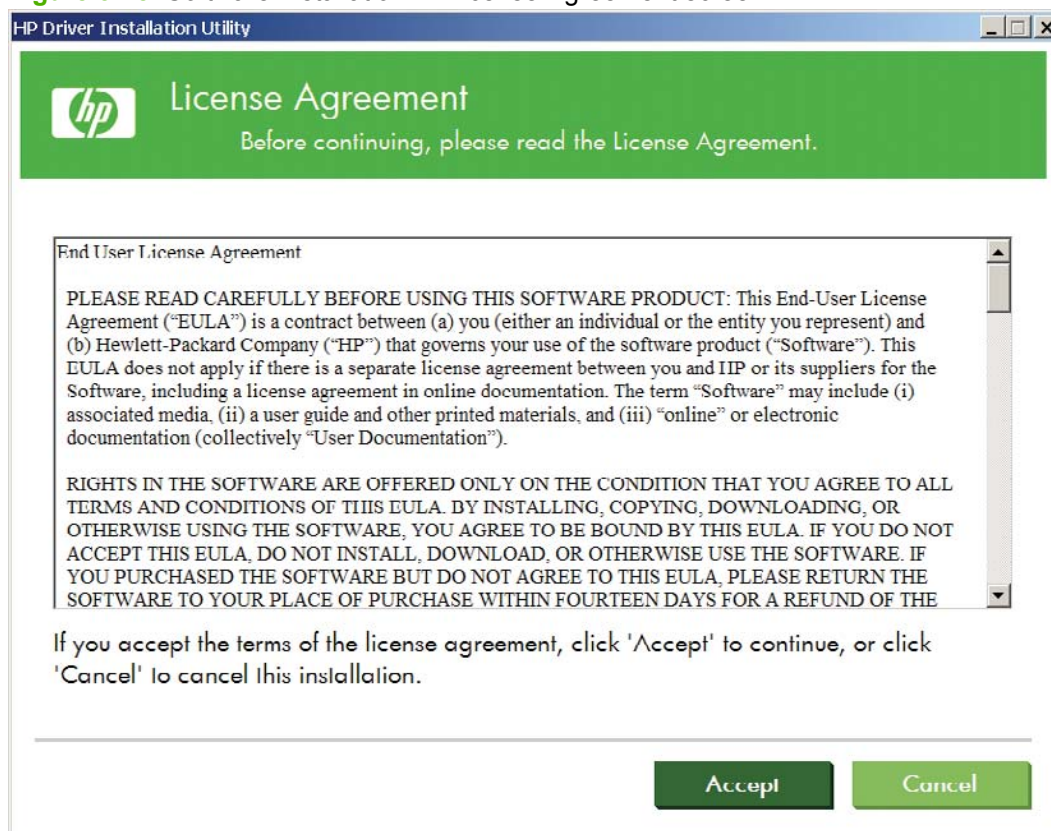
1. Browse to the location of the SETUP.EXE file.
2. Double-click the SETUP.EXE file.
3. Click **Install** and continue to follow the instructions until the product is installed. For detailed installation instructions, see [Detailed MS Windows installation instructions on page 96](#).

Install the driver using downloaded files and the HP Driver Installation Utility (HPDIU)

Follow these instructions if you downloaded the driver from the Web. The driver available on the Web uses the HPDIU to install the driver on networked computers.

1. Close all programs.
2. Browse to the location of the SETUP.EXE file.
3. Double-click the SETUP.EXE file.
4. Read the license agreement, and then click the **Accept** button to continue to the **Device Connection** screen.

Figure 3-18 Software Installation — License Agreement screen



5. Select an option for how the device will be connected to the computer.

Figure 3-19 Software Installation — Device Connection screen

HP Driver Installation Utility

Device Connection
How will your device be connected to this computer?

☒ Connected directly to the computer
I want my device to connect directly to my computer (e.g., printer cable).

☐ Connected via the network
I want my device to connect to my computer using the network.

[Help me find my device on the network](#)

Device to install:

☐ Host Name

☐ IP Address


☐ Hardware Address

< Back Install Cancel


If the device is connected to the product using a USB cable, select the **Connected directly to the computer** option and then click the **Install** button. Once the software is installed, you will continue to the **Driver Installation Complete** screen.

If the device's networking settings are known, select the **Connected via the network** option, enter either the Host Name, IP Address, or the Hardware Address, and then click the **Install** button. Once the software is installed, you will continue to the **Driver Installation Complete** screen.

If the product's network settings are not known, click the **Help me find my device on the network** button. You will continue to the **Devices Found** screen once the computer has finished searching the network for HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series products.

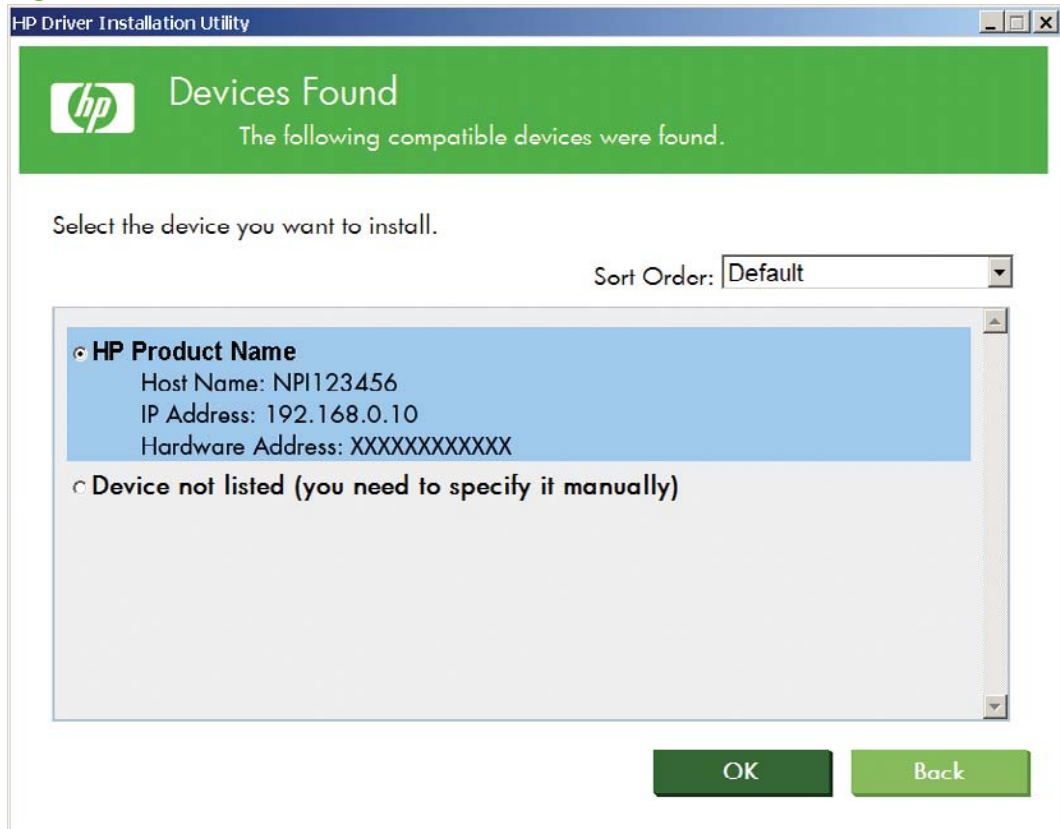
 **NOTE:** To find the product network settings, follow these directions to print a configuration page from the product control panel.

Print a configuration page

- a. Press the **menu** button  to open the menus.
- b. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to **INFORMATION**, and then press **OK**.
- c. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to **PRINT CONFIGURATION**.
- d. Press **OK** to print the configuration page.

6. A list of HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series products is displayed. Select the product you want to install and click the **OK** button to continue to the **Device Connection** screen.

Figure 3-20 Device Connection — Devices Found screen



7. The network settings (Host Name, IP Address, and Hardware Address) for the product are displayed. Click the **Install** button. Once the software is installed, you will continue to the **Driver Installation Complete** screen.

Figure 3-21 Software Installation — Device Connection screen 2

HP Driver Installation Utility - HP Color LaserJet CP3525 PCL 6

Device Connection

How will your device be connected to this computer?

☐ Connected directly to the computer
I want my device to connect directly to my computer (e.g., printer cable).

☒ Connected via the network
I want my device to connect to my computer using the network.

[Help me find my device on the network](#)

Device to install:

☐ Host Name NPJA2115D

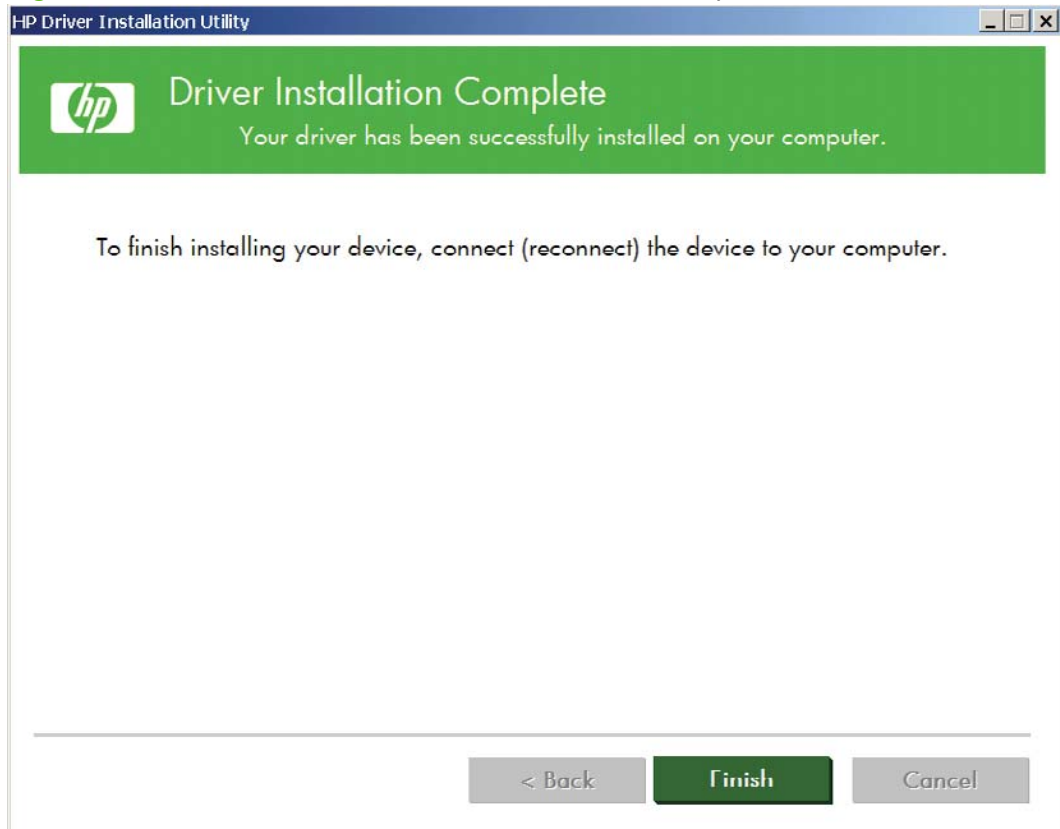
☒ IP Address 92.168.0.10

☐ Hardware Address 000D9DA2115D

< Back Install Cancel

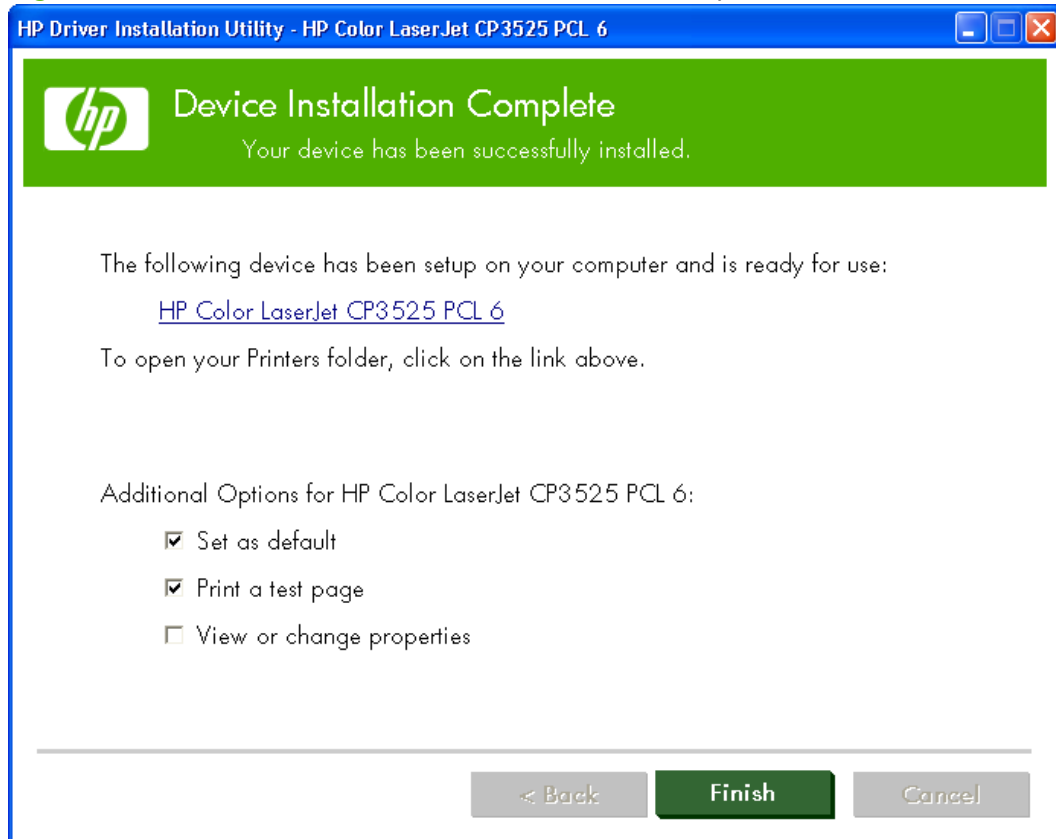
8. If you selected the **Connected directly to the computer** installation method, the following screen will appear at the conclusion of the software installation:

Figure 3-22 Software Installation — Driver Installation Complete screen 1



9. If you selected the **Connected via the network** installation method, the following screen will appear at the conclusion of the software installation:

Figure 3-23 Software Installation — Driver Installation Complete screen 2



Point and Print installation for Windows 2000, XP, Server 2003, Server 2008, and Vista

The following information helps you install a print driver by using the Microsoft Point and Print function when you cannot see the product on the network.

Point and Print is a Microsoft term that describes a two-step driver installation process:

1. Install a shared driver on a network print server.
2. "Point" to the print server from a network client so that the client can use the print driver.

Hewlett-Packard provides drivers that are compatible with the Point and Print feature, but this is a function of the Microsoft operating systems, not of HP print drivers. Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Vista drivers from HP are supported only on Intel x86 processor types.

In a homogenous operating system environment (clients and servers running the same operating system), the same print-driver version that is vended from the server to the clients in a Point and Print environment also runs and controls the print queue configuration on the server.

However, in a mixed operating system environment (servers and clients running different operating systems), conflicts can occur when client computers run a version of the print driver that is different from the one on the print server.

In an effort to increase operating system stability, Microsoft determined that in Windows 2000 and all future operating systems, print drivers would run as *user-mode* processes. User-mode drivers run in a protected part of the operating system, as do all of the normal end-user processes and software programs. A user-mode print driver that functions incorrectly can terminate (or “crash”) only the process in which it is running—not the whole operating system. Because access to critical system resources is restricted, overall operating system stability is increased.

Detailed MS Windows installation instructions

The dialog boxes shown here appear in the Windows XP Professional installation sequence. The order and appearance of dialog boxes can vary among operating systems.

Perform the recommended print driver installation using the HP Driver Installation Utility (HPDIU)

The recommended installation (**Install Now**) installs the PCL 6 print driver, screen fonts, and user guide. For information about how to perform an advanced (customized) installation, see [Performing an advanced print driver installation using the HP Driver Installation Utility \(HPDIU\) on page 105](#).

A series of dialog boxes appear during installation of the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series printing-system software in Windows environments.



NOTE: You can return to the previous dialog box by clicking the **Back** button, or exit the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series printing-system software installation by clicking the **Cancel** button.

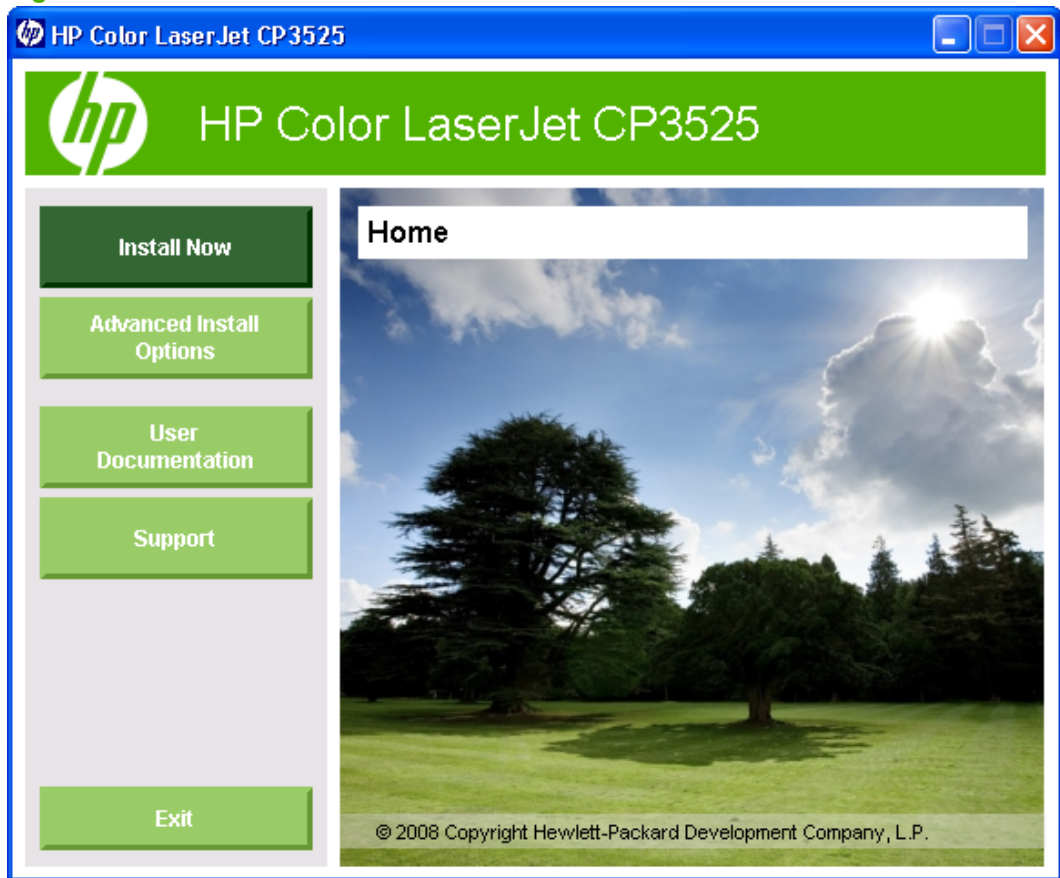
1. Close all programs.
2. Insert the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 printing system software CD into the CD-ROM drive. The software installer detects the language of the operating system, and then displays the main menu of the CD Browser program in the same language.

If the installer program has not started after 30 seconds, complete these steps:

- a. On the **Start** menu, click the **Run** option.
- b. Type the following: X:\SETUP.EXE (where X is the letter of the CD-ROM drive).
- c. Click the **OK** button.

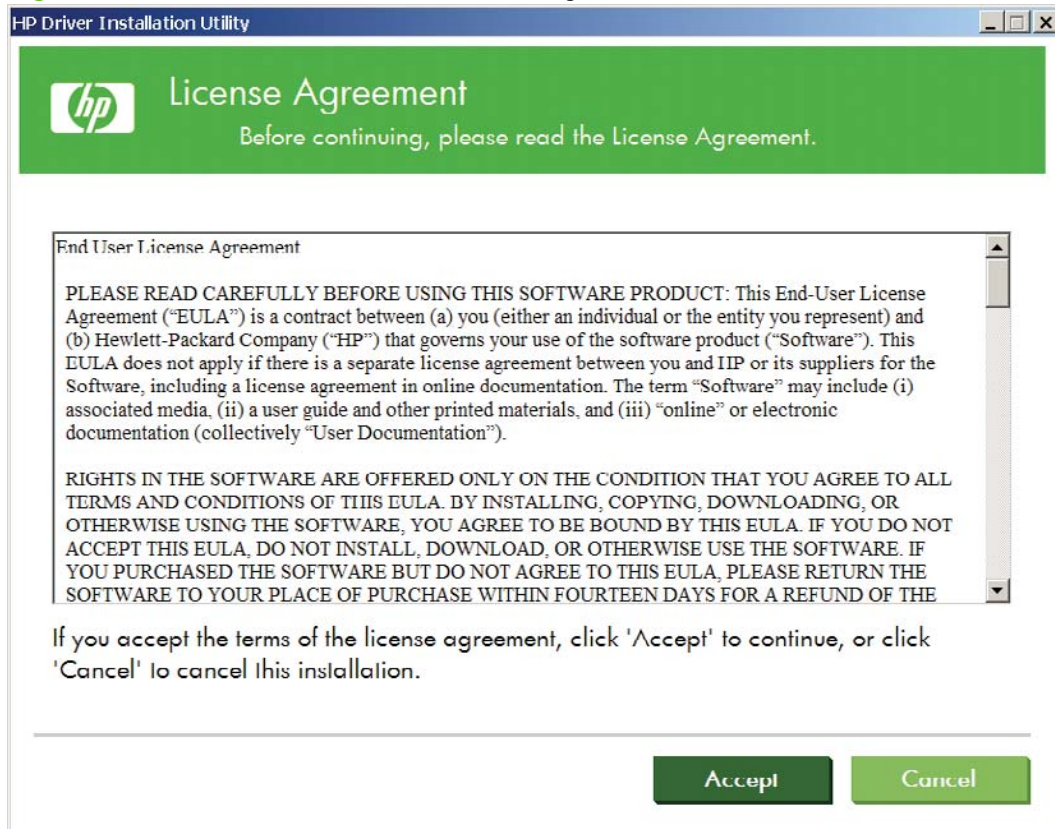
3. Click the **Install Now** button to begin the installation process.

Figure 3-24 Software Installation — Initial screen



4. After reading the license agreement, click the **Accept** button to continue to the **Device Connection** screen.

Figure 3-25 Software Installation — License Agreement screen



5. Select an option based on how the product will be connected to the computer.

Figure 3-26 Software Installation — Device Connection screen

HP Driver Installation Utility

Device Connection

How will your device be connected to this computer?

☒ Connected directly to the computer
I want my device to connect directly to my computer (e.g., printer cable).

☐ Connected via the network
I want my device to connect to my computer using the network.

[Help me find my device on the network](#)

Device to install:


☐ Host Name

☐ IP Address

☐ Hardware Address

[< Back](#) [Install](#) [Cancel](#)

- **Connected directly to the computer:** Select this option and then click the **Install** button if the product will be connected to the computer using a USB cable. Once the software is installed, the **Driver Installation Complete** screen appears.

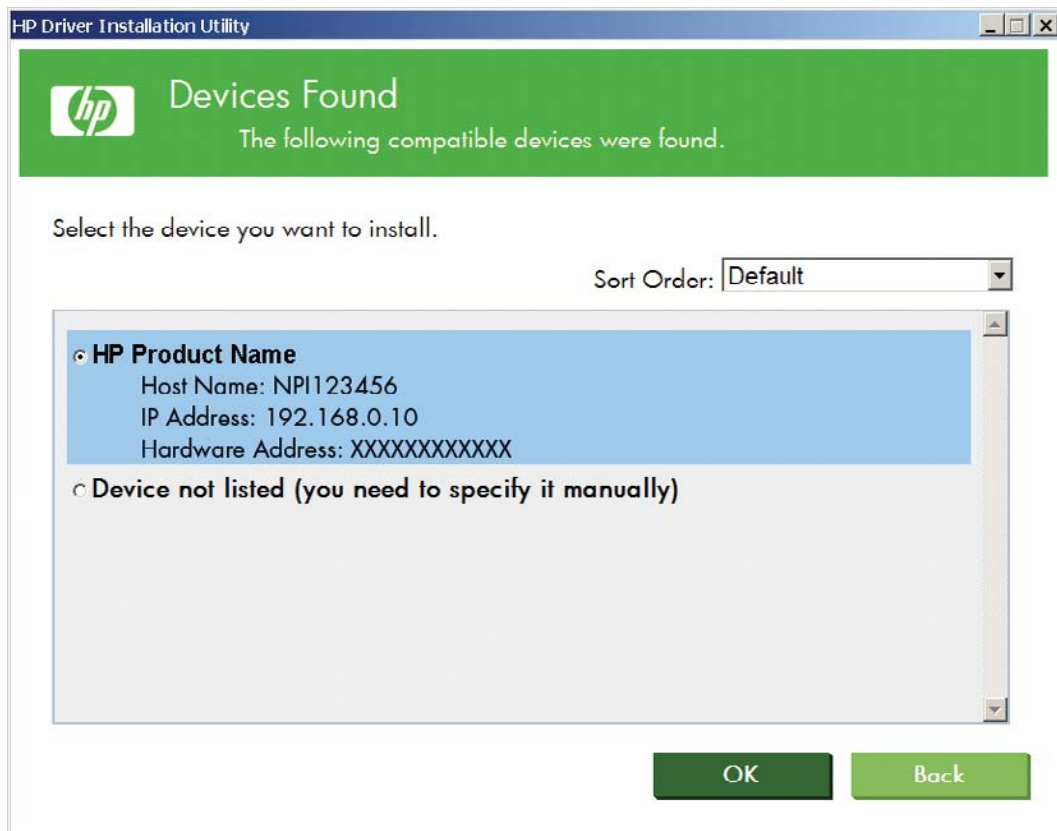
 **NOTE:** If you choose this option, the printer should not be connected to the computer until prompted during the installation process.

-or-

- **Connected via the network:** Select this option if the product will be connected to the computer using a network cable.
 - If the product's networking settings are known, you can enter either the Host Name, IP Address, or the Hardware Address, and then click the **Install** button. Once the software is installed, the **Driver Installation Complete** screen appears.
 - If the product's network settings are not known, click the **Help me find my device on the network** button. A **Discovery in Progress** window appears. After the computer searches the network, the **Devices Found** screen appears.

6. A list of products is displayed. Select the product you want to install and then click the **OK** button to continue to the **Device Connection** screen.

Figure 3-27 Software Installation — Devices Found screen
Software Installation — Devices Found screen



7. The network settings (Host Name, IP Address, and Hardware Address) for the product are displayed. Click the **Install** button. Once the software is installed, you will continue to the **Driver Installation Complete** screen.

Figure 3-28 Software Installation — Device Connection screen 2

HP Driver Installation Utility

Device Connection

How will your device be connected to this computer?

☐ Connected directly to the computer
I want my device to connect directly to my computer (e.g., printer cable).

☒ Connected via the network
I want my device to connect to my computer using the network.

[Help me find my device on the network](#)

Device to install:

☒ Host Name

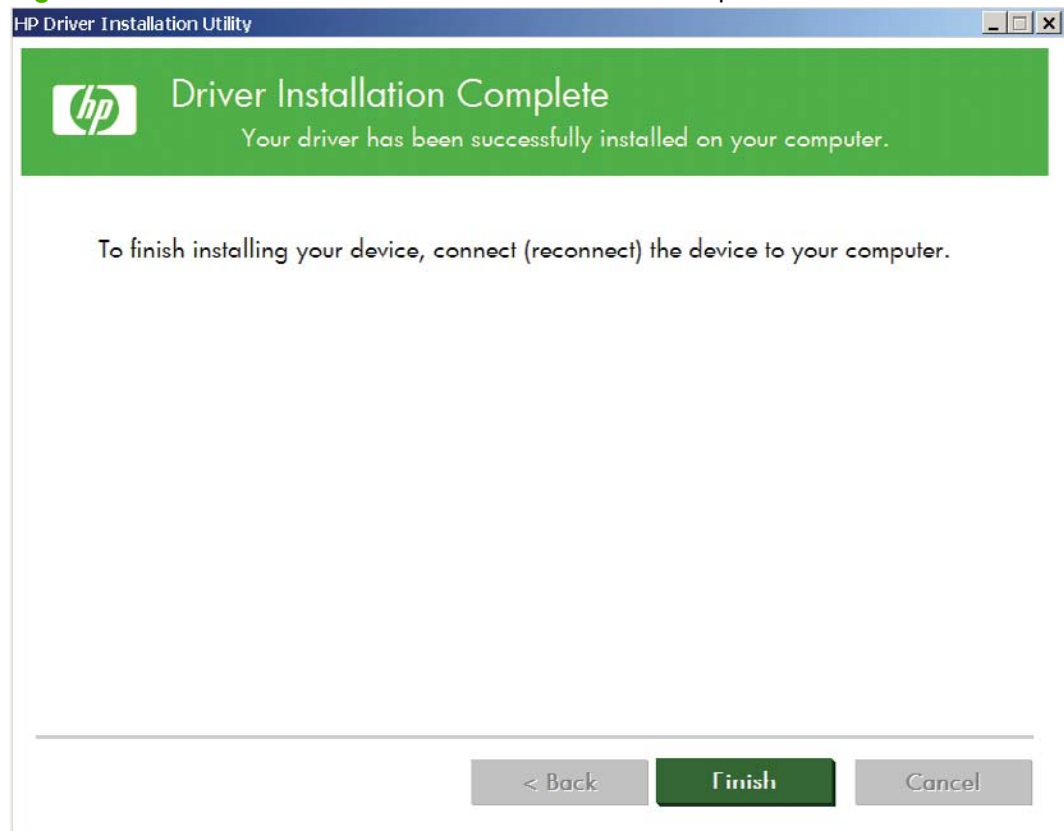
☐ IP Address

☐ Hardware Address

[< Back](#) [Install](#) [Cancel](#)

8. Depending on the installation method, one of the following dialog boxes appears at the conclusion of the software installation:
- If you selected the **Connected directly to the computer** installation method, the following screen appears once the software is installed. Click the **Finish** button to complete the installation.

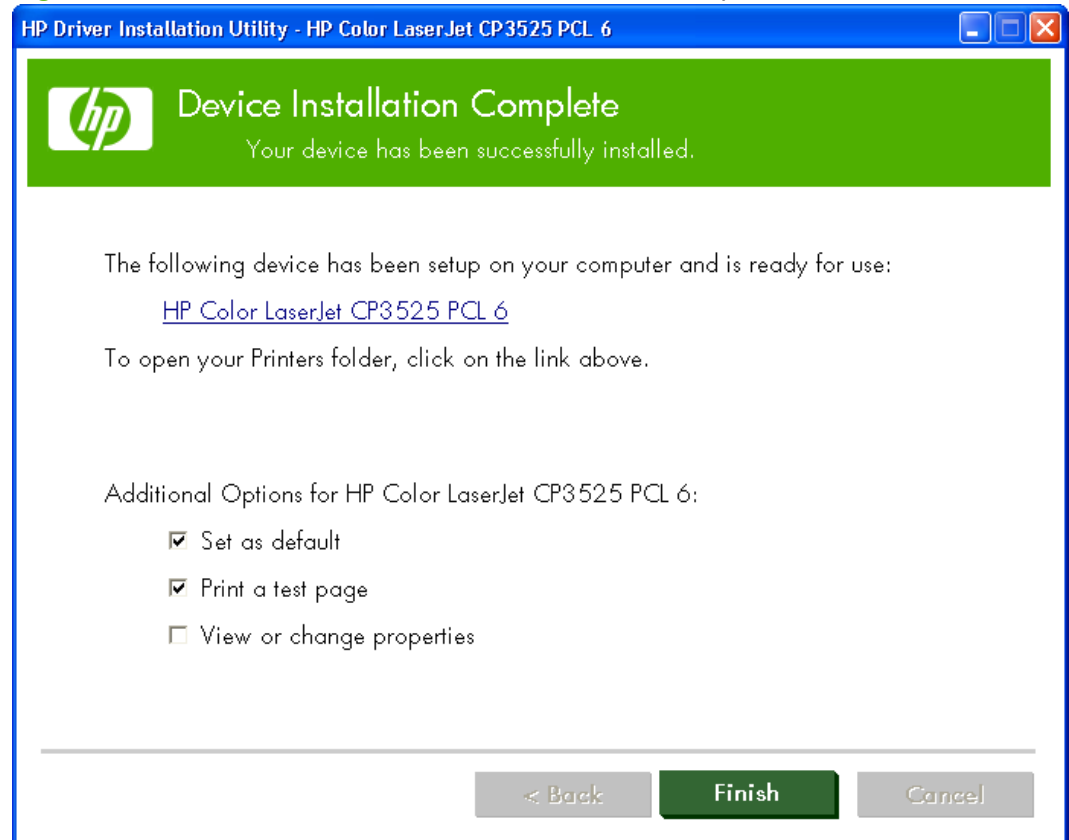
Figure 3-29 Software Installation — Driver Installation Complete screen 1



- If you selected the **Connected via the network** installation method, the following screen appears once the software is installed. You can make this your default product by selecting the **Set as default** check box, send a test page to the product by selecting the **Print a test page** check box, or gain access to the print driver by selecting the **View or change properties** check box.

Click the **Finish** button to complete the installation.

Figure 3-30 Software Installation — Driver Installation Complete screen 2



When you are finished with the installation, the Additional Options screen appears.

Figure 3-31 Additional Options



Use the options available on this screen to install HP Update and marketing resources software, download the HP Easy Printer Care software, check online for product-specific merchandise, and register your product using Web Registration.

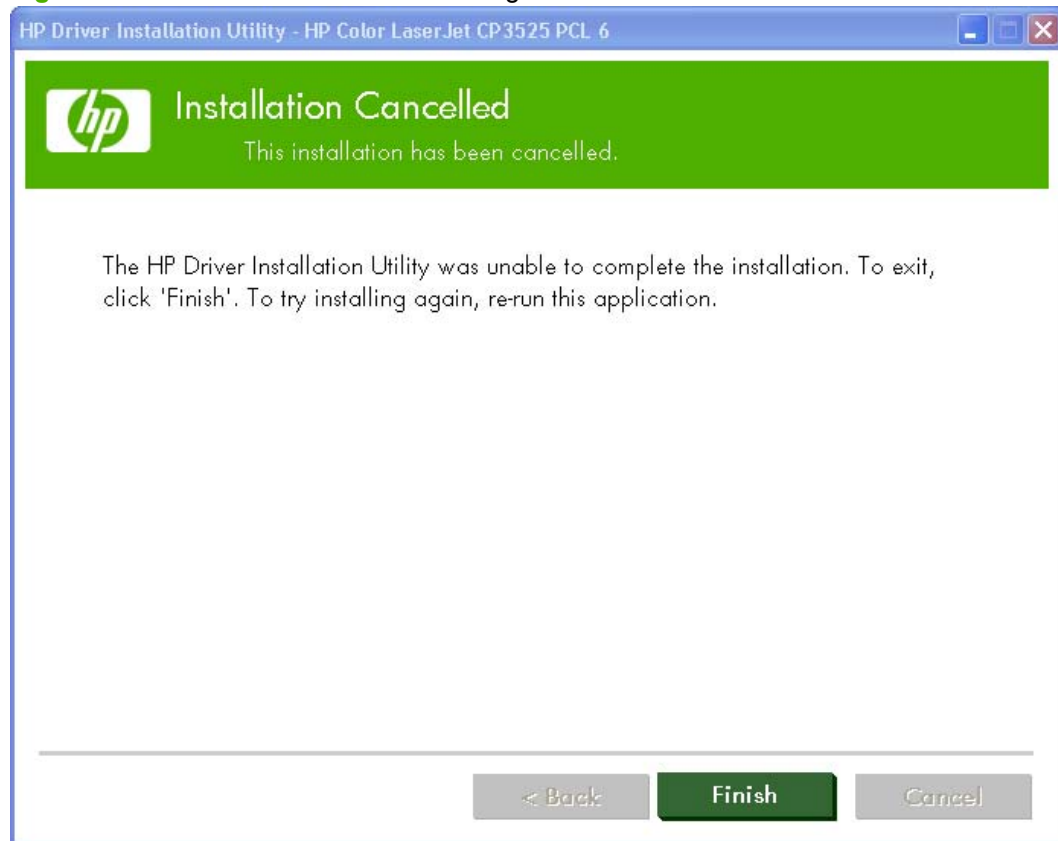
Use the Back, Next, Finish, and Cancel buttons

The following buttons appear on various dialog boxes during the installation process.

- **Back.** Click this button to return to the previous dialog box.
- **Next.** After you select any options on a given screen, click this button to proceed to the next step in the installation sequence.
- **Finish.** Click this button to complete the installation process and proceed to the **Additional Options** screen.

- **Cancel.** Click this button to exit the installer without installing the product. When you click **Cancel**, the **Installation Cancelled** dialog box opens, stating that the installation was cancelled.

Figure 3-32 Installation Cancelled dialog box



Click **Finish** to close the installer.

Performing an advanced print driver installation using the HP Driver Installation Utility (HPDIU)

The advanced installation enables you to select the print drivers and software that you want to install.

A series of dialog boxes appear during installation of the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series printing-system software in Windows environments.

NOTE: You can return to the previous dialog box by clicking the **Back** button, or exit the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series printing-system software installation by clicking the **Cancel** button.

1. Close all programs.
2. Insert the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 printing system software CD into the CD-ROM drive. The software installer detects the language of the operating system, and then displays the main menu of the CD Browser program in the same language.

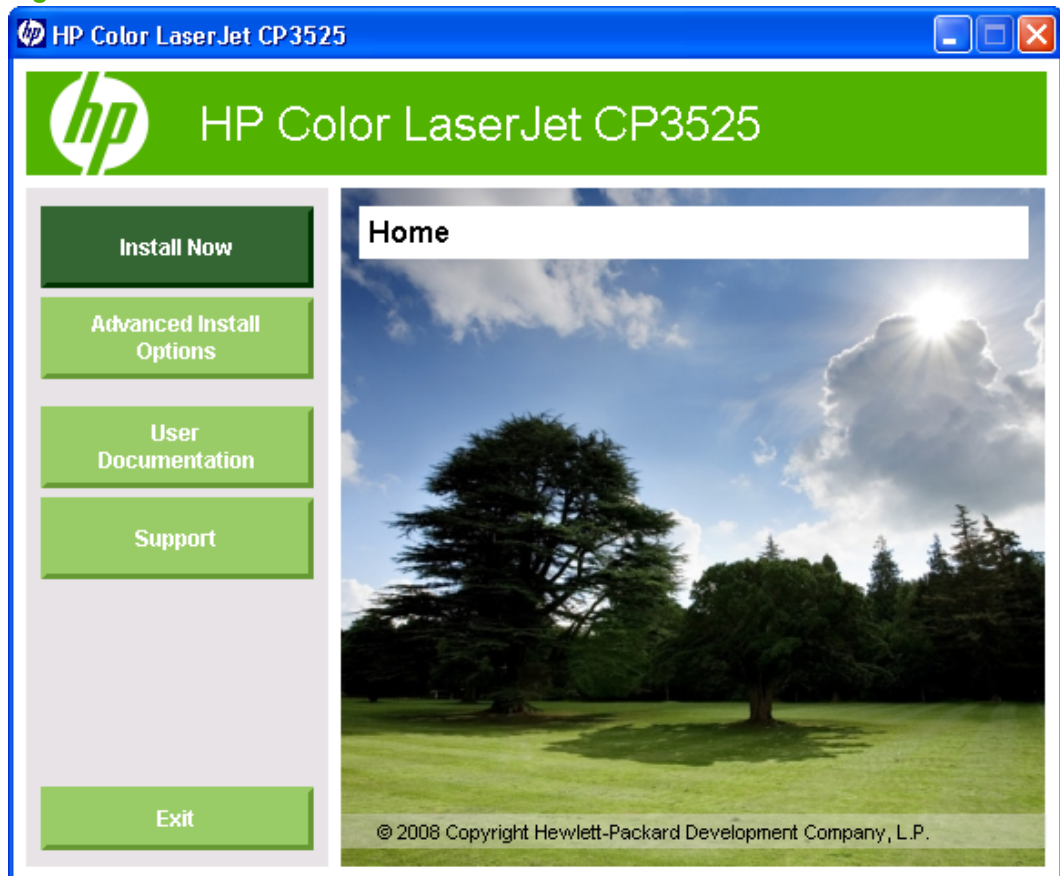
If the installer program has not started after 30 seconds, complete these steps:

- a. On the **Start** menu, click the **Run** option.
- b. Type the following: X:\SETUP.EXE (where X is the letter of the CD-ROM drive).

- c. Click the **OK** button.

This screen appears when the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series software CD is inserted into the CD-ROM drive.

Figure 3-33 Software Installation — Initial screen



3. Click the **Advanced Install Options** button to view the **Advanced Install Options** screen.

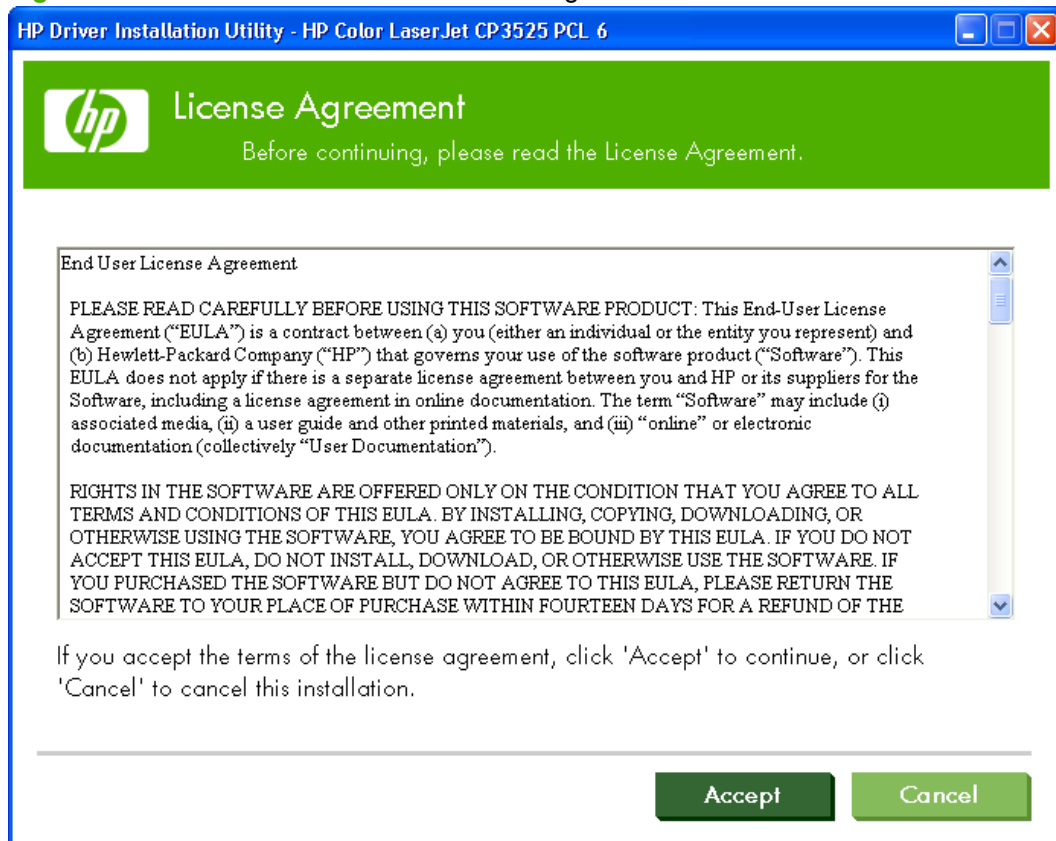
Figure 3-34 Software Installation — Advanced Installation Options screen



4. Click the button for the print driver that you want to install. This begins the installation process.

5. After reading the license agreement, click the **Accept** button to continue to the **Device Connection** screen.

Figure 3-35 Software Installation — License Agreement screen



6. Select an option based on how the product will be connected to the computer.

Figure 3-36 Software Installation — Device Connection screen

HP Driver Installation Utility - HP Color LaserJet CP3525 PCL 6

Device Connection
How will your device be connected to this computer?

☐ Connected directly to the computer
I want my device to connect directly to my computer (e.g., printer cable).

☒ Connected via the network
I want my device to connect to my computer using the network.

Help me find my device on the network

Device to install:


☒ Host Name

☐ IP Address

☐ Hardware Address

< Back **Install** **Cancel**

- **Connected directly to the computer:** Select this option and then click the **Install** button if the product will be connected to the computer using a USB cable. Once the software is installed, the **Driver Installation Complete** screen appears.

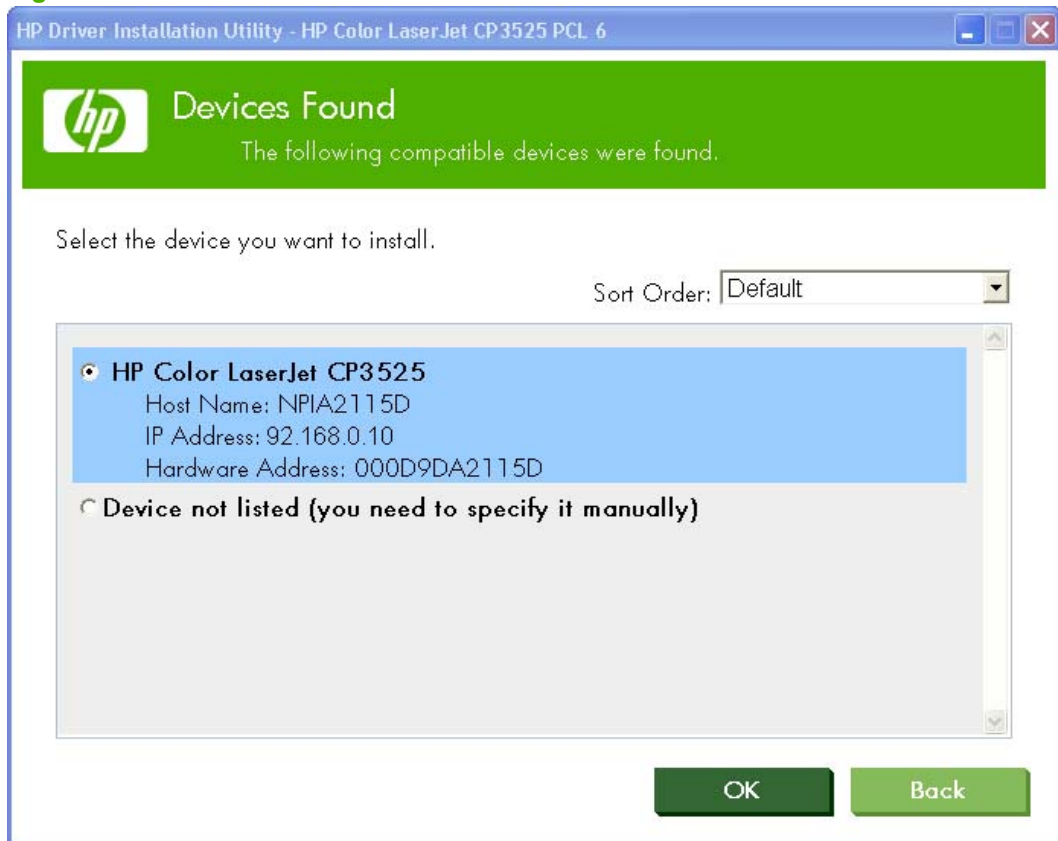
 **NOTE:** If you choose this option, the printer should not be connected to the computer until prompted during the installation process.

-or-

- **Connected via the network:** Select this option if the product will be connected to the computer using a network cable.
 - If the product's networking settings are known, you can enter either the **Host Name**, **IP Address**, or the **Hardware Address**, and then click the **Install** button. Once the software is installed, the **Driver Installation Complete** screen appears.
 - If the product's network settings are not known, click the **Help me find my device on the network** button. A **Discovery in Progress** window appears. After the computer searches the network, the **Devices Found** screen appears.

7. A list of products is displayed. Select the product you want to install and then click the **OK** button to continue to the **Device Connection** screen.

Figure 3-37 Software Installation — Devices Found



8. The network settings (Host Name, IP Address, and Hardware Address) for the product are displayed. Click the **Install** button. Once the software is installed, you will continue to the **Driver Installation Complete** screen.

Figure 3-38 Software Installation — Device Connection screen 2

HP Driver Installation Utility

Device Connection

How will your device be connected to this computer?

☐ Connected directly to the computer
I want my device to connect directly to my computer (e.g., printer cable).

☒ Connected via the network
I want my device to connect to my computer using the network.

[Help me find my device on the network](#)

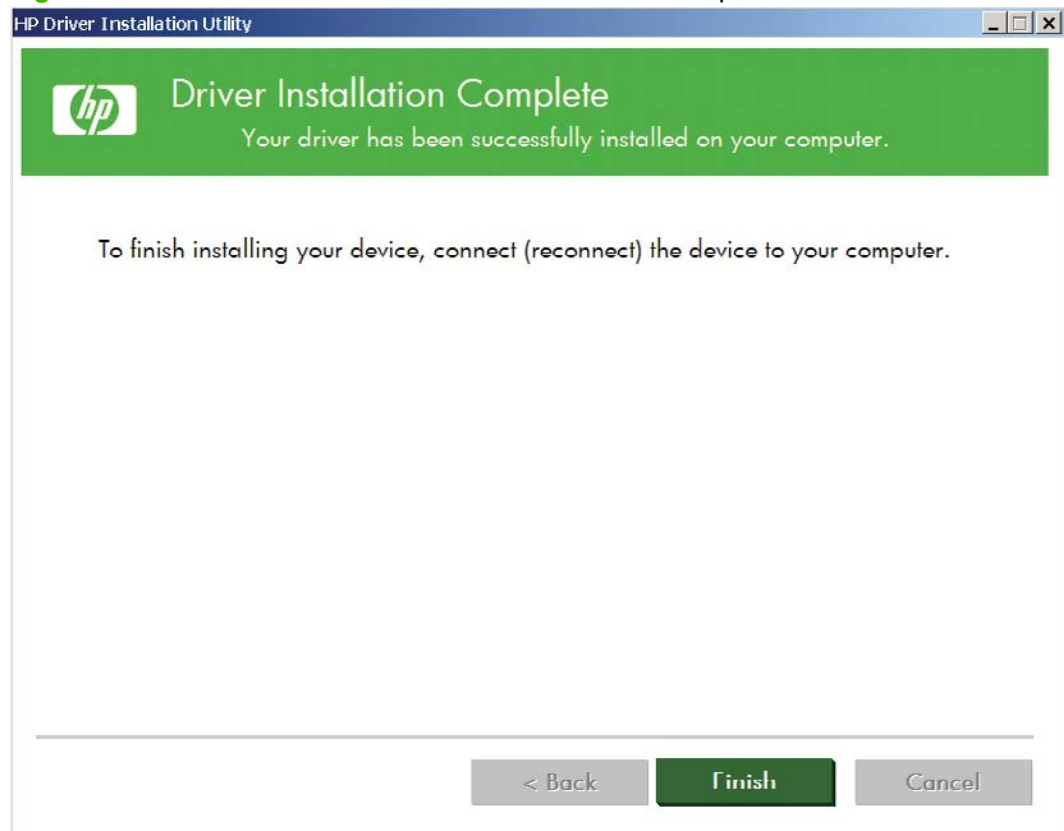
Device to install:

| | |
|--|--------------|
| <input checked="" type="radio"/> Host Name | NP123456 |
| <input type="radio"/> IP Address | 192.168.0.10 |
| <input type="radio"/> Hardware Address | XXXXXXXXXXXX |

< Back Install Cancel

9. Depending on the installation method, one of the following dialog boxes appears at the conclusion of the software installation:
- If you selected the **Connected directly to the computer** installation method, the following screen appears once the software is installed. Click the **Finish** button to complete the installation.

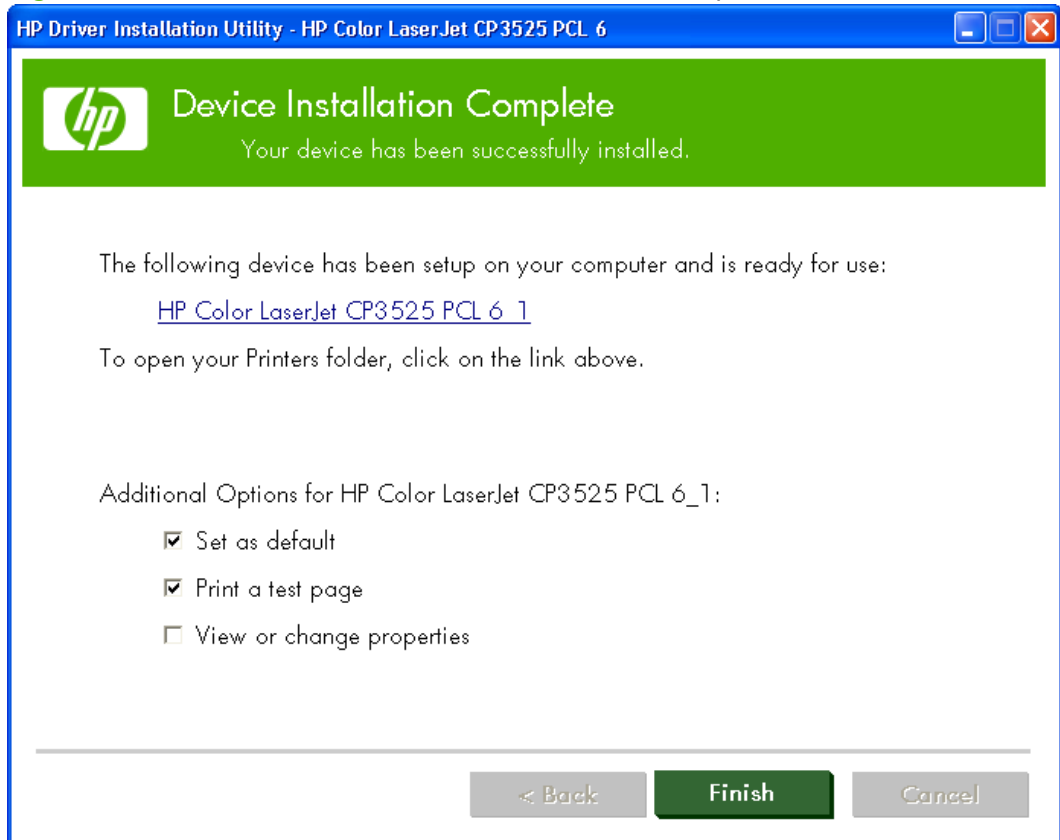
Figure 3-39 Software Installation — Driver Installation Complete screen



- If you selected the **Connected via the network** installation method, the following screen appears once the software is installed. You can make this your default product by selecting the **Set as default** check box, send a test page to the product by selecting the **Print a test page** check box, or gaining access to the print driver by selecting the **View or change properties** check box.

Click the **Finish** button to complete the installation.

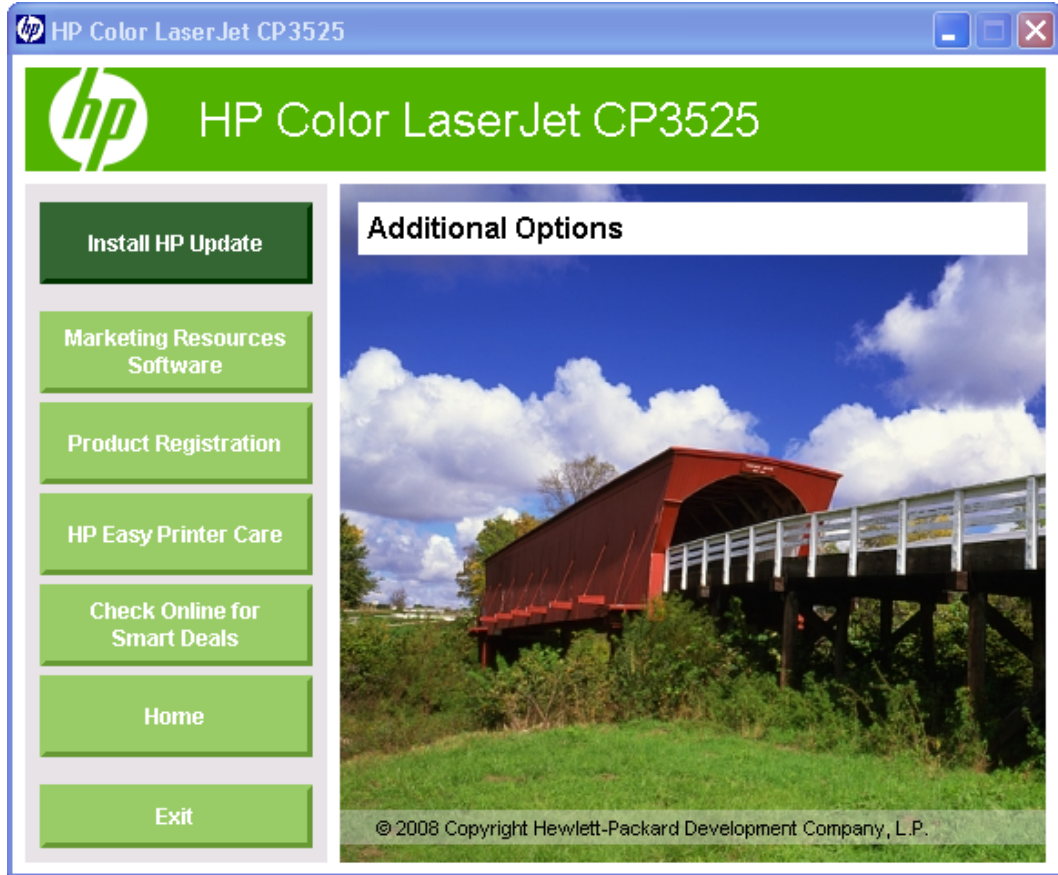
Figure 3-40 Software Installation — Driver Installation Complete screen 2



When the installation is complete, the **Additional Options** screen appears.

You can click on any of the **Additional Options** buttons, return to the **Home** screen, or exit the HPDIU.

Figure 3-41 Software Installation — Additional Options screen



Use the options available on this screen to install HP Update and marketing resources software, download the HP Easy Printer Care software, check online for product-specific merchandise, and register your product using Web Registration.

Set a default printer

1. In Windows Vista, click the **Start** button, click **Control Panel**, and then click **Hardware and Sound**. Under the **Printers** section, click **Change default printer**.

In Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Server 2008, click **Start**, click **Control Panel**, and then click **Printers and Faxes** (Windows XP Professional) or **Printers and other hardware devices** (Windows XP Home).

In Windows 2000 operating systems, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

2. Right-click the product that you want to set as the default printer.
3. Click **Set As Default**. A check mark appears next to the menu option.

Uninstall instructions

Use these instructions to uninstall the product using the Windows Add or Remove Programs feature.

 **NOTE:** You must have Administrator privileges to uninstall the product using Add or Remove Programs.

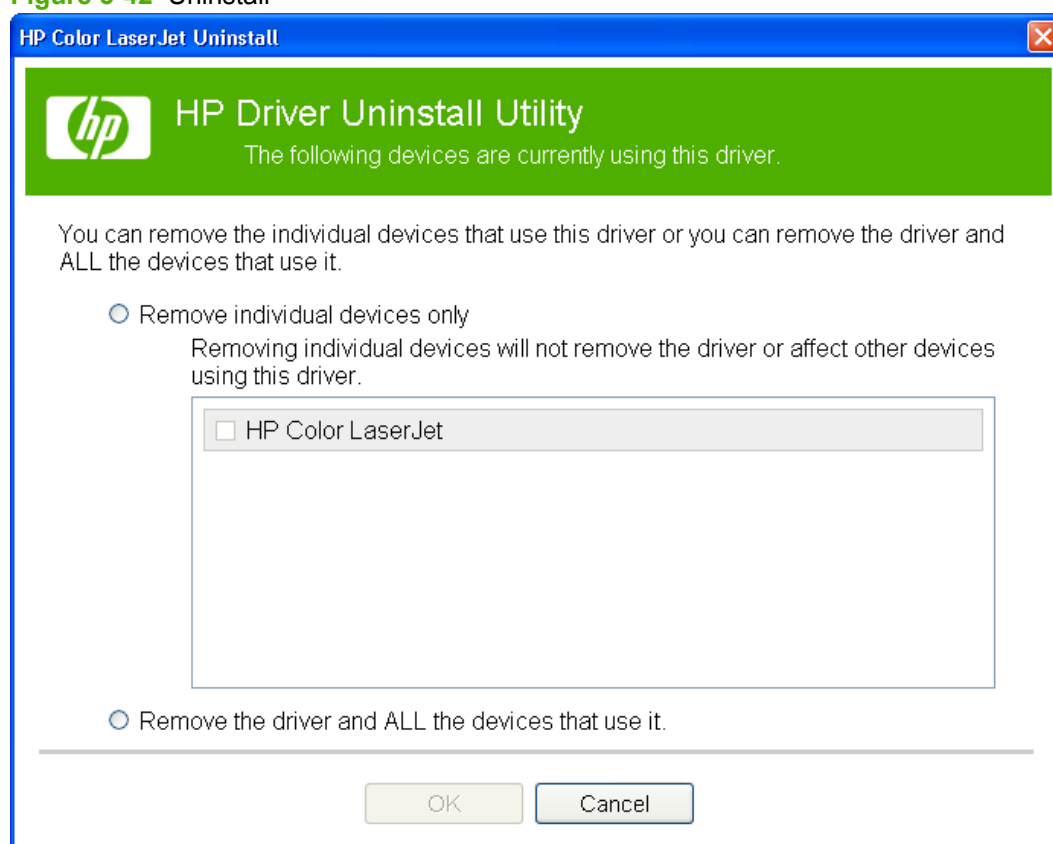
1. In Windows Vista, click the **Start** button, click **Control Panel**, and then click **Add or Remove Programs**.

In Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Server 2008, click **Start**, click **Control Panel**, and then double-click **Add or Remove Programs**.

In Windows 2000, click **Start**, click **Settings**, click **Control Panel**, and then click **Add or Remove Programs**.

2. Click the entry for the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product, and then click **Remove**. The following screen appears.

Figure 3-42 Uninstall



Select the uninstall option that you want to perform, and then click **OK** to initiate the uninstall process.

4 HP PCL 6 Print Driver for Windows

Introduction

This chapter describes the features of the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series PCL 6 Print Driver for Windows 2000, Windows XP (32-bit and 64-bit), Windows Server 2003 (32-bit and 64-bit), Windows Server 2008 (32-bit and 64-bit), and Windows Vista (32-bit and 64-bit).

You can control print jobs from several places:

- the product control panel
- the software program print dialog box
- the driver user interface

Generally, for features that are duplicated in more than one location (for instance, you can select the paper input tray from any of them), settings that are established in the software program take precedence over print-driver settings. Print-driver settings, in turn, override product control-panel settings.

When you install the printing-system software in Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Vista, the HP PCL 6 Print Driver is installed by default through the installer. The HP PS Universal Print Driver can be installed by performing an Advanced Installation, and the HP PCL 5 Universal Print Driver can be installed by downloading the software from the Web.

Topics:

- [Access print drivers](#)
- [Help system](#)
- [Advanced tab features](#)
- [Printing Shortcuts tab features](#)
- [Paper/Quality tab features](#)
- [Effects tab features](#)
- [Finishing tab features](#)
- [Job Storage tab features](#)
- [Color tab features](#)
- [Services tab features](#)
- [Device Settings tab features](#)

- [About tab features](#)

Access print drivers

Depending on the operating system on which you are installing the print drivers, you can gain access to the print drivers and different print-driver interfaces in several ways.

To gain access to the print-driver settings from within most software programs, follow these steps:

1. Click **File**.
2. Click **Print**.
3. Click **Properties**.

The appearance and names of the driver tabs can vary, depending on the operating system. These driver settings apply only while that software program is open.

You can control the drivers directly from the Printers folder. Here you have access to two sets of driver tabs: the **Printing Preferences** tabs and the **Properties** tabs. The settings that you make on the **Printing Preferences** driver tabs control the driver default settings for each user's profile. Installable options can be configured in **Properties** driver tabs.

Printing Preferences driver tabs

The **Printing Preferences** driver tabs change the default settings that are used across all software programs. To gain access to these tabs, follow these steps:

1. In Windows Vista, click the **Start** button, click **Control Panel**, click **Hardware and Sound**, and then click **Printers**.

In Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Server 2008, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.

In Windows 2000, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.
2. Right-click the product name.
3. Click **Printing Preferences**.

The following **Printing Preferences** print-driver tabs are available:

- **Advanced**
- **Printing Shortcuts**
- **Paper/Quality**
- **Effects**
- **Finishing**
- **Job Storage**
- **Color**
- **Services**

Properties driver tabs

This set of tabs controls the driver behavior and driver connections. To gain access to the **Properties** tabs, follow these steps:

1. In Windows Vista, click the **Start** button, click **Control Panel**, click **Hardware and Sound**, and then click **Printers**.

In Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Server 2008, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.

In Windows 2000, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

2. Right-click the product name.
3. Click **Properties**.

The following **Properties** print-driver tabs are available:

- **General**
- **Sharing**
- **Ports**
- **Advanced**
- **Color Management**
- **Security**
- **Device Settings**
- **About**

Help system

The HP PCL 6 Print Driver includes a full-featured Help system to provide assistance with printing and configuration options.


“What's this?” Help

Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Vista support **What's this?** Help. You can gain access to What's this? Help messages in any of the following ways:

- Right-click a feature or control. A pop-up Help window appears.
- Click the **?** button in the upper-right corner of the frame, next to the **X**, to change the cursor to an arrow with a question mark. When you use this special cursor to select a control, the pop-up Help window for that feature appears.
- Click a feature or control, and then press the **F1** key. The Help window for the currently selected control appears.

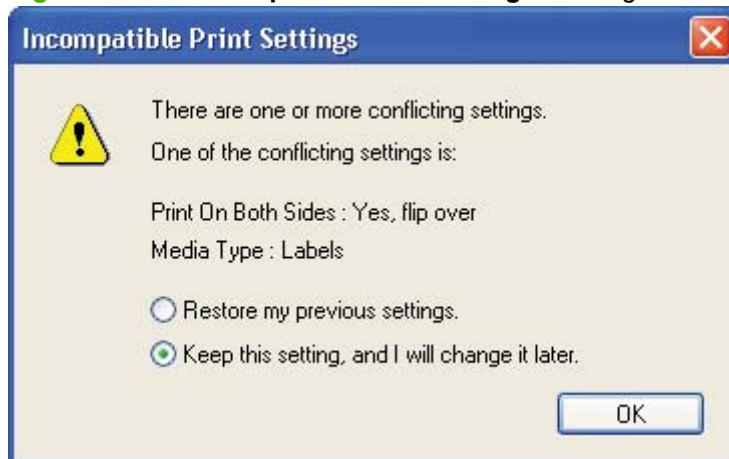
Incompatible Print Settings messages

Incompatible Print Settings (constraint) messages are unsolicited messages that appear in response to specific print-driver selections. These messages alert you to selections that are illogical or impossible given the product capabilities or the current settings of other controls.

 **NOTE:** Constraint messages are limited, and the underlying software architecture might accept some settings that are illogical or impossible for the product to perform. Sending a job with incompatible settings can lead to unexpected results. If print jobs do not print as expected, check the product documentation for the product capabilities.

In supported Windows operating environments, some technically invalid print-driver configurations result in warning messages. Duplexing, for example, is not possible when the Transparency paper type is selected. The following figure shows an **Incompatible Print Settings** message.

Figure 4-1 An **Incompatible Print Settings** message



To resolve the conflicting settings, click **Restore my previous settings.**, and then click **OK**. The driver resets the conflicting control back to its previous state.

If you want to keep the conflicting setting, click **Keep this setting, and I will change it later.**, and then click **OK**.



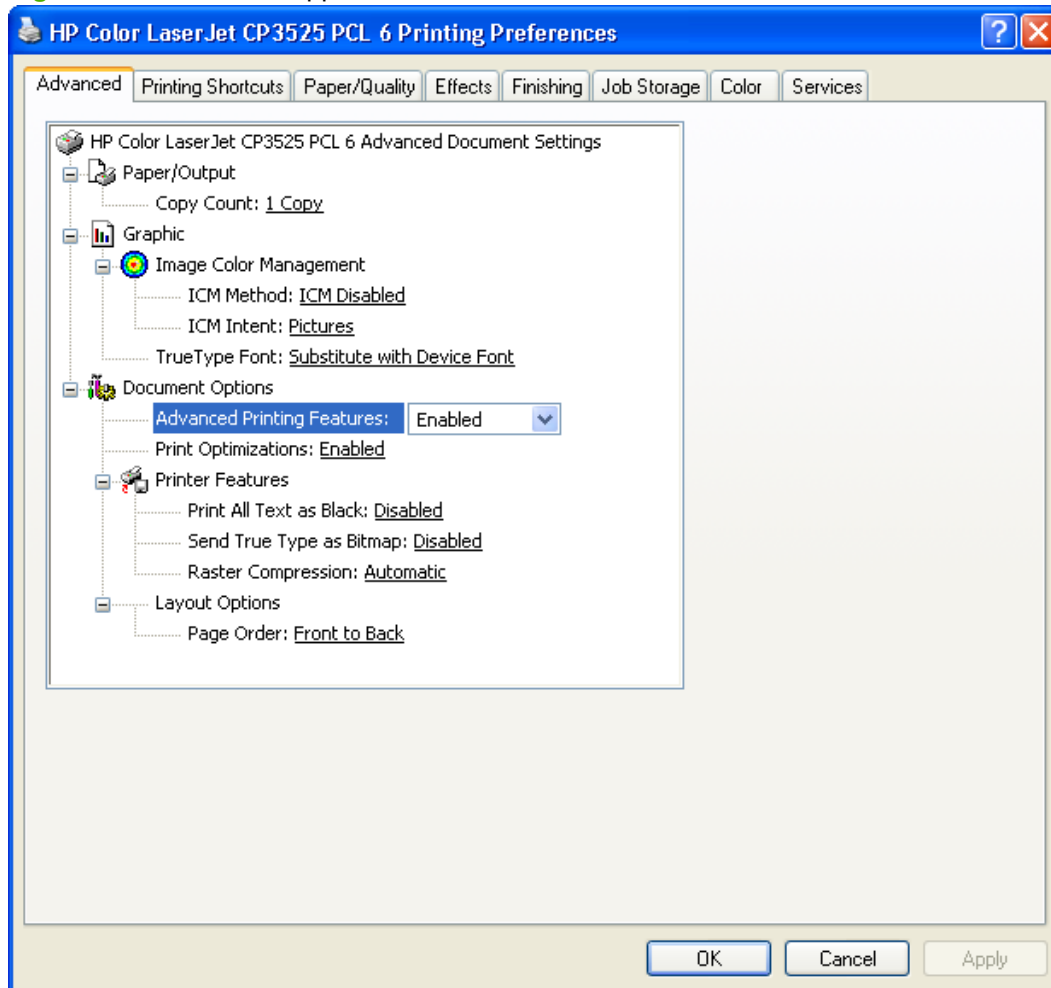
NOTE: In this example, the conflict can be resolved manually. If the conflict is not resolved when the driver is closed, then the same dialog appears again when a print job is sent to the product.

Advanced tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Advanced** tab is located on the **Printing Preferences** tab set. For information about how to access these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 118](#),

Use the **Advanced** tab to change the layout of printed pages. Use this tab to configure special controls that are not commonly used, as well as to control features such as collating and copies in the driver (although most current software programs support these features in the print dialog box or through the page settings in the software program). The following figure shows the **Advanced** tab.

Figure 4-2 The default appearance of the **Advanced** tab



The **Advanced** tab contains the following controls:

- [Paper/Output](#)
- [Graphic](#)
- [Document Options](#)

Paper/Output

The **Paper/Output** setting contains the **Copy Count** setting.

Copy Count

Copy Count specifies the number of copies to print. This driver setting is useful for software programs that do not provide a copy count. If a copy count is available in the software program, set the copy count in the software program.

The number of copies that you request appears in the **Copy Count** option. You can select the number by typing in the text box or by using the up and down arrows to the right of the text box. Valid entries are numbers from 1 to 9999. The copies value will not advance from the maximum number (9999) to 1 when the up arrow is used, or change from 1 to the maximum number (9999) when the down arrow is used. When you click another group box or leave the **Advanced** tab, invalid entries into the text box (such as non-numerical input, numbers less than 1, or numbers greater than the maximum allowed) are changed to the last valid value that appeared in the text box. The default number of copies is 1.

Because you can set the number of copies that you want from some software programs, conflicts between the software program you are using and the driver can arise. In most cases, the software program and the driver communicate, so that the number of copies set in one location (such as the program) will appear in the other (such as the driver). For some programs, this communication does not take place, and the copies values are treated independently. For these programs, setting 10 copies in the program and then setting 10 copies in the driver will result in 100 copies (10 x 10) being printed. It is recommended that you set the number of copies in the program, whenever possible.

When the **Copy Count** option is set to more than 1, the **Collated** check box becomes available. Select this check box when you want the product to collate the printed copies. Most current software programs support the collating feature in the print dialog box or through the page settings in the software program.

Graphic

The **Graphic** setting contains the following controls:

- **Image Color Management** settings
- **True Type Font** settings

Image Color Management

This control lists the available Image Color Management (ICM) options used for printing color graphics. ICM, a set of calculations for color matching, makes it possible for programs to adjust colors before printing so that the color of images on the screen more closely match the color of those images when they are printed.



NOTE: The ICM control is typically set to **ICM Disabled**.

True Type Font

Use **Substitute with Device Font** (the default setting) to print documents that contain TrueType fonts by using equivalent printer fonts. This permits faster printing; however, you might lose special characters that the equivalent printer font does not support. Select **Download as Softfont** to download TrueType fonts for printing instead of using printer fonts.

Document Options

The **Document Options** setting contains the following controls:

- [Advanced Printing Features](#)
- [Print Optimizations](#)

- [Printer Features](#)
- [Layout Options](#)

Advanced Printing Features

When the **Advanced Printing Features** setting is **Enabled**, metafile spooling is turned on and **Finishing** tab options such as **Page Order**, **Booklet Layout**, and **Pages per Sheet** are available, depending on your product.

Enhanced metafile spooling is used to greatly reduce the amount of time that elapses between a request to print (initiated by an application) and the return of control to the application by the operating system.

For normal printing, leave the **Advanced Printing Features** setting at the default (**Enabled**). If compatibility problems occur, you can disable the feature. However, some advanced printing features might still appear in the print driver, even though they have been disabled. If you select an advanced printing feature in the print driver that has been disabled on the **Advanced** tab, the feature is automatically re-enabled.

Print Optimizations

The default setting for **Print Optimizations** is **Enabled**. When this feature is enabled and your document contains overlapping text and graphics, the text that is placed on top of a graphic might not print correctly. If the printed output is not correct, you can disable this feature. When this feature is disabled, print optimization-features, such as substituting device fonts for TrueType fonts and scanning for horizontal and vertical rules, are turned off.

Printer Features

The **Printer Features** setting contains the following controls:

- **Print All Text as Black**

The feature is **Disabled** by default. When **Enabled** is selected, the driver prints all text as black regardless of the original document text color. Color text is printed as black, except for white text, which remains white. (White text is a reliable method of printing reverse typeface against a dark background.) This setting does not affect graphic images on the page, nor does it affect any text that is part of a graphic.

- **Send True Type as Bitmap**

Send True Type as Bitmap provides an alternative for software programs that have trouble using TrueType fonts for special graphic aspects such as shading, rotation, or slanting. The setting is **Disabled** (off) by default. The TrueType fonts are converted to bitmap soft fonts before downloading. The **Enabled** setting causes the driver to send TrueType fonts to the product as outlines, which retains the standard format (outline) of the fonts.

- **Raster Compression**


Use the **Raster Compression** feature to select the graphics-compression method:

- **Automatic.** The software determines the best compression method to use.
 - **Best Quality.** This option forces the software to use a lossless compression method. (Lossless means that no data is lost during compression.)
 - **Maximum Compression.** Where applicable, this option requires the software to always use a lossy compression method (some data is lost).
- **Alternative Letterhead Mode**

When selected, this option eliminates the need to flip or reload letterhead or preprinted paper in a tray, whether you are printing on one or both sides of the sheet. Load the paper as you would for printing on both sides. If the product tray has an icon that indicates whether to load paper either face-up or face-down, load the paper in opposite orientation of that shown.

When this option is selected, you must use one of the following options in the **Paper type** setting:


- Letterhead
- Preprinted

 **NOTE:** Because **Alternative Letterhead Mode** is available only if the product is equipped with an automatic duplexing unit, the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 and HP Color LaserJet CP3525n models do not support this option.

Layout Options

The **Layout Options** setting contains the **Page Order** setting.

Page Order specifies the order in which the pages of your document are printed. **Front to Back** prints the document so that page 1 prints first. **Back to Front** prints the document so that page 1 prints last.

 **NOTE:** The page-ordering operation works on whole sheets of paper rather than on individual logical pages. Accordingly, if you set **Pages per Sheet** (on the **Finishing** tab) to be greater than one, the ordering of logical pages on a physical sheet of paper does not change.

Printing Shortcuts tab features

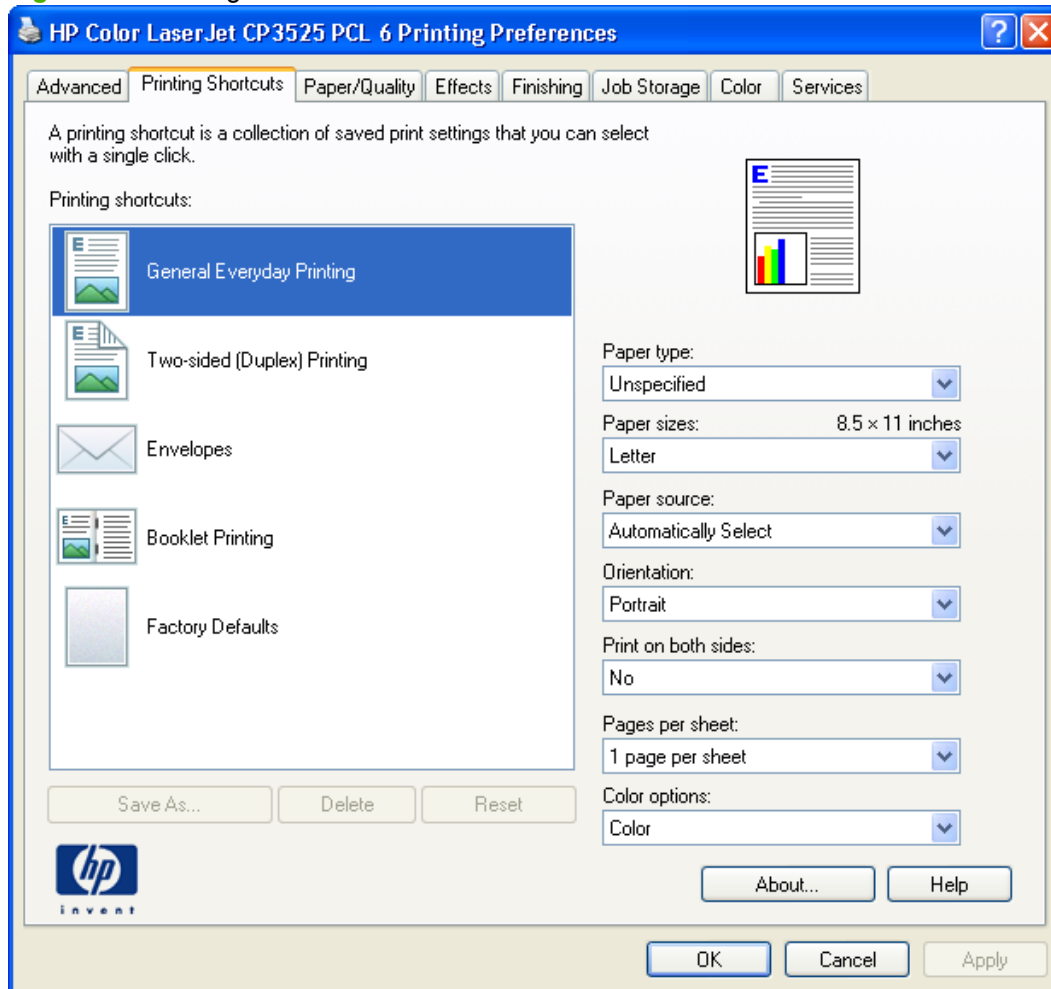
- [Use defined printing shortcuts](#)
- [Create a custom printing shortcut](#)

 **NOTE:** The **Printing Shortcuts** tab is located on the **Printing Preferences** tab set. For information about how to access these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 118](#),

Use the **Printing Shortcuts** tab to store specific combinations of driver settings for easy use.

The following figure shows the **Printing Shortcuts** tab.

Figure 4-3 Printing Shortcuts tab



The **Printing Shortcuts** tab is a new tab that appears on the HP PCL 6 Print Driver beginning with the HP Color LaserJet CM4730 MFP. In previous drivers, the Print Task Quick Sets appeared in most of the driver tabs, and was used to capture commonly used driver settings. Like Quick Sets, the **Printing Shortcuts** tab saves commonly used driver settings under a shortcut name.

- [Use defined printing shortcuts](#)
- [Create a custom printing shortcut](#)

Use defined printing shortcuts

The **Printing Shortcuts** tab contains the following control sets:

- [General Everyday Printing](#)
- [Two-sided \(Duplex\) Printing](#)
- [Envelopes](#)
- [Booklet Printing](#)
- [Factory Defaults](#)
- [Document preview image](#)

General Everyday Printing

When **General Everyday Printing** is selected, the following controls are available:

- **Paper type:**
- **Paper sizes:**
- **Paper source:**
- **Orientation:**
- **Print on both sides:**
- **Pages per sheet:**

When options other than the defaults are selected, the **Save as...** and **Reset** buttons become active.

Click **Save as...** to create a custom printing shortcut.

Click **Reset** to change customized settings back to the default settings.

Paper type

The following options are available:

- **Unspecified** (default)
- **Plain**
- **HP Color Laser Matte 105g**
- **HP Premium Choice Matte 120g**
- **HP Color Laser Brochure Matte 160g**
- **HP Superior Laser Matte 160g**
- **HP Cover Matte 200g**
- **HP Matte Photo 200g**
- **HP Presentation Soft Gloss 120g**
- **HP Professional Soft Gloss 120g**

- **HP Presentation Glossy 130g**
- **HP Professional Laser Glossy 130g**
- **HP Color Laser Brochure Glossy 160g**
- **HP Superior Laser Glossy 160g**
- **HP Color Laser Photo Glossy 220g**
- **Light 60-74g**
- **Mid-Weight 96-110g**
- **Heavy 111-130g**
- **Extra Heavy 131-175g**
- **Extra Heavy Glossy 131-175g**
- **Cardstock 176-220g**
- **Card Glossy 176-220g**
- **Mid-Weight Glossy 96-110g**
- **Heavy Glossy 111-130g**
- **Color Laser Transparency**
- **Labels**
- **Letterhead**
- **Envelope**
- **Preprinted**
- **Prepunched**
- **Colored**
- **Bond**
- **Recycled**
- **Rough**
- **HP Tough Paper**
- **Opaque Film**

Paper sizes

The following options are available:

- **Letter** (default)
- **Legal**
- **Executive**

- **Statement**
- **8.5x13**
- **4x6**
- **5x7**
- **5x8**
- **A4**
- **A5**
- **A6**
- **RA4**
- **B5 (JIS)**
- **B6 (JIS)**
- **A4**
- **A5**
- **A6**
- **10x15cm**
- **16k 195x270mm**
- **16k 184x260mm**
- **16k 197x273mm**
- **Japanese Postcard**
- **Double Japan Postcard Rotated**
- **Envelope #9**
- **Envelope #10**
- **Envelope Monarch**
- **Envelope B5**
- **Envelope C5**
- **Envelope C6**
- **Envelope DL**

Paper source

The following options are available:

- **Automatically Select** (default)
- **Manual Feed in Tray 1**


- **Tray 1**
- **Tray 2**
- **Tray 3** (HP Color LaserJet CP3525x only; optional on all other HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series models)

Orientation

The following options are available:

- **Portrait** (default)
- **Landscape**

Print on both sides

 **NOTE:** Because the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 and HP Color LaserJet CP3525n models do not include a duplexing unit, the **Print on both sides** option is available, but duplexing is a manual process.

The following options are available:


- **No** (default)
- **Yes, Flip Over**
- **Yes, Flip Up**

Pages per sheet

The following options are available:

- **1 page per sheet** (default)
- **2 pages per sheet**
- **4 pages per sheet**
- **6 pages per sheet**
- **9 pages per sheet**
- **16 pages per sheet**

Two-sided (Duplex) Printing

 **NOTE:** Because the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 and HP Color LaserJet CP3525n models do not include a duplexing unit, the **Two-sided (Duplex) Printing** option is available, but duplexing is a manual process.

When **Two-sided (Duplex) Printing** is selected, the following options are selected.

- **Paper type: Unspecified**
- **Paper sizes: Letter** (This setting changes according to country/region.)
- **Paper source: Automatically Select**
- **Orientation: Portrait**

- **Print on both sides: Yes, flip over**
- **Pages per sheet: 1 page per sheet**

Envelopes

When **Envelopes** is selected, the following options are selected.

- **Paper type: Unspecified**
- **Paper sizes: Envelope #10**
- **Paper source: Automatically Select**
- **Orientation: Landscape**

Booklet Printing

When **Booklet Printing** is selected, the following options are selected.

- **Paper type: Unspecified**
- **Paper sizes: Letter** (This setting changes according to country/region.)
- **Paper source: Automatically Select**
- **Orientation: Portrait**
- **Booklet Layout: Left binding**
- **Print document on: Letter**

Factory Defaults

When **Factory Defaults** is selected, the customizable options are grayed out, locking in those default options.

The **Factory Defaults** are as follows:

- **Paper type: Unspecified**
- **Paper sizes: Letter** (This setting changes according to country/region.)
- **Paper source: Automatically select**
- **Orientation: Portrait**
- **Print on both sides: No**
- **Pages per sheet: 1 page per sheet**

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up.

Move the cursor over the document preview image to change the cursor from an arrow to a gloved hand. Toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

Figure 4-4 Document preview image



Create a custom printing shortcut

Follow these instructions to create a custom printing shortcut:

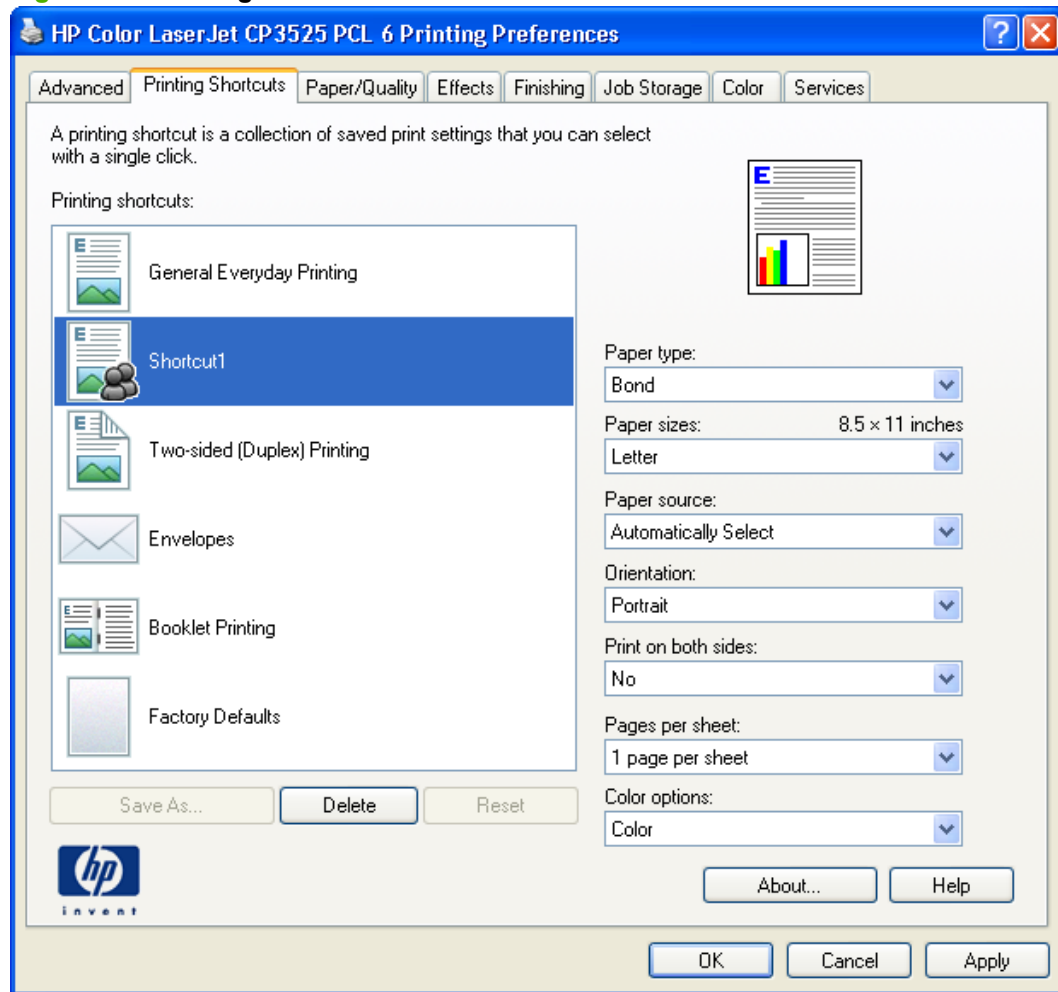
1. Select one of the defined printing shortcuts as a base.
2. Select the appropriate print settings on the **Printing Shortcuts** tab, or by using the settings on any of the **Printing Preferences** tabs.
3. On the **Printing Shortcuts** tab, click **Save As. . .** The **Printing Shortcuts** dialog box appears.

Figure 4-5 Printing Shortcuts dialog box



4. Type a name for the custom printing shortcut, and then click **OK**. The custom printing shortcut appears in the printing shortcuts list.

Figure 4-6 Printing Shortcuts tab – custom shortcut



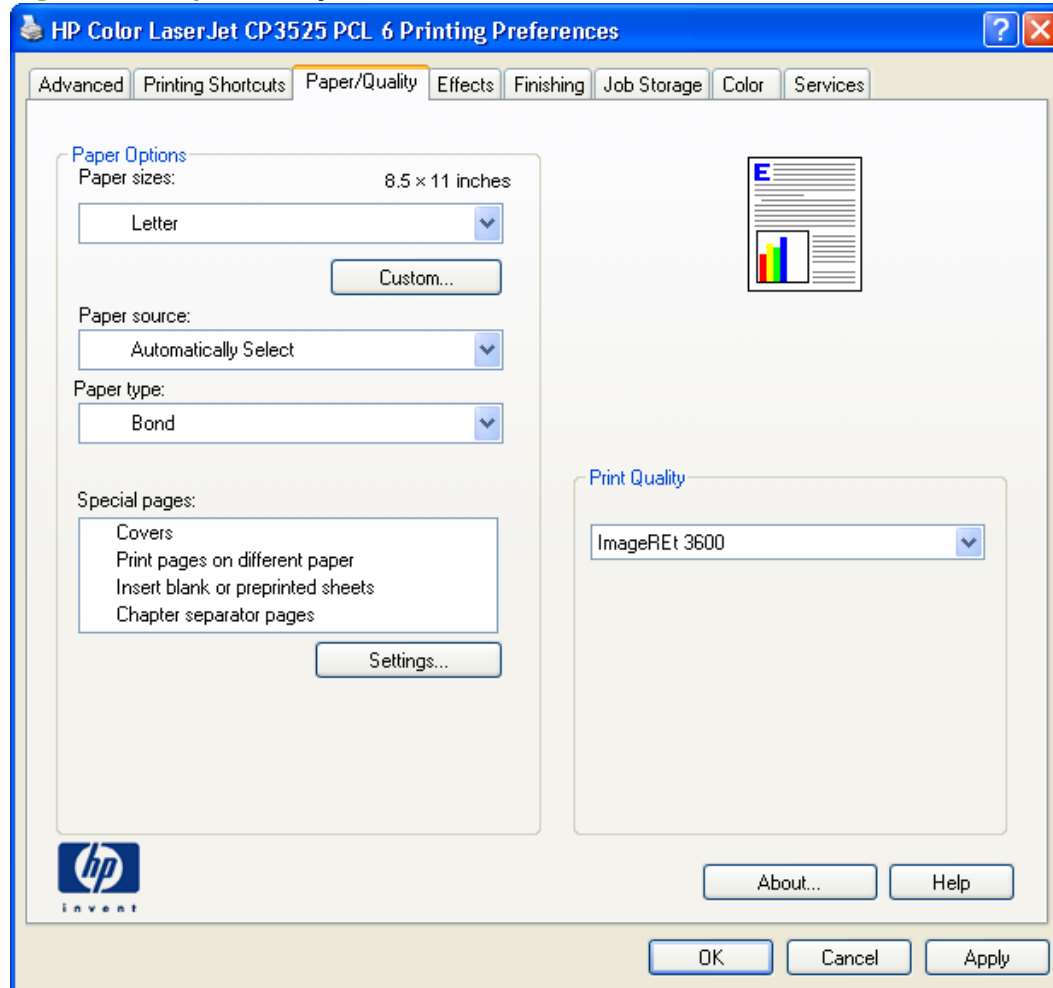
5. To delete a custom printing shortcut, click the custom shortcut, and then click **Delete**.

Paper/Quality tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Paper/Quality** tab is located on the **Printing Preferences** tab set. For information about how to access these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 118](#),

Use the **Paper/Quality** tab to specify paper size, type, and source. You can also use this tab to specify different paper selections for the front cover, first page, other pages, last page, and back cover of the document. The following figure shows the **Paper/Quality** tab.

Figure 4-7 Paper/Quality tab



The **Paper/Quality** tab contains the following control sets:

- [Paper Options](#)
- [Document preview image](#)
- [Print Quality](#)

Paper Options

The settings specified in the **Paper Options** group box on the **Paper/Quality** tab apply to all of the pages of the document. The following figure shows the **Paper Options** group box and the selections that are available by default.

Figure 4-8 Paper Options group box

Paper Options

Paper sizes: 8.5 x 11 inches
Letter
Custom...

Paper source:
Automatically Select

Paper type:
Plain

Special pages:
Covers
Print pages on different paper
Insert blank or preprinted sheets
Chapter separator pages

Settings...

The settings in the **Paper Options** group box are described in the following order:


- [Paper sizes](#)
- [Custom Paper Size](#)
- [Paper source](#)
- [Paper type](#)
- [Special pages](#)

Paper sizes

The **Paper sizes** setting is a drop-down menu that lists all of the supported paper sizes.

When you move the mouse over the dimensions label, the mouse cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. Click the dimensions label to toggle between English and metric units.

Because paper-size settings in most software programs override driver settings, it is generally best to use the driver to set paper size only when you are printing from software programs that do not include a paper-size setting, such as NotePad, or when you are producing a book or a booklet that does not require different paper sizes.

 **NOTE:** Certain software programs can override the size command and specify different paper sizes within a single document.

When you change the print-driver setting to a paper size that is not currently loaded in the product, a control-panel message appears that prompts you to load the paper size or select another tray.

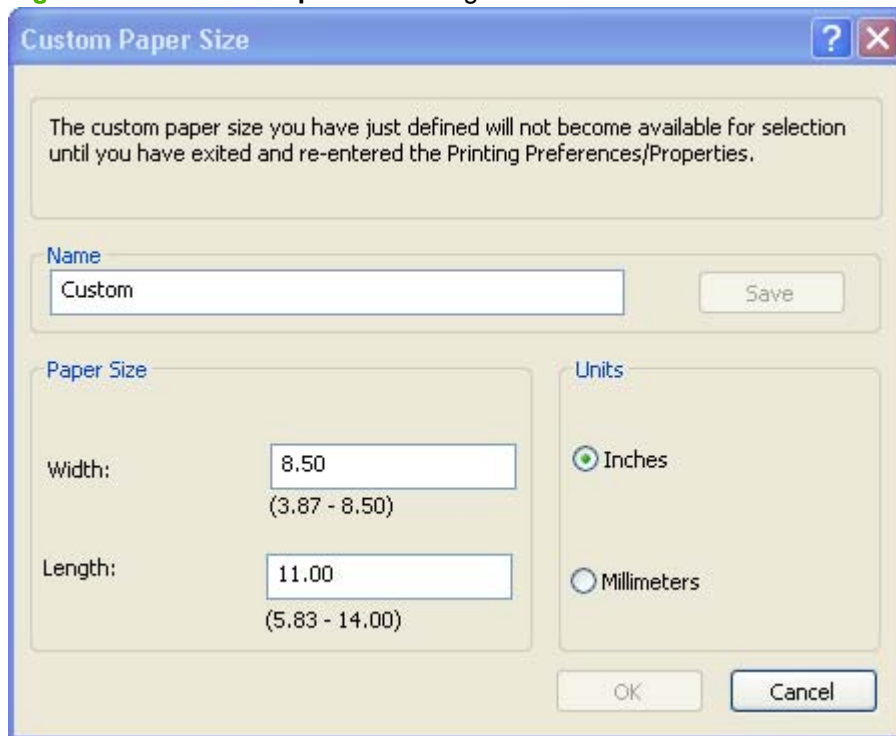
For information about paper sizes, see [Media attributes on page 295](#).


When the **Settings** under the **Special Pages** section have been changed, the **Paper sizes**, **Paper source**, and **Paper type** menus change also, offering a variety of options. For more information, see [Special pages on page 140](#).

Custom Paper Size

The **Custom Paper Size** dialog box appears when you click **Custom...** on the **Paper/Quality** tab. The following figure shows the initial appearance of the **Custom Paper Size** dialog box.

Figure 4-9 Custom Paper Size dialog box



 **NOTE:** The HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product supports custom paper sizes up to 14 inches in length. To use this paper size, set the custom paper size to match the custom paper size that you are using, up to 14 inches in length.

Name

Use the **Name** text box to type a new name for a custom paper size. When you change the name to something other than **Custom**, the **Save** and **OK** buttons become active.

The name that appears in the **Name** text box depends on the following conditions:

- If a saved custom paper size has been selected from the drop-down menu on the **Paper/Quality** tab, then the **Name** text box shows the name of the selected custom paper size.
- If a standard paper size has been selected on the **Paper/Quality** tab, then the **Name** text box shows the default name of **Custom**.
- If a new name has been typed into the **Name** text box for the purpose of saving a new size or renaming an existing size, then that new name will remain in the text box until the new size is saved or the dialog box is closed.

If you type a new name into the **Name** text box, but then do not click **Save**, you can change the width and height values without losing the name. However, if you close the dialog box without clicking **Save**, any unsaved name or size values are lost without warning.

Paper size

The width and height values can be changed by typing numeric strings into the edit boxes in the **Paper Size** group box.

Any entry that is greater than the maximum limits of the width and height control is rounded down to the maximum valid entry, while any entry that is smaller than the minimum limits of the width and height control is rounded up to the minimum valid entry.

If units are in millimeters, the custom paper-size range minimum is the limit rounded up to the nearest whole millimeter. The custom paper-size range maximum is the limit rounded down to the nearest whole millimeter. Any non-numerical entry reverts to the minimum value. Width and height entries are validated when the focus has changed.

The resolution of each control is 1 millimeter or 1/10 of an inch, depending on the current measurement units.

Units

To change measurement units, click one of the options in the **Units** group box (either **Inches** or **Millimeters**).

Custom width and height control limits

The minimum paper size for the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product is 98.40 x 148.00 mm (3.87 x 5.83 in) and the maximum is 215.90 x 355.60 mm (8.50 x 14.00 in). The following table summarizes paper size limits for each paper-handling device.

Table 4-1 PCL 6 custom paper sizes

| Tray | Dimensions | Minimum | Maximum |
|---------------------------------|------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| Tray 1 (100-sheet multipurpose) | Width | 98.4 mm (3.9 in) | 216 mm (8.5 in) |
| | Length | 148 mm (5.83 in) | 356 mm (14.0 in) |
| Tray 2 (250-sheet) | Width | 148.0 mm (5.83 in) | 216 mm (8.5 in) |
| | Length | 210.0 mm (8.27 in) | 297 mm (11.69 in) |
| Trays 3 (500-sheet) | Width | 148 mm (5.38 in) | 216 mm (8.5 in) |
| | Length | 210 mm (8.27 in) | 356 mm (14.0 in) |

Paper source

The **Paper source** setting specifies the source tray to use for printing a document. The list of source trays depends on the product accessories that are installed. Any optional source trays that are installed through the **Device Settings** tab also appear here.

The **Paper source** drop-down menu can contain the following options, depending on what has been installed on the product:

- **Automatically select**
- **Printer Auto Select**
- **Manual Feed in Tray 1**
- **Tray 1** (100-sheet multipurpose tray)
- **Tray 2** (250-sheet tray)
- **Tray 3** (500-sheet paper tray, HP Color LaserJet CP3525x only; optional on all other HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series models)

The default setting is **Automatically Select**. When this setting is selected, the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series uses the source tray that supports the paper size that you have selected. If you select a source tray other than **Automatically select**, make sure that the correct paper size is loaded in the source tray. For information about paper sources, see [Media attributes on page 295](#).

Paper type

The **Paper type** drop-down menu shows the first few paper types that the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series supports and an entry for **More**. Clicking **More** opens the **Type Is** dialog box. Click the **+** next to **Type Is** and its subcategories to view all of the paper types that the product supports, listed in the following categories.

- **Everyday <96g**
 - **Unspecified**
 - **Plain**
 - **Light 60-74g**
 - **Bond**
 - **Recycled**
- **Presentation 96-130g**
 - **HP Color Laser Matte 105g**
 - **HP Premium Choice Matte 120g**
 - **HP Presentation Soft Gloss 120g**
 - **HP Professional Soft Gloss 120g**
 - **HP Presentation Glossy 130g**
 - **HP Professional Laser Glossy 130g**

- **Mid-Weight 96-110g**
- **Heavy 111-130g**
- **Mid-Weight Glossy 96-110g**
- **Heavy Glossy 111-130g**
- **Brochure 131-175g**
 - **HP Color Laser Brochure Matte 160g**
 - **HP Superior Laser Matte 160g**
 - **HP Color Laser Brochure Glossy 160g**
 - **HP Superior Laser Glossy 160g**
 - **Extra Heavy 131-175g**
 - **Extra Heavy Glossy 131-175g**
- **Photo/Cover 176-220g**
 - **HP Cover Matte 200g**
 - **HP Matte Photo 200g**
 - **Cardstock 176-220g**
 - **Card Glossy 176-220g**
 - **HP Color Laser Photo Glossy 220g**
- **Other**
 - **Color Laser Transparency**
 - **Labels**
 - **Letterhead**
 - **Envelope**
 - **Preprinted**
 - **Prepunched**
 - **Colored**
 - **Rough**
 - **HP Tough Paper**
 - **Opaque Film**

The default setting is **Unspecified**.

No mechanism exists for manually adding custom paper types through the driver. Use HP Web Jetadmin to add custom paper types. Custom types can be added only by using bidirectional communication, so they must already exist in the product when the bidirectional query occurs. If bidirectional communication is enabled, then an updated list of paper types is returned. If bidirectional communication is not enabled,

then the driver looks for custom paper types that have been saved from a previous bidirectional communication query, and uses those. Otherwise, no custom paper types are available through the driver.

 **NOTE:** To download a current version of HP Web Jetadmin and for the latest list of supported host systems, go to the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/webjetadmin

If you select a setting other than the default, make sure that the correct paper type is loaded in the tray that you selected in the **Paper source** setting. For more information about paper types, see [Media attributes on page 295](#).

When you change the print-driver setting to a paper type that is not currently loaded in the product, a control-panel message appears that prompts you to load the paper type or select another tray.

Special pages

To specify special pages to be used, click the **Settings** button under **Special Pages**.

Covers

To use specific cover settings, click **Covers** in the **Special Pages** group box.

Use the **Covers** options to include a blank or preprinted cover on a document, or to include a front/back cover from a source tray that is different from the one used for the remainder of the document.

The following are the **Covers** options:

- **Add a blank or preprinted cover:** Select which cover is customized: **Front**, **Back**, or **Both**.
- **Paper source:** The **Paper source** setting specifies the source tray to use for adding a front and/or back cover to the document. The list of source trays depends on the accessories that are installed. Any optional trays that are installed through the **Device Settings** tab also appear here.
- **Paper type:** The **Paper type** setting specifies the paper size to use for front and/or back covers. Changes made to the **Paper type** setting here override any previous **Paper type** settings using the same paper source.

 **NOTE:** The same size of paper will be used for the entire print job.

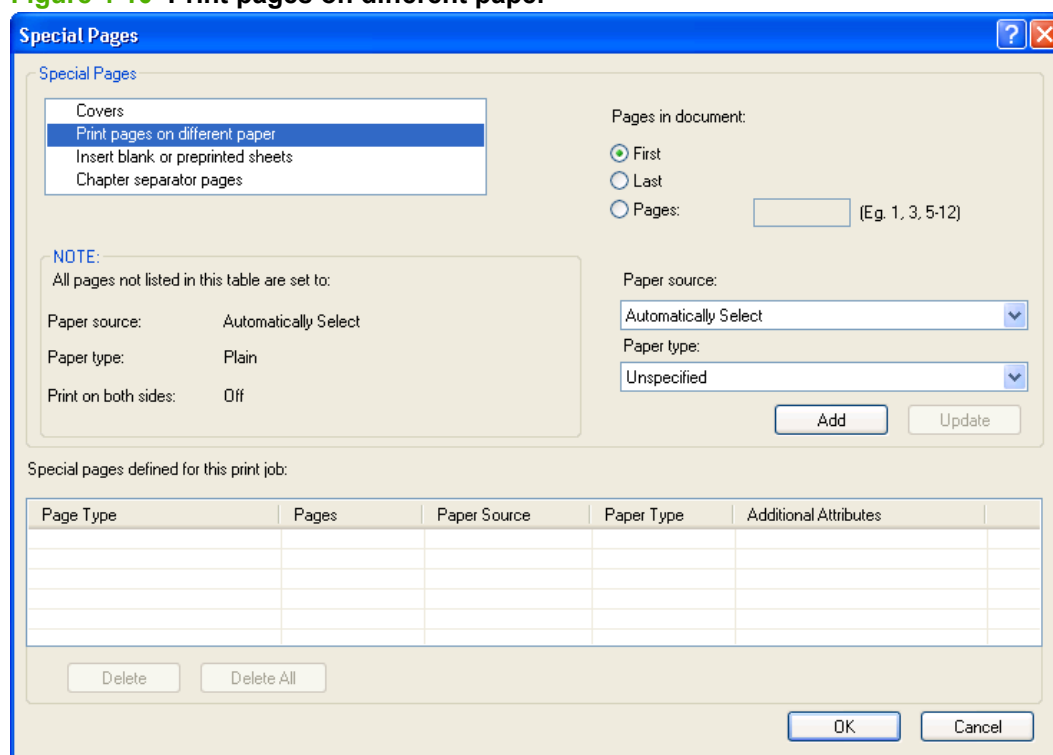
When you change the type and source of the paper and covers, the settings remain configured until you close the software program.

Print pages on different paper

Use the **Print pages on different paper** options to select an alternative paper type or source for the first, last, or other pages of a document.

The following figure shows the **Print pages on different paper** settings and options.

Figure 4-10 Print pages on different paper



The following are the **Print pages on different paper** options:

- **Pages in document.** Select which pages are customized: the **First** page, the **Last** page, or specify a page range with the **Pages** option.
- **Paper source:** The **Paper source** setting specifies the source tray to use for printing a document. The list of source trays depends on the accessories that are installed. Any optional trays that are installed through the **Device Settings** tab also appear here.
- **Paper type:** The **Paper type** drop-down menu shows all of the paper types that the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series supports.

 **NOTE:** The same type of paper is used for the entire print job.

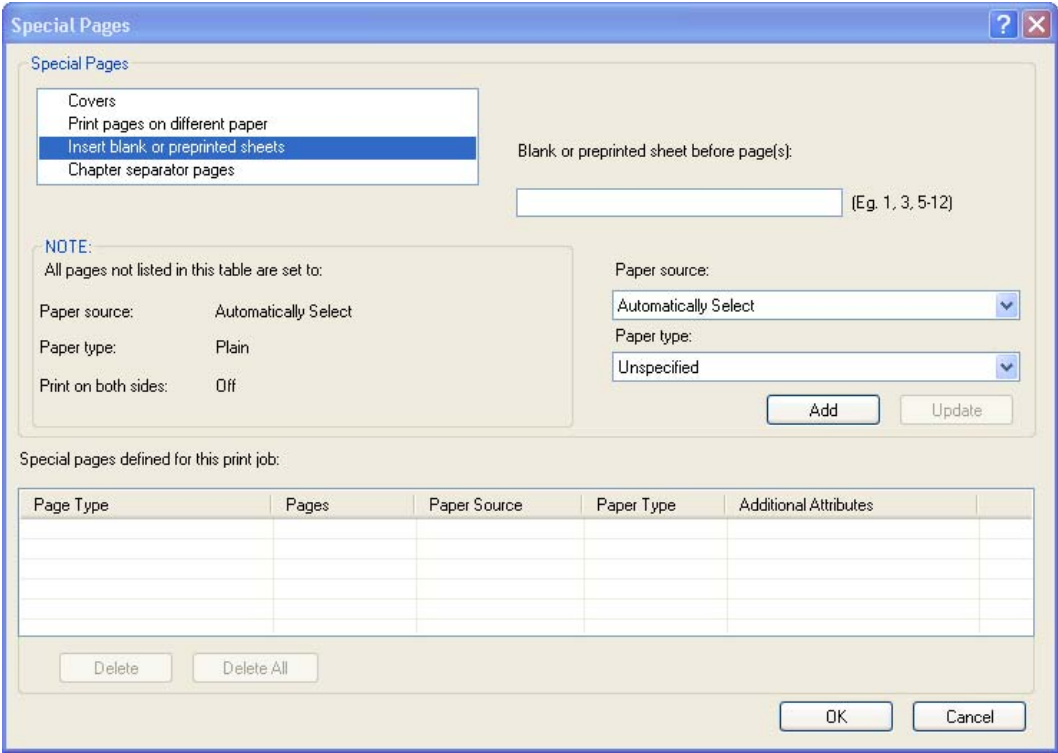
When you change the type and source of the paper and covers, the settings remain configured until you close the software program.

Insert blank or preprinted pages

Use the **Insert blank or preprinted pages** options to designate where to insert preprinted pages or blank pages into a document.

The following figure shows the **Print pages on different paper** settings and options.

Figure 4-11 Insert blank or preprinted pages



The following are the **Insert blank or preprinted pages** options:

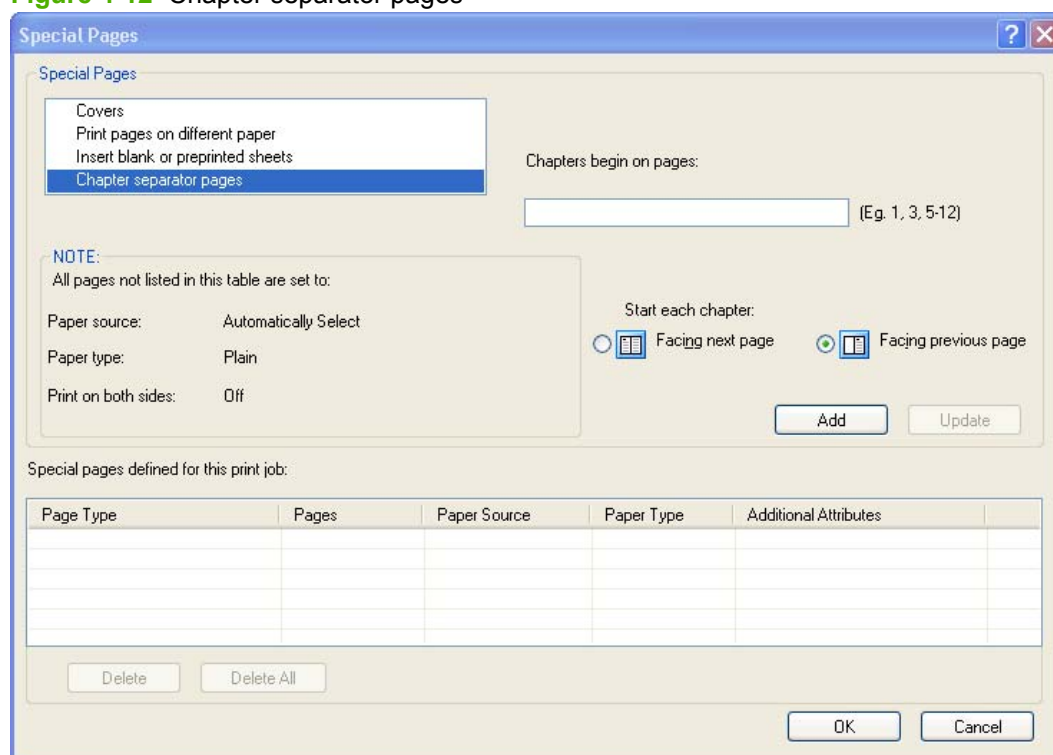
- **Blank or preprinted sheet before page(s):** Specify where in the document you want to insert blank or preprinted pages by designating the page numbers or page ranges that the blank or preprinted pages will precede. For example, to insert a blank or preprinted page on page four, specify **5** in the **Blank or preprinted sheet before page(s):** option.
- **Paper source:** The **Paper source** setting specifies the source tray to use for printing a document. The list of source trays depends on the accessories that are installed. Any optional trays that are installed through the **Device Settings** tab also appear here.
- **Paper type:** The **Paper type** drop-down menu shows all of the paper types that the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series supports.

Chapter separator pages

Use the **Chapter separator pages** options to designate where the first page of a chapter appears in the document.

The following figure shows the **Chapter separator pages** settings and options.

Figure 4-12 Chapter separator pages



The following are the **Chapter separator pages** options:

- **Chapters begin on pages:** Specify where in the document the chapters begin by designating a page number for each chapter.
- **Start each chapter:** Select **Facing next page** to make each chapter begin on the left side of the document. Select **Facing previous page** to make each chapter begin on the right side of the document.

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of the following **Printing Preferences** driver tabs:

- **Printing Shortcuts**
- **Paper/Quality**
- **Effects**
- **Finishing**
- **Color**

Switching between tabs does not change the location or appearance of the document preview image. When you move the mouse over the document preview image, the mouse cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. You can toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

Print Quality

The **Print Quality** group box contains the following controls:

- [Print Quality drop-down menu](#)

Print Quality drop-down menu

Use this control to select print quality. ImageREt settings precisely control colors by combining up to 4 colors and varying the amount of toner in a given area to create many smooth colors, sharp images, and crisp text.

The **Print Quality** drop-down menu contains the following resolution options.

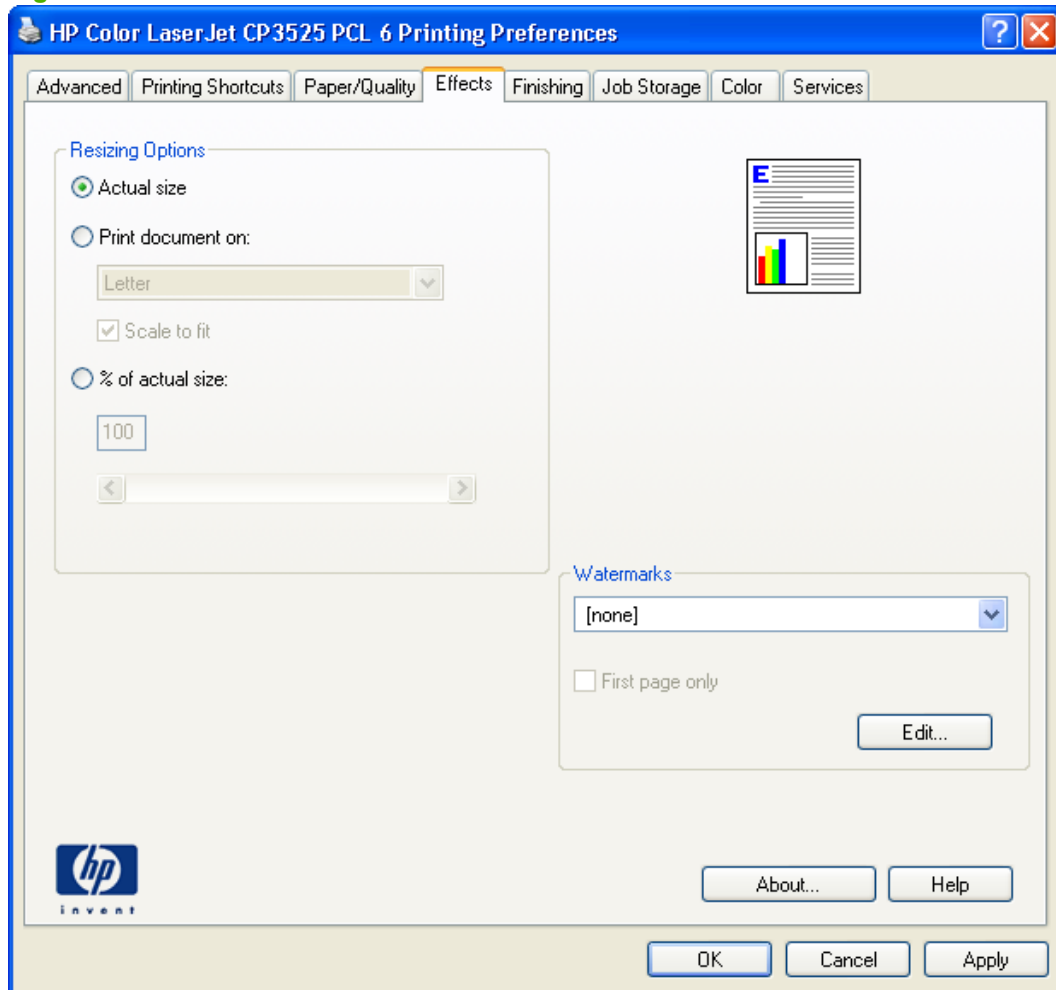
- **ImageREt 3600**. This setting is selected by default.
- **1200 x 600**. This setting may improve the rendering of fine lines and text.

Effects tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Effects** tab is located on the **Printing Preferences** tab set. For information about how to access these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 118](#),

Use the **Effects** tab to create unique paper effects such as scaling and watermarks. The following figure shows the **Effects** tab.

Figure 4-13 Effects tab



The **Effects** tab contains the following controls:

- [Resizing Options](#)
- [Document preview image](#)
- [Watermarks](#)

Resizing Options

The **Resizing Options** group box consists of the following controls:

- **Actual Size** (default)
- **Print Document On**

- **Scale to Fit**
- **% of Actual Size**

Actual Size

Actual Size is the default setting. It prints the document without changing the document size.

Print Document On

Click the **Print Document On** option to format the document for one paper size and then print the document on a different paper size, with or without scaling the image to fit the new paper size.

The **Print Document On** control is disabled by either of the following conditions:

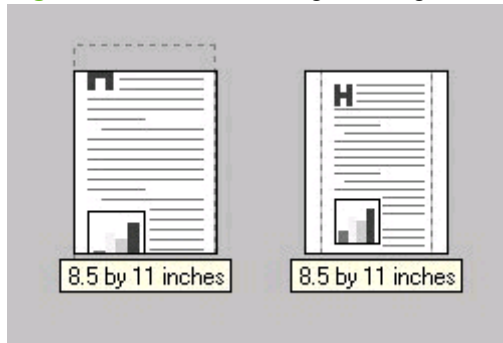
- The **% of Actual Size** value is not 100.
- The **Pages per Sheet** value (on the **Finishing** tab) is not 1.

When **Print Document On** is selected, the drop-down menu shows the paper sizes on which you can print. The list contains all of the standard paper sizes that the selected paper source supports and any custom sizes that you have created. When **Print Document On** is selected, **Scale to Fit** is automatically selected. Clear this check box if you do not want your document reduced or enlarged to fit on the selected paper.

Scale to Fit

The **Scale to Fit** option box specifies whether each formatted document page image is scaled to fit the target paper size. By default, **Scale to Fit** is selected when **Print Document On** is selected. If the setting is turned off, then the document page images will not be scaled, and are instead centered at full size on the target paper. If the document size is larger than the target paper size, then the document image is clipped. If it is smaller, then it is centered within the target paper. The following figure shows preview images for a document formatted for Legal-size paper with the **Print Document On** check box selected, and the target size specified as **Letter**.

Figure 4-14 Preview images – Legal on Letter; **Scale to Fit** off (left) and on (right)



When the size for which the document is formatted (that is, the logical size) differs from the target size, the preview image uses a dashed gray line to show the boundaries of the logical page in relation to the target paper size.

% of Actual Size

The **% of Actual Size** option provides a slider bar and input box to use for scaling the percentage setting. The default setting in the entry box is 100% of actual size. Actual size is defined as the paper size that is selected within the driver or what the driver receives from the software program (if the software

program does not negotiate the paper size with the driver). The driver scales the page by the appropriate factor and sends it to the product.

The limits of the range are from 25% to 400%, and any values outside the range are adjusted to those limits as soon as the focus is removed from the control (that is, when the **Tab** key is pressed or another control is selected).

Any change to the scale also changes the page preview, which increases or decreases from the upper-left corner of the preview.

The slider bar controls the scale directly. The value in the edit box changes as the slider-bar indicator is dragged, and the document preview image is updated to the new image scale. Each click on the arrows increases or decreases the scale by 1%. Each click on the slider bar affects the scale by 10%.

You cannot achieve an exact value by dragging the slider-bar indicator. Instead, either use the slider-bar indicator to approximate the value that you want and then use the arrows to refine the value, or type the value into the entry box.

The following settings disable **% of Actual Size**:

- **Print Document On** (on the **Effects** tab) is selected
- **Pages per Sheet** (on the **Finishing** tab) is not 1

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of the following Printing Preferences driver tabs:

- **Printing Shortcuts**
- **Paper/Quality**
- **Effects**
- **Finishing**
- **Color**

Switching between tabs does not change the location or appearance of the document preview image. When you move the mouse over the document preview image, the mouse cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. You can toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

Watermarks

Use the **Watermarks** feature to select a watermark, create a new watermark (text only), or edit an existing watermark. The following watermarks are preset in the driver:

- **(none)**
- **Confidential**
- **Draft**
- **SAMPLE**

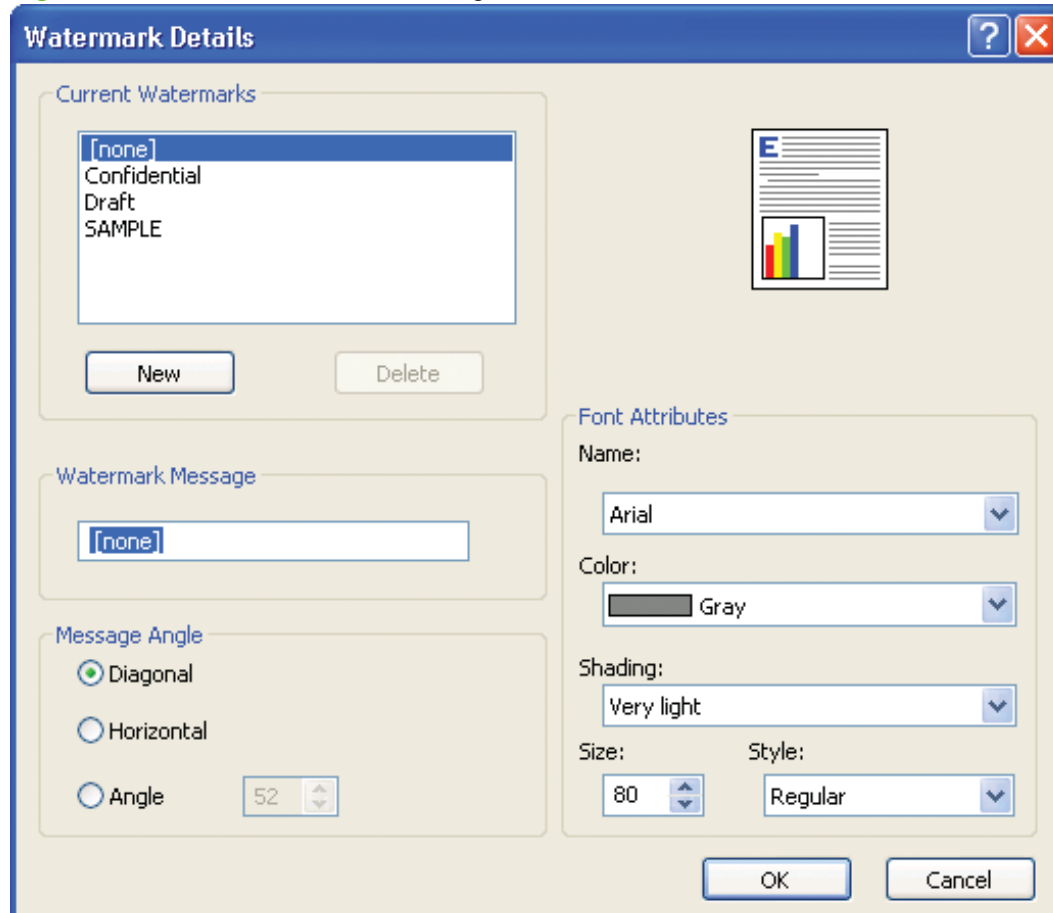
The drop-down menu shows alphabetically sorted watermarks that are currently available on the system, plus the string "(none)," which indicates that no watermark is selected. This is the default setting. Any watermark that is selected from this list appears in the preview image.

When the **First Page Only** check box is selected, the watermark is printed only on the first page of the document. The **First Page Only** check box is disabled when the current watermark selection is "(none)."

Watermarks are applied to logical pages. For example, when **Pages per Sheet** is set to "4" and **First Page Only** is turned off, four watermarks appear on the physical page (one on each logical page).

Click **Edit**, and the **Watermark Details** dialog box appears.

Figure 4-15 Watermark Details dialog box



The dialog box shows a preview image and provides options for creating a new watermark and controlling the message angle and font attributes.

Click **OK** to accept all of the changes that are made in the **Watermark Details** dialog box. However, clicking **Cancel** does not cancel all of the changes. If you make changes to a watermark and then select a different watermark or click **New**, all of the changes are saved, and only the current, unsaved changes can be canceled.


Current watermarks

The **Current Watermarks** group box contains a list of available watermarks, both predefined watermarks that are available in the driver and any new watermarks that you have created.

To create a new watermark, click **New**. The new watermark appears in the **Current Watermarks** list and in the **Watermark Message** edit box as "**Untitled**" until you name it. The name that you type in the **Watermark Message** field appears in the **Current Watermarks** group box in the **Watermark Details** dialog box and in the **Watermarks** group box on the **Effects** tab.

To name the new watermark, type the selected watermark text in the **Watermark Message** edit box.

To delete a watermark, select the watermark in the **Current Watermarks** list, and then click **Delete**. A warning appears asking whether you are sure you want to delete the selected item. Click **Cancel** if you want to keep the watermark. Click **OK** to delete the selected watermark.

 **NOTE:** You can have no more than 30 watermarks in the **Current Watermarks** list at one time. When you reach the limit of 30 watermarks, the **New** button is disabled.

To edit an existing watermark, select the watermark in the **Current Watermarks** list. If you change the **Watermark Message** for that watermark, you are, in effect, creating a new watermark.

Watermark Message

The **Watermark Message** is also the name that identifies the watermark in the **Current Watermarks** list, except when more than one watermark has the same message. For example, you might want several different watermarks with the message DRAFT, each with a different typeface or font size. When this occurs, the string is appended with a space, a pound sign, and a number (for example, **Draft #2**). When a number is added, the number two is used first, but if the resulting name is also in the list, then the number increases until the name is unique (**Draft #3**, **Draft #4**, and so on).

Message Angle

Use the controls in the **Message Angle** group box to print the watermark in different orientations on the page. All settings center the watermark string within the page; the selection of a particular setting affects only the angle of the string placement. The following settings are available:

- **Diagonal**. This is the default setting. Select this setting to place the text along a line that spans the lower-left to upper-right corners of the page.
- **Horizontal**. Select this setting to place the text along a line that spans the mid-left and mid-right edges of the page.
- **Custom**. Select this setting to place the text at the specified angle across the page. Use the numeric spin box to select the angle.

Font Attributes

Use the controls in the **Font Attributes** group box to change the font and the shading, size, and style of the font.

The **Font Attributes** group box contains the following controls:

- **Name**

The **Name** drop-down menu lists fonts that are currently installed on the system. The default is language-dependent.

- **Color**

The **Color** drop-down menu contains the following selections:

- **Gray**
- **Red**
- **Yellow**
- **Green**
- **Cyan**
- **Blue**
- **Magenta**

- **Shading**

The default **Shading** setting for new and preset watermarks is **Very Light**. The following range of shades is available from the **Shading** drop-down menu:

- **Lightest**
- **Very Light** (default)
- **Light**
- **Medium Light**
- **Medium**
- **Medium Dark**
- **Dark**
- **Very Dark**
- **Darkest**

These values represent the intensity of the gray that is used. Select **Light** to produce a lightly saturated gray watermark. Select **Lightest** to produce the lightest shade of watermark. Select **Darkest** to produce a black watermark.

- **Size**

Font sizes from 1 to 999 points are available from the **Size** menu. The default point size is language-dependent.

- **Style**

The following settings are available:

- **Regular**
- **Bold**
- **Italic**
- **Bold Italic**

The default **Style** setting for new and preset watermarks is **Regular**.

Default watermark settings

The following table shows **Font Attribute** settings for new and preset watermarks.

Table 4-2 Font Attribute settings for new and preset watermarks

| Setting | New watermark | Preset watermark |
|---------|---------------|--------------------|
| Name | Arial | Varies by language |
| Color | Gray | Gray |
| Shading | Very Light | Very Light |
| Size | 80 | Varies by language |
| Style | Regular | Regular |

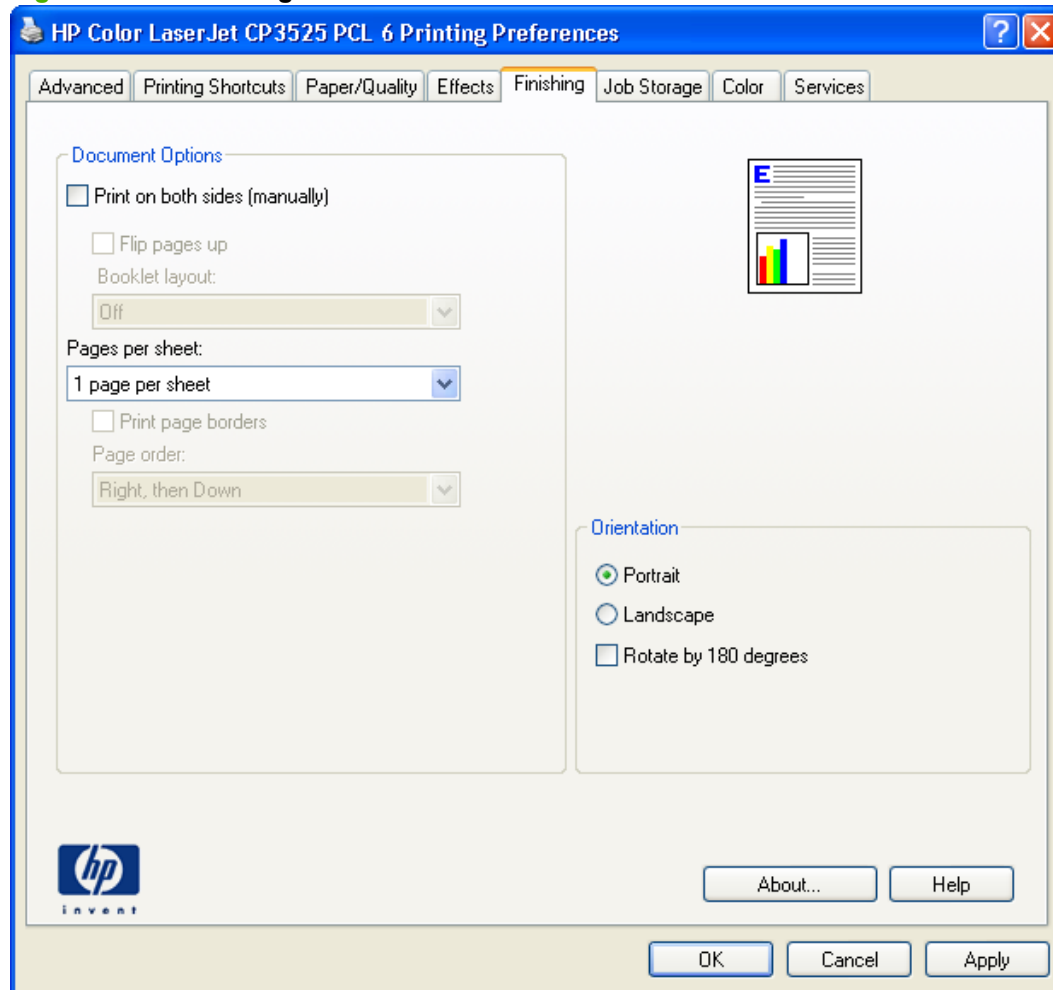
Click **OK** to accept all of the changes that have been made in the **Watermark Details** dialog box. Clicking **Cancel** does not cancel all of the changes. If you make changes to a watermark and then select a different watermark or click **New**, all of the changes are saved, and only the current, unsaved changes can be canceled.

Finishing tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Finishing** tab is located on the **Printing Preferences** tab set. For information about how to access these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 118](#).

Use the **Finishing** tab to print booklets and control the paper output. The following figure shows the **Finishing** tab.

Figure 4-16 Finishing tab



The **Finishing** tab contains the following controls:

- [Document Options](#)
- [Document preview image](#)
- [Orientation](#)

Document Options

The **Document Options** group box contains the following controls:

- [Print on Both Sides](#)
- [Flip Pages Up](#)

- [Booklet Layout](#)
- [Pages per Sheet](#)
- [Print Page Borders](#)
- [Page Order](#)

Print on Both Sides



NOTE: This feature is called **Print on Both Sides (manually)** for the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 and the HP Color LaserJet CP3525n, because these models do not include an automatic duplex unit. For all other product models, this feature is called **Print on Both Sides**.

The default setting for the **Print on Both Sides** option is off (not selected). **Print on Both Sides** is available when the following conditions exist:

- **Paper type** on the **Paper** tab is set to any paper type *except for* the following types:
 - **Labels**
 - **Color Laser Transparency**
- **Paper sizes** is set to any paper size *except for* the following sizes:
 - **Envelope #10**
 - **Double Postcard (JIS)**
 - **Envelope #9**
 - **Envelope Monarch**
 - **Envelope B5**
 - **Envelope C5**
 - **Envelope C6**
 - **Envelope DL**

Print on both sides automatically

The duplexing unit in the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product prints on two sides of a sheet of paper when the **Print on Both Sides** option is specified in the print job. The HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product comes with a duplexing unit installed in the following models:

- HP Color LaserJet CP3525dn
- HP Color LaserJet CP3525x

These product models support smart duplexing. The smart duplexing feature increases printing performance by preventing one-page print jobs or single-sided pages of a duplexed print job from going through the duplexing unit even when the duplexing feature has been selected in the driver.

All paper types support the smart duplexing feature, except for paper types that cannot be printed on both sides (such as labels, transparencies, and envelopes) and the following paper types:

- Prepunched
- Preprinted
- Letterhead
- Cardstock

When the paper type is set to **Unspecified**, the smart duplexing feature is disabled.

To achieve the best print quality when printing on the second side of the page, the product needs to make adjustments to its print modes. When you select a paper type, you are, in effect, instructing the product to use a group of settings (such as fuser temperature and print speed) to print the paper with the best possible quality. This group of settings is known as print mode. A different print mode is used with each paper type. Print-mode adjustments for the second side of a duplexed page are automatic.


Print on both sides manually

Select the **Print on Both Sides (Manually)** check box to print on the second side of the paper for the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 and HP Color LaserJet CP3525n product models, which do not have a duplexing unit installed. Also, select **Print on Both Sides (Manually)** on the other HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product models for paper types that are not available when using the automatic duplexing unit, such as cardstock and thick paper.

Manually printing on the second side of a page is available when you are using the HP PCL 6 driver. If a duplexing unit is installed and manual duplexing is enabled in the driver, the product automatically prints on both sides of paper types that are supported for automatic duplexing (Letter, A4, Legal, and 8.5 x 11 only). For paper types that are *not* supported for automatic duplexing, a Help message appears prompting you to configure the driver settings for manual printing on both sides. Manual printing on both sides does not occur automatically.

Select the paper type that corresponds to the paper that you are using for the print job. The following paper types have a different print modes when you manually print on the second side:

- Plain
- Preprinted
- Letterhead
- Prepunched
- Bond
- Recycled
- Colored
- Rough

 **NOTE:** To make the **Print on Both Sides (Manually)** check box available in the document options, select the **Allow Manual Duplexing** option on the **Device Settings** tab in the print-driver **Properties** tab set. See [Installable Options on page 179](#).

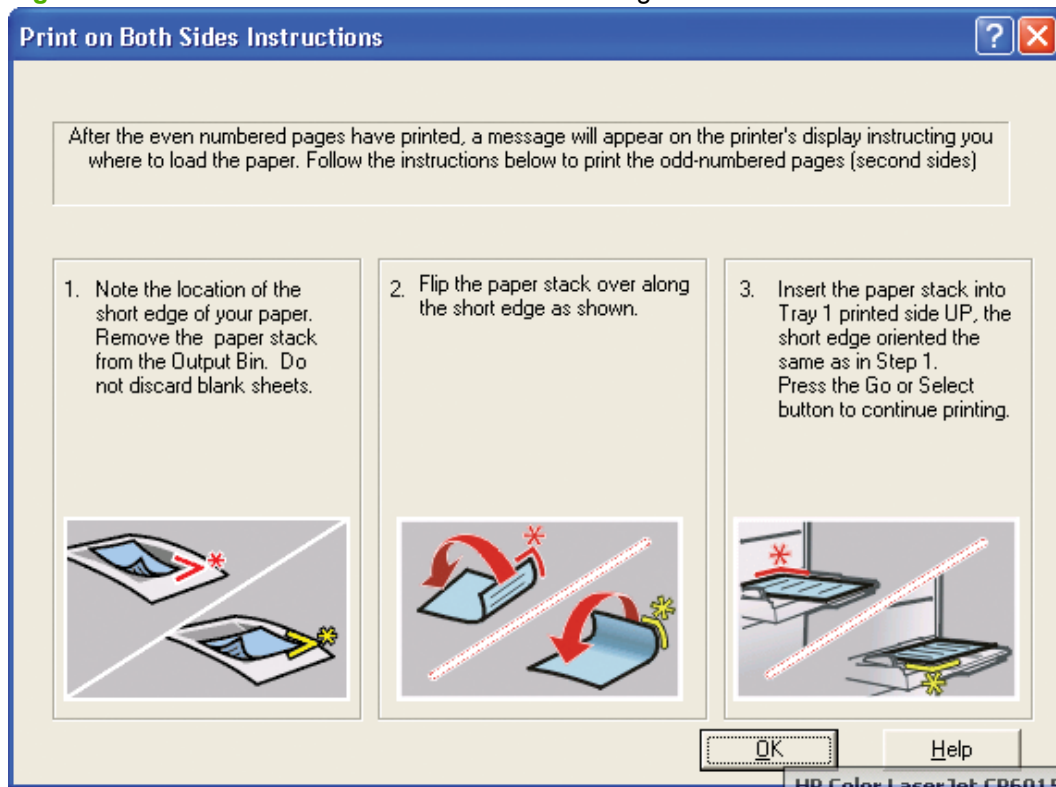
If you want to print on both sides manually while using paper that is supported for automatic duplexing, you must select and apply the **Not Installed** setting on the **Allow manual duplexing** option on the **Device Settings** tab.

Cardstock paper can be manually printed on the second side, but no change occurs to the print mode. Transparencies and labels should *never* be manually printed on the second side.

To print a multiple-page document, follow these steps:

1. Select the **Print on Both Sides (Manually)** check box.
2. Click **OK**. The even-number pages of the document print.
3. When the control panel shows the MANUALLY FEED message, insert the stack of paper (on which the even-number pages have been printed) as indicated in the following figure.

Figure 4-17 Print on Both Sides Instructions dialog box



When you have completed the steps that appear in the dialog box, the second half of the print job prints on the back side of the stack of paper. The driver does not require the program to specifically support odd- and even-page printing, because the driver coordinates this function.

Flip Pages Up

Use the **Flip Pages Up** check box to specify the duplex-binding option. By default, the **Flip Pages Up** check box is not available. It is available only when **Print on Both Sides** is selected. The following table demonstrates the results of selecting this check box, depending on the paper orientation selected on the **Finishing** tab.

Table 4-3 Page orientation

| Orientation (Finishing tab) | Flip Pages Up selected | Flip Pages Up not selected |
|-----------------------------|------------------------|----------------------------|
| Portrait | Short-edge binding | Long-edge binding |
| Landscape | Long-edge binding | Short-edge binding |

When **Print on Both Sides** is selected, the document preview image changes to show a spiral binding along either the left edge or the top edge of the page. In addition, a folded-over corner appears in the lower-right portion of the preview image, indicating that printing occurs on the back side. An arrow on the folded-over corner points in the direction that the pages would be flipped if they were bound together.

Short-side binding is for print jobs with pages that read by flipping over like the pages of a calendar. Long-side binding is for print jobs with pages that read by turning like the pages of a book.

Booklet Layout

The **Booklet Layout** drop-down menu, visible when **Print on Both Sides** is selected, offers choices that are based on the current paper size. The default setting for the **Booklet Printing** drop-down menu is **Off**. The other settings have the following format, where **[paper size]** depends on the paper size that is set on the **Paper/Quality** tab:

- **Left Binding**
- **Right Binding**

When you select **Left Binding** or **Right Binding**, the document preview image changes to show the location of the binding. If the **Pages per Sheet** setting is on the default setting of 1, it automatically changes to **2 pages per sheet**. If you change the **Pages per Sheet** setting manually to 4, 6, 9, or 16 pages per sheet, the booklet setting is disabled. See [Pages per Sheet on page 157](#) for more information.

Book and Booklet Printing

The HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series supports book and booklet printing.

A book is a print job consisting of at least two pages. It can have a different paper type for the front cover, first page, other pages, last page, or back cover. Use the **Covers** and **Print pages on different paper** settings on the **Paper/Quality** tab to select different paper for the front cover, first page, other pages, and back cover. For more information, see [Paper/Quality tab features on page 134](#).

A booklet is a print job that places two pages on each side of a sheet that can then be folded into a booklet that is half the size of the paper. Use the **Booklet Layout** drop-down menu on the **Finishing** tab to control booklet settings.

Print a booklet

1. Open the driver **Printing Preferences** tab set and click the **Printing Shortcuts** tab. For information about how to access the **Printing Preferences** tab set, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 118](#).
2. Click to select **Booklet Printing**.



NOTE: Typically, you select the size of each page of the booklet in your software program by clicking **File**, clicking **Page**, and then clicking **Setup**. If your software program does not allow you to set the paper size, use the **Paper sizes** drop-down menu on the **Printing Shortcuts** tab.

3. Select the appropriate settings from the following drop-down menus on the **Printing Shortcuts** tab.
 - **Paper type**
 - **Paper source**
 - **Orientation**
 - **Booklet Layout**
4. Click **OK** to print.

Pages per Sheet

Use the **Pages per Sheet** option to select the number of pages that you want to print on a single sheet of paper. If you choose to print more than one page per sheet, the pages appear smaller and are arranged on the sheet in the order that they would otherwise be printed. The **Pages per Sheet** drop-down menu provides six settings:

- **1 page per sheet** (this is the default)
- **2 pages per sheet**
- **4 pages per sheet**
- **6 pages per sheet**
- **9 pages per sheet**
- **16 pages per sheet**



NOTE: When you select an option other than **2 pages per sheet**, booklet printing is unavailable.

Related controls indented beneath **Pages per Sheet** are **Print Page Borders** and **Page Order**, which become active when **Pages per Sheet** is greater than 1.

Print Page Borders

Print Page Borders sets a line around each page image on a printed sheet to help visually define the borders of each logical page.

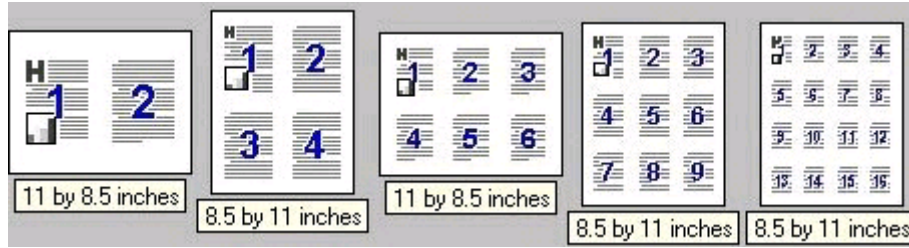
Page Order

The **Page Order** drop-down menu contains four selections:

- **Right, then Down**
- **Down, then Right**
- **Left, then Down**
- **Down, then Left**

The preview document image changes to reflect alterations in these settings, as shown by the examples in the following figure.

Figure 4-18 Page-order preview images



- 2 pages per sheet
- 4 pages per sheet
- 6 pages per sheet
- 9 pages per sheet
- 16 pages per sheet

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of the following **Printing Preferences** driver tabs:

- **Printing Shortcuts**
- **Paper/Quality**
- **Effects**
- **Finishing**
- **Color**

Switching between tabs does not change the location or appearance of the document preview image. When you move the mouse over the document preview image, the mouse cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. You can toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

Orientation

Orientation refers to the layout of the image on the page, and does not affect the way that paper feeds into the product. You can specify the orientation of the print job. The three available orientations are portrait, landscape, and rotated. The default orientation is **Portrait**.



NOTE: Nearly all software programs establish the orientation for the printed page, so the page orientation in the driver is useful only for the few software programs that do not set an orientation.

The **Orientation** group box contains the following options:

- **Portrait.** The top edge of the document is the shorter edge of the paper.
- **Landscape.** The top edge of the document is the longer edge of the paper.
- **Rotate by 180 degrees.** This creates a landscape or portrait orientation in which the image is rotated 180°. This setting is useful for printing prepunched paper.

You can toggle orientation between portrait and landscape by clicking the document preview image. If you select the **Rotate by 180 degrees** check box, no change occurs in the document preview image.

Job Storage tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Job Storage** tab is located on the **Printing Preferences** tab set. For information about how to access these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 118](#).

Use the job-storage feature to store print jobs in the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product memory or hard disk for printing at a later time.

The **Job Storage** tab appears among the driver tabs only if the job-storage feature is enabled on the **Device Settings** tab. To support job-storage features for complex jobs, or if you often print complex graphics, print postscript (.PS) documents, or use many downloaded fonts, HP recommends that you install additional memory, install a hard disk, or both. Added memory also gives you more flexibility in supporting job-storage features. A minimum total memory of 288 MB is required to use the **Proof and Hold** and **Personal Job** job-storage features. A hard disk is required to use the **Quick Copy** and **Stored Job** job-storage features.

After a hard disk is installed, the driver must be configured to reflect the changes in the product. If bidirectional communication is enabled in your environment, the Update Now feature can be used to update the drivers. For more information, see [Automatic Configuration on page 179](#).

To configure the drivers manually after installing a hard disk, follow these steps:

1. In Windows Vista, click the **Start** button, click **Control Panel**, click **Hardware and Sound**, and then click **Printers**.

In Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Server 2008, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.

In Windows 2000, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.
2. Right-click the product name.
3. Click **Properties**.
4. Click the **Device Settings** tab.
5. Select **Installed** for the **Printer Hard Disk** under **Installable Options**, and then select **Installed** in the drop-down menu.
6. Click **OK** to make the printer hard disk and job-storage features available.

You can disable the job-storage feature while leaving the printer hard disk enabled. To disable the job-storage feature, follow these steps:

1. In Windows Vista, click the **Start** button, click **Control Panel**, click **Hardware and Sound**, and then click **Printers**.

In Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Server 2008, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.

In Windows 2000, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.
2. Right-click the product name.
3. Click **Properties**.
4. Click the **Device Settings** tab.

5. Select **Job Storage**.
6. Select **Disabled** in the **Change 'Job Storage' Setting** dialog box that appears.

If the job-storage feature is enabled (without installing a hard disk but with at least 288 MB of total memory), two **Job Storage Mode** settings are available on the **Job Storage** tab:

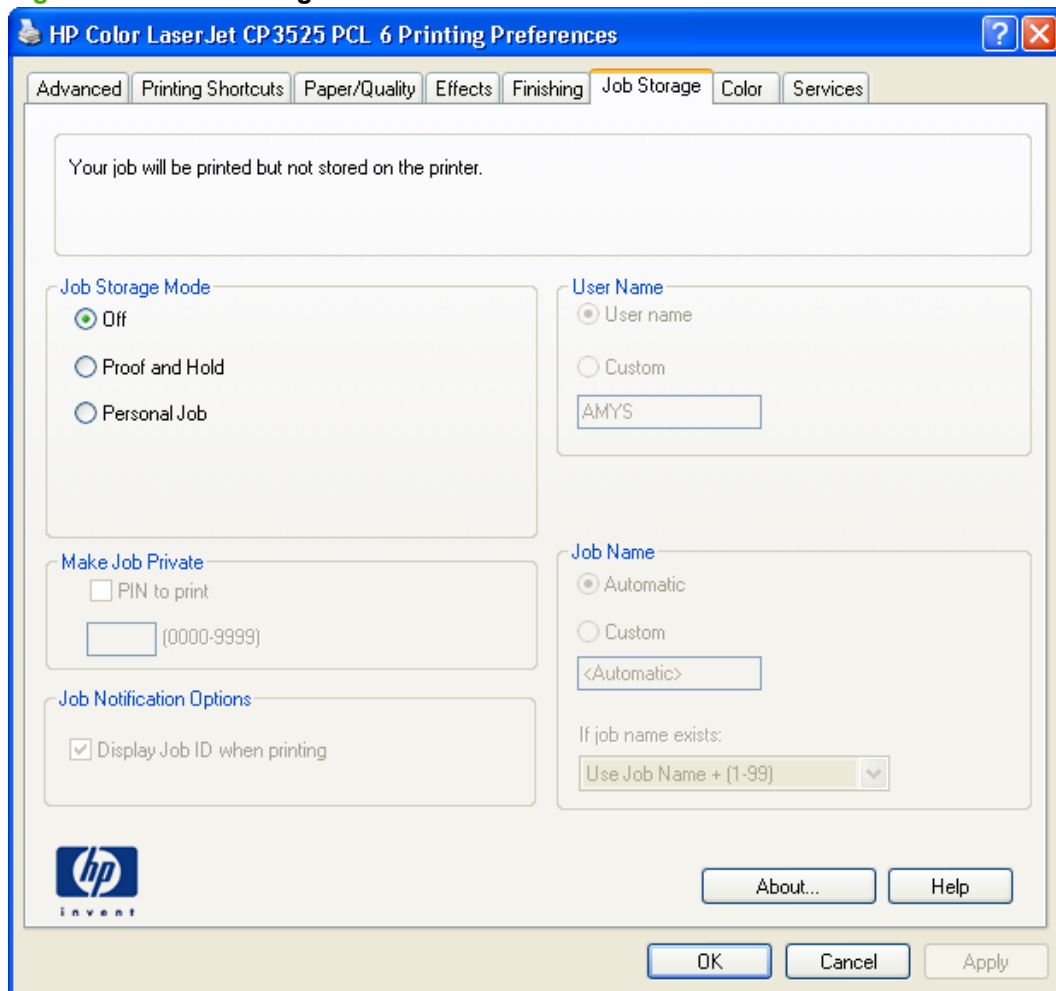
- **Proof and Hold**
- **Personal Job**

Two additional **Job Storage Mode** settings become available on the **Job Storage** tab if a hard disk is installed:

- **Quick Copy**
- **Stored Job**

The following figure shows the **Job Storage** tab.

Figure 4-19 Job Storage tab



The **Job Storage** tab contains the following controls:

 **NOTE:** Information about using the job-storage feature when printing is also provided here.

- [Status group box](#)

- [Job Storage Mode](#)
- [PIN to print](#)
- [Job Notification Options](#)
- [User Name](#)
- [Job Name](#)
- [Use job-storage features when printing](#)

Status group box

The unlabeled group box on the **Job Storage** tab contains a status message about the destination of a print job. The status information changes depending on the selections that are made on the **Job Storage** tab.

Job Storage Mode

Use the **Job Storage Mode** options on the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product to store documents at the product and then control their printing at the product control panel.

The HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product offers the following **Job Storage Mode** options:

- **Off**
- **Proof and Hold**
- **Personal Job**
- **Quick Copy**
- **Stored Job**

These options and the settings that control them are described below.

Off


When selected, this option turns the job-storage feature off (it is disabled), which means that the print job will not be stored in the product.

Proof and Hold

To use the **Proof and Hold** option, the job-storage feature must be enabled.

When selected, this option stores the print job in memory and prints only the first copy of the job, allowing you to check the first copy. If the document prints correctly, you can print the remaining copies of the print job at the control panel. You can set the number of proof-and-hold print jobs that can be stored in the product at the control panel.

After it is released for printing, the proof-and-hold job is immediately deleted from the product. If more copies are needed, you must reprint the job from the software program. If you send a second proof-and-hold job to the product with the same user name and job name as an existing proof-and-hold job (and you have not released the original job for printing), the job overwrites the existing job. Proof-and-hold jobs are deleted if you turn off the product.

 **NOTE:** The product configuration can be set to hold a maximum of 50 quick-copy or proof-and-hold jobs. The number is set at the product control panel in the **CONFIGURATION** menu, and the default is 32. When this preset limit is reached, the new document overwrites the oldest held document. Also, a document that has the same user name and job name as one that is already stored on the printer hard disk will overwrite the existing document.

Personal Job

To use the **Personal Job** option, the job-storage feature must be enabled.

When you select **Personal Job**, the print job is sent to the product, but is not printed until you request the job at the product control panel. Selecting **Personal Job** activates the **PIN** group box. If **PIN to print** is selected, the print job can be printed only after you type the correct PIN at the control panel. After the job is printed, the job is immediately deleted from the product. This feature is useful when you are printing sensitive or confidential documents that you do not want to leave in an output bin after printing.


The Private Job/PIN coupling has a PIN restriction of four ASCII numeric characters (0 through 9). If you type non-numeric characters, they are removed immediately. If you type more than four characters, the characters past the fourth are truncated. The field temporarily accepts fewer than four digits in the string, but when the edit field loses focus, the zeroes pad the left end until the PIN contains exactly four digits. The default initialized value for the PIN is 0000 for **Personal Job**.

After it is released for printing, the private job is immediately deleted from the product. If more copies are needed, you must reprint the job from the software program. If you send a second private job that has the same user name and job name as an existing private job (and you have not released the original job for printing), the job overwrites the existing job, regardless of the PIN. Private jobs are deleted if you turn off the product.

Quick Copy

To use the **Quick Copy** option, a printer hard disk must be installed, and the job-storage feature must be enabled.

When you select **Quick Copy**, the entire print job prints and a copy of the print job is stored on the product, after which you can print additional copies of the print job at the product control panel. The number of quick-copy print jobs that can be stored in the product is set by using the product control panel.

 **NOTE:** The product configuration can be set to hold a maximum of 50 quick-copy or proof-and-hold jobs. The number is set at the product control panel in the **CONFIGURATION** menu, and the default is 32. When this preset limit is reached, the new document overwrites the oldest held document. Also, a document that has the same user name and job name as one that is already stored on the printer hard disk will overwrite the existing document. **Quick Copy** jobs are deleted if you turn off the product.

Stored Job

To use the **Stored Job** option, a hard disk must be installed on the product and the job-storage feature must be enabled.

Use the **Stored Job** option to send a print job directly to the printer hard disk without printing it. The print job is stored in the product as if it is an electronic file cabinet. After the print job is stored on the printer hard disk, you can print the job at the product control panel.


The job remains stored in the product until it is deleted or overwritten by a document that has the same user name and job name. Stored jobs remain on the printer hard disk when the product is turned off. Use this feature for forms and other common or shared documents.

A stored job can be managed in two ways: as either a private or a public job.

Select the **PIN to Print** check box to set the private mode. Use a private stored job to send a print job directly to the product, which can then be printed only after you type a PIN up to 4 digits long at the product control panel. (You can set the PIN in the **PIN** group box.)

After the job is printed, the job remains in the product and can be printed again at the product control panel.

The box labeled **PIN** is usually inactive. The **PIN to Print** option becomes available when you select **Stored Job**. If you select the **PIN to Print** box, you must type a PIN to make the stored job private.

 **NOTE:** A *private* stored job is not the same as a *personal* job. *Personal* jobs are deleted from the product after they are printed. *Private stored* jobs are retained in the product after printing, but require that a PIN be typed each time they are printed. A printer hard disk is required for *Private stored* jobs.

PIN to print

PIN to print check box is available when **Stored Job** is selected. Select the **PIN to Print** box, then type a 4-digit PIN number in the box provided. The stored job is sent to the product, where you must enter the 4-digit PIN on the control panel to retrieve the personal job.

The **PIN to Print** check box is available when **Personal Job** is selected. Select the **PIN to Print** option, and then type a 4-digit PIN number in the box provided. The personal job is sent to the product, where you must type the 4-digit PIN on the control panel to retrieve the stored job.

Job Notification Options

Clicking a **Job Storage Mode** selection causes the **User Name** and **Job Name** options to become available. The **Display Job ID when printing** check box is selected by default. The **Display Job ID when printing** option causes a pop-up dialog box to appear when the job-storage print job is printed. The dialog box shows the user name and job name that are associated with the stored print job, as well as the printer name, port, and location.

User Name

Use the **User Name** settings to help identify the job at the product control panel. The following are the **User Name** settings:

- **User Name.** This option associates your Windows user name with the stored print job. The Windows user name automatically appears in the text field below the **User Name** options.
- **Custom.** Use this option to type a custom name for the stored print job. When you click **Custom**, the text field below the option becomes available. The **User Name** field can contain no more than 16 characters, and is limited to A through Z and 0 through 9 because the name appears on the product control-panel display. If you try to type a lowercase character, it automatically shifts to uppercase. If you try to type a character in an ASCII code of fewer than 32 or more than 126 characters, the character is removed from the edit field, along with all of the characters that follow it. If you try to type more than 16 characters, any character beyond 16 is truncated.

Job Name

Use the **Job Name** options to specify a name to identify the job at the product control panel. The following are the **Job Name** settings:

- **<Automatic>** This option, which is the default selection, automatically generates the job name that is associated with the stored print job. The file name of the print job is used if it is available to the print driver. Otherwise, the software program name or a time stamp is used for the job name.
- **Custom.** Use this to type a custom job name for the stored print job. When you click **Custom**, the text field below the option becomes available. In those languages for which **<Automatic>** cannot be translated without the use of invalid characters, the driver uses a string of three dashes. The acceptable characters for job name and user name vary for each operating system. The string must be of a length and type that can appear on the product control-panel display.

The **Job Name** field can contain no more than 16 characters, and is limited to A through Z (uppercase or lowercase) and 0 through 9 so that the name can appear on the product control-panel display. If you try to type a character in an ASCII code of fewer than 32 or more than 126 characters, the character is removed from the edit field, along with all of the characters that follow it. If you try to type more than 16 characters, any character beyond 16 is truncated.


When the dialog box is closed, or as soon as the focus is removed from the control (that is, when the **Tab** key is pressed or another control is selected), an empty string is replaced with **<Automatic>**. The acceptable characters for job name and user name vary for each operating system. The string must be of a length and type that can appear on the product control-panel display.

If Job Name Exists. When you store a print job, you can create a print-job name or the product software can assign one automatically. If a print job with the same name already exists, the new print job will overwrite the existing print job. To eliminate the chances of a new print job overwriting an old print job because both have the same name, select **Use Job Name + (1-99)**. After you create the print job name, or when one is created automatically, the product software assigns a number between 1 and 99 to the end of the print job name to make the name unique. Select **Replace Existing File** if you always want the product software to overwrite an existing print job with the same print job name.

Use job-storage features when printing

To use job-storage features when printing, follow these steps:


1. Click **File**, and then click **Print** from the software program. The **Print** dialog box appears.

 **NOTE:** Clicking the print icon in the software program toolbar prints the job without using job-storage features.

2. Click **Properties**. The **Properties** dialog box appears.
3. Click the **Job Storage** tab.
4. Select the job-storage options by clicking the appropriate option button, and then complete any required fields.
5. Click **OK**.

Release a job-storage print job

After you send a print job that uses the job-storage feature, you can release the job to print from the product control panel.


1. Press the **menu** button  to open the menus.
2. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ until **RETRIEVE JOB** is highlighted on the product control panel, and then press **OK**.
3. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to your user name, and then press **OK**.
4. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to the job name, and then press **OK**.
5. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ until **PRINT** is highlighted on the product control panel, and then press **OK**.
6. Press **OK**.
7. If a PIN number is assigned to the job, press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to select the first digit of the PIN, and then press **OK**. The number in the product control-panel display changes to an asterisk. Repeat this step for each of the remaining three digits of the PIN number.

If no PIN number is assigned to the job, continue with the next step.

8. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to select the number of copies to print.
9. Press **OK** to print the job.

Delete a job-storage print job

Sometimes it is necessary to delete a print job from the printer hard disk. You can do this from the product control panel.

1. Press the **menu** button  to open the menus.
2. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ until **RETRIEVE JOB** is highlighted on the product control panel, and then press **OK**.
3. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to your user name, and then press **OK**.
4. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to the job name, and then press **OK**.
5. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ until **DELETE** is highlighted on the product control panel, and then press **OK**.
6. Press **OK**.
7. If a PIN number is assigned to the job, press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to select the first digit of the PIN, and then press **OK**. The number in the product control-panel display changes to an asterisk. Repeat this step for each of the remaining three digits of the PIN number.

If no PIN number is assigned to the job, continue with the next step.

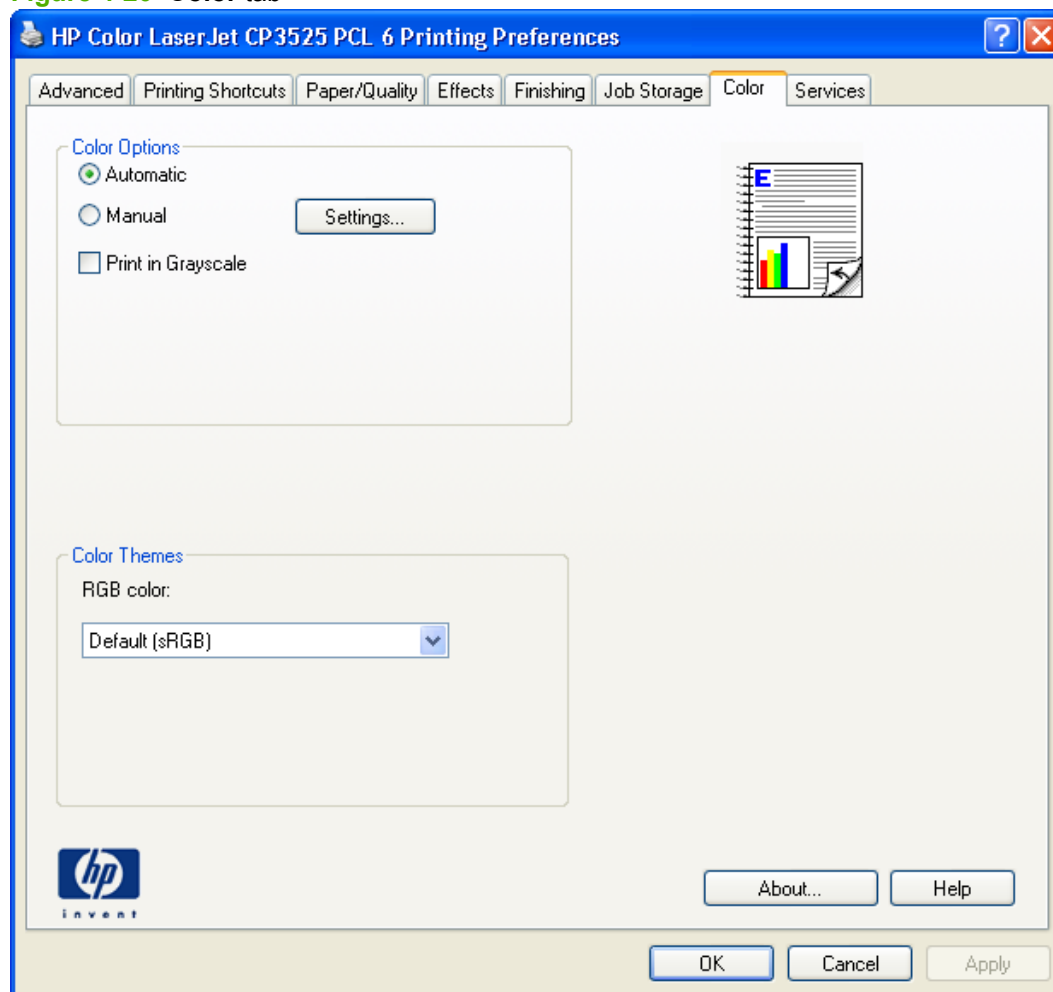
8. Press **OK** to delete the job.

Color tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Color** tab is located on the **Printing Preferences** tab set. For information about how to access these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 118](#),

Use the **Color** tab to specify predefined color-option settings or to fine-tune the color treatments and halftoning. Color output can also be converted to grayscale. The **Color** tab is shown in the following figure.

Figure 4-20 Color tab



The **Color** tab contains the following sets of controls:

- [Color Options](#)
- [Color Themes](#)
- [Document preview image](#)

Color Options

Use the **Color Options** group box to adjust the independent color controls. The settings affect the print job color rendering and print quality. The **Color Options** group box contains the following controls:

- **Automatic** option (default)
- **Manual** option
- **Settings** button (Click this button to open the **Color Settings** dialog box.)
- **Print in Grayscale** check box

Automatic

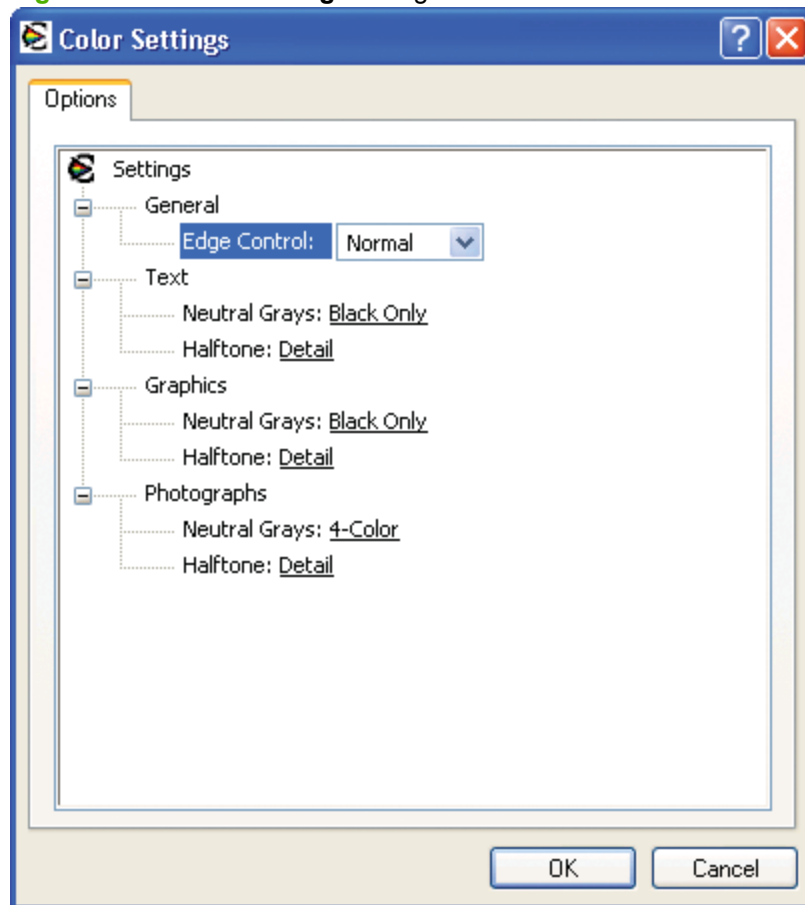
Use the **Automatic** option for color settings that automatically fine-tune the printed output. The **Automatic** color settings provide high-quality output while maintaining product performance for most color printing needs.

Manual

To change the color settings, select the **Manual** option, and then click **Settings**. The **Color Settings** dialog box appears.

To change the settings, make your selections by using the drop-down menus in the **Color Settings** dialog box, and then click **OK**. The following figure shows the **Color Settings** dialog box with "Custom" settings.

Figure 4-21 Color Settings dialog box



The **Color Settings** dialog box contains the following controls:

- **General**
 - **Edge Control**
- **Text**
 - **Neutral Grays**
 - **Halftone**
- **Graphics**
 - **Neutral Grays**
 - **Halftone**
- **Photographs**
 - **Neutral Grays**
 - **Halftone**

General

Use the **General** setting group to control **Edge Control** settings for all color printing.

Edge Control determines how edges are rendered. **Edge Control** consists of three components:

- Adaptive Halftoning, which increases edge sharpness
- Trapping, which reduces the effect of color plane misregistration by slightly overlapping the edges of adjacent objects
- Color Resolution Enhancement Technology (C-REt), which increases the apparent resolution by placing each dot for the smoothest edges

The **Edge Control** option offers four settings:

- **Off.** The **Off** setting turns Trapping, Adaptive Halftoning, and C-REt to **Off**.
- **Light.** The **Light** setting provides minimal trapping. Adaptive Halftoning is set to **On** and C-REt is set to **On**.
- **Normal.** The **Normal** setting provides the default trapping settings. Adaptive Halftoning is set to **On**, and C-REt is set to **On**.
- **Maximum.** The **Maximum** setting provides the most trapping. Adaptive Halftoning is set to **On**, and C-REt is set to **On**.

Neutral Grays

The **Neutral Grays** drop-down menu controls the selection of a device-dependent color table that is embedded in the product firmware. You can adjust the **Neutral Grays** setting independently for text, graphics, or photographs. The following options are available:

- **Black Only.** This option generates neutral colors (grays and black) by using only black toner. This option guarantees that neutral colors do not have a color cast. **Black Only** is the default setting for the **Text** and **Graphics** components.
- **4-Color.** This option generates neutral colors by combining all four colors of toner, which produces smoother gradients and transitions to non-neutral colors. It also produces the darkest possible black. **4-Color** is the default setting for **Photographs**.

Halftone

The **Halftone** setting controls the selection of a product-dependent halftone algorithm that is embedded in the product firmware. Halftoning is a method by which the product mixes the four primary colors (cyan, magenta, yellow, and black) in varying proportions to create the appearance of many colors. The **Halftone** options affect the resolution and clarity of the color on the printed page. You can select **Halftone** settings for text, graphics, and photographs independently.

The following Halftone options are available:

- **Detail.** This is the default option; it is useful for text and graphics that require sharp distinctions among lines or colors, or for images that contain a pattern or a high level of detail. Select this option for sharp edges and detail.
- **Smooth.** This option provides better results for large, solid-filled print areas. It also enhances photographs by smoothing out fine color gradations. Select this option for uniform and smooth area fills.

Color Themes

The **Color Themes** group box contains the following **RGB color** options, which determines how colors are rendered:

- [Default \(sRGB\)](#)
- [Photo \(sRGB\)](#)
- [Photo \(Adobe RGB 1998\)](#)
- [Vivid \(sRGB\)](#)
- [None](#)
- [Custom Profile](#)

Default (sRGB)

Select **Default (sRGB)** for most printing needs. This setting instructs the product to interpret RGB color as sRGB, which is the accepted standard of Microsoft and the World Wide Web Consortium (W3C). Colors are matched to optimize the RGB colors on the screen and to provide vivid images and graphics.

Photo (sRGB)

Select **Photo (sRGB)** to enhance documents in which the content is mainly bitmap images, such as .GIF or .eps files. This setting instructs the product to use the best color matching for rendering sRGB bitmap images. This setting affects only raster data; it has no effect on text or vector-based graphics. Using glossy paper in combination with this setting provides the maximum enhancement.

Photo (Adobe RGB 1998)

Select **Photo (AdobeRGB 1998)** for documents that use the AdobeRGB color space rather than sRGB. For example, some digital cameras capture images in Adobe RGB, and documents that are produced with Adobe PhotoShop use the Adobe RGB color space. When printing from a professional software program that uses Adobe RGB, it is important that you turn off the color management in the software program and allow the product software to manage the color space.

Vivid (sRGB)

The **Vivid (sRGB)** feature instructs the printer to increase the color saturation in the midtones. Less colorful objects are rendered more colorfully. This value is recommended for printing business graphics.

None

Select **None** to instruct the printer to print RGB data in raw device mode. To render documents properly when this option is selected, you must manage color in the program in which you are working or in the operating system.

△ **CAUTION:** Use this option only if you are familiar with the procedures for managing color in the software program or in the operating system.

Custom Profile

Select **Custom Profile** when you want to duplicate the printed output from other products or for using special effects. This setting instructs the product to use a custom profile to emulate color output from another product by modifying how color is rendered.

The default custom profile is an emulation of the color table used on the HP Color LaserJet 4650 product. The product holds only one custom profile at a time, so when you download and install another color table, it erases the default color table and installs the new one.

You can download custom profiles from the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/cljcp3525_firmware

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of the following **Printing Preferences** driver tabs:

- **Printing Shortcuts**
- **Paper/Quality**
- **Effects**
- **Finishing**
- **Color**

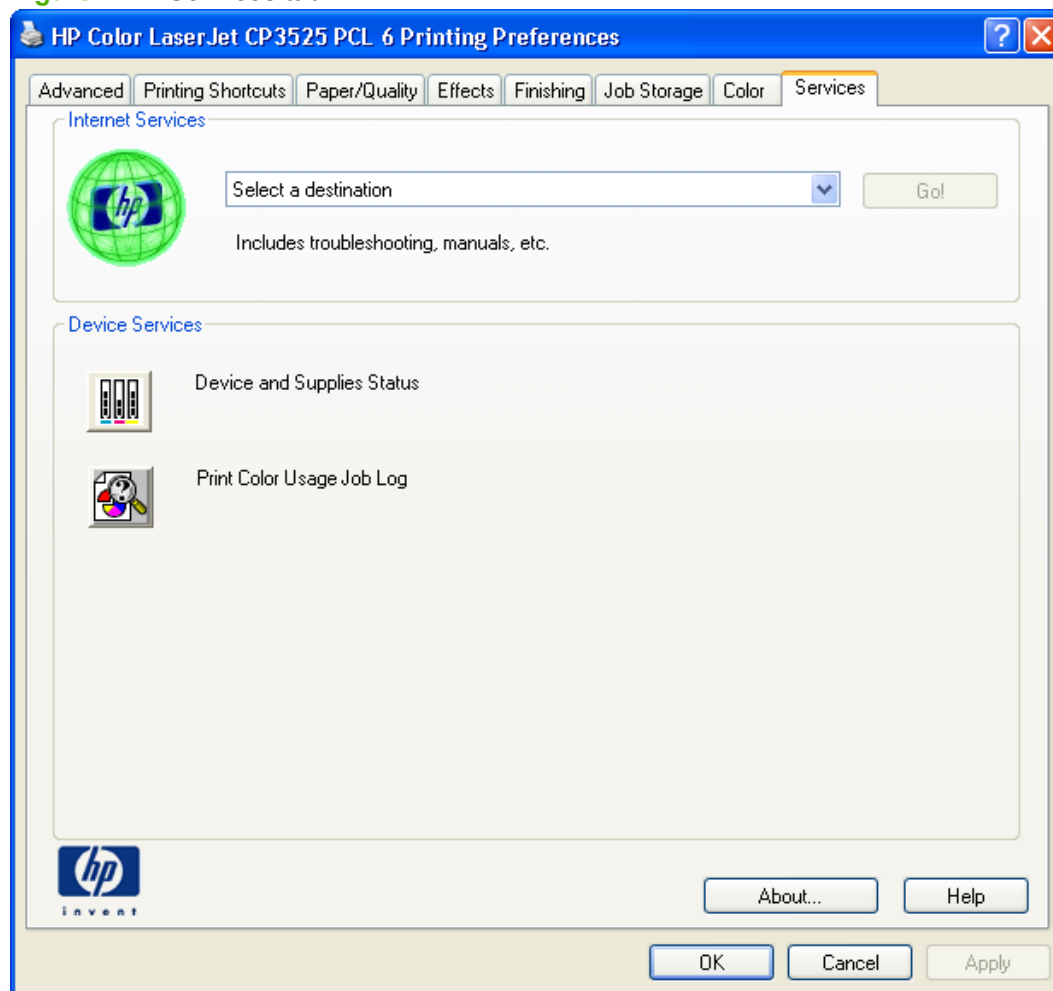
Switching between tabs does not change the location or appearance of the document preview image. When you move the mouse over the document preview image, the mouse cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. You can toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

Services tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Services** tab is located on the **Printing Preferences** tab set. For information about how to access these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 118](#).

The **Services** tab is shown in the following figure.

Figure 4-22 Services tab



The **Services** tab contains the following group boxes:

- [Internet Services](#)
- [Device services](#)

Internet Services

The **Internet Services** group box contains the **Select a destination** drop-down menu with the following selections:

- **Online diagnostic tools.** This is the HP Instant Support Web site, where you can find interactive tools and contacts for troubleshooting.
- **Support and troubleshooting.** This is the main Web site for HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product support.

- **Product manuals.** View or download HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product manuals.
- **Check for driver updates.** Automatically check your print drivers to see whether the correct and most up-to-date print drivers are installed.
- **Color printing access/usage.** Find information about enabling and disabling color printing and tracking color print-job usage.
- **Shop for supplies.** Shop online for HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product supplies.
- **Show me how.** This link takes you to Web pages that provide step-by-step instructions for performing specific tasks, such as clearing paper jams or using special paper types.


If you have Internet access, select any of these items and click **Go!** to open the corresponding HP Web page.

Device services

Click the **Device and Supplies** status icon to open the **Device Status** screen of the HP EWS, which shows supply levels and control panel status. For more information, see [Embedded Web server on page 54](#).

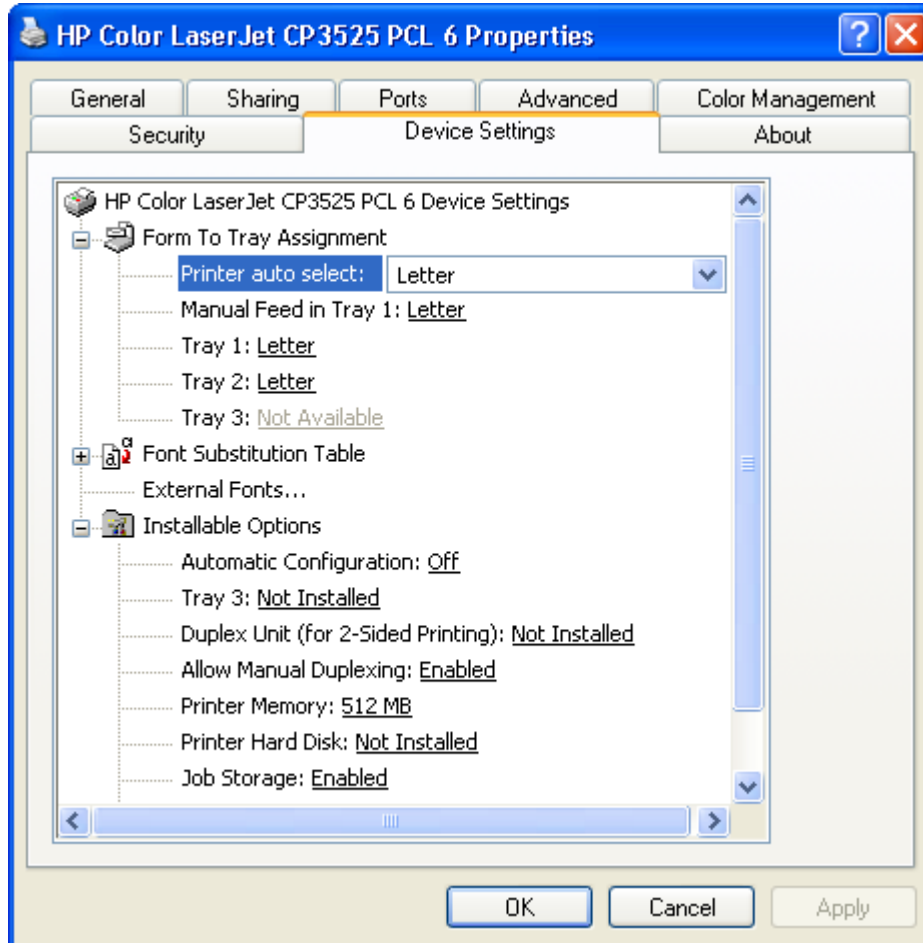
Click the **Print color usage job log** icon to print a page that shows information about users, print jobs, and applications that have printed to the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product.

Device Settings tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Device Settings** tab is located on the **Properties** tab set. For information about how to access these tabs, see [Properties driver tabs on page 119](#),

Available options depend on the feature. The following figure shows the **Device Settings** tab.

Figure 4-23 Device Settings tab



The **Device Settings** tab contains controls for paper-handling devices and controls for managing the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product.

The **Device Settings** tab contains the following controls:

- [Form to Tray Assignment](#)
- [Font Substitution Table](#)
- [Installable Options](#)

Form to Tray Assignment

A network administrator can use **Form to Tray Assignment** to specify the paper size in each input tray.

The HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product supports more than one source of paper. You can assign a form (which defines the paper size and margins) to each paper source. When a form is matched to a

source, you can select the form when you print. The product prints from the tray to which that form is assigned.

Network administrators can use the **Form to Tray Assignment** setting to specify, in the driver, the paper size that is loaded into each available input tray. The use of forms constrains the choices that are available in the paper-size list on the **Paper/Quality** tab in the **Printing Preferences** driver tabs. This constraint prevents (or reduces the likelihood of) tying up the product with paper-mount messages that occur when users request sizes or types that are not available.

The trays listed in the **Form to Tray Assignment** setting include standard trays and optional accessory trays. Generally, items that are installed separately have a separate **Installable Options** setting.

The input trays listed here are also listed as paper sources on the **Paper/Quality** tab.

Configuring the trays

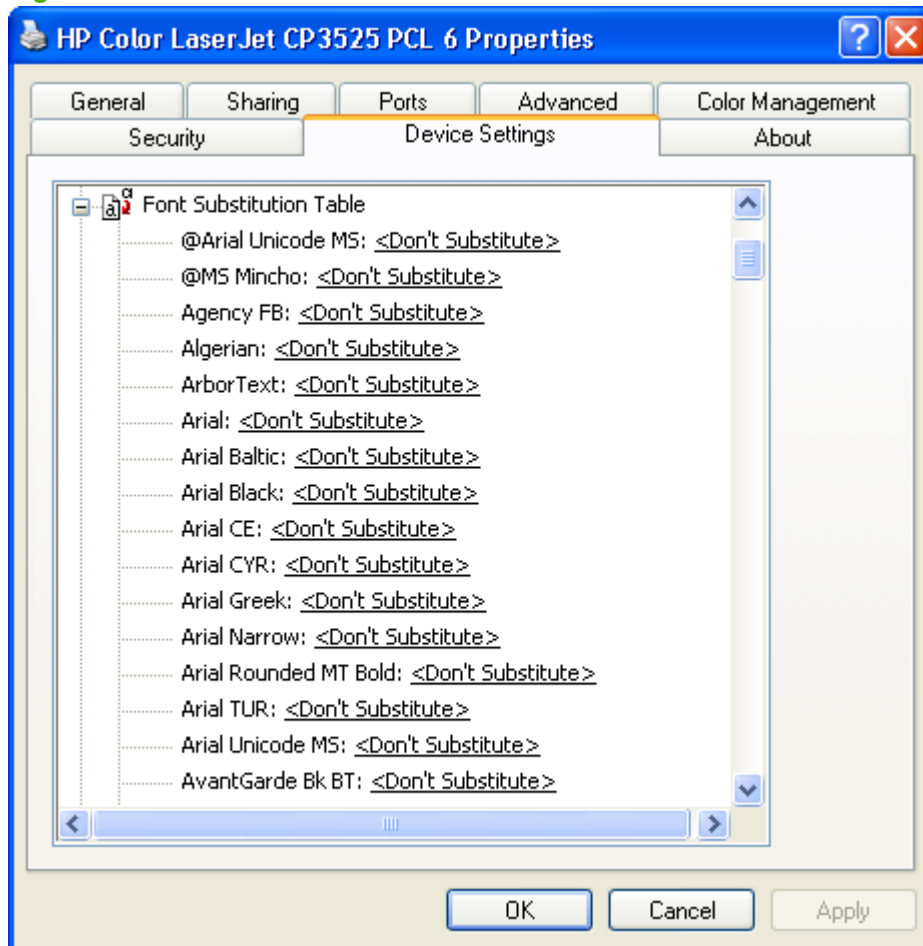
1. Select the appropriate tray in the **Form to Tray Assignment** list.
2. Use the drop-down menu to select the paper size (or form) that is loaded in that tray.
3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 for the remaining trays.
4. Click **OK** to enable your settings, or, if necessary, click **Cancel** to reconfigure all the trays, and remove the size and type constraints that have been imposed on the **Paper/Quality** tab.

Font Substitution Table

Use the **Font Substitution Table** settings to change the TrueType to printer font mapping and to install and remove external fonts for the product through the **External Fonts** option. External fonts can be soft fonts or DIMM fonts.

Click the **Font Substitution Table** option to open a list of fonts, as show in the following figure. Use the settings to change the TrueType-to-product font mappings.

Figure 4-24 Font Substitution Table

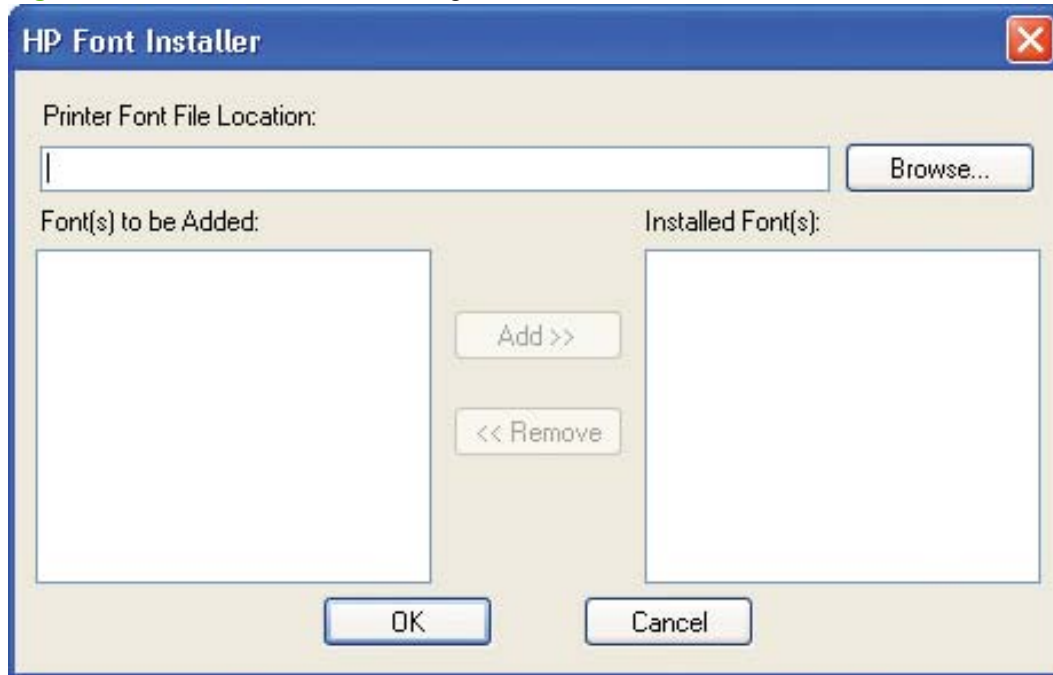


External Fonts

Use the **External Fonts** option to install and remove external fonts for the product. External fonts can be soft fonts or DIMM fonts.

Click the **External Fonts** option to make the **Properties** button available. Click **Properties** to open the **HP Font Installer** dialog box, which is shown in the following figure.

Figure 4-25 HP Font Installer dialog box



Installing external fonts

Follow these steps to install external fonts.

1. In Windows Vista, click the **Start** button, click **Control Panel**, click **Hardware and Sound**, and then click **Printers**.

In Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Server 2008, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.

In Windows 2000, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.
2. Right-click the name of the product.
3. Click **Properties**.
4. Click the **Device Settings** tab.
5. Click the **External Fonts** option. The **Properties** button appears.
6. Click **Properties**. The **HP Font Installer** dialog box appears.
7. Type the name and path of the font metric file in the **Printer Font File Location** text box, or click **Browse** to locate the file on the computer. The font file names appear in the **Font(s) to be Added** window.
8. Select the fonts that you want to add, and then click **Add**. The fonts are installed and the file names appear in the **Installed Font(s)** window.
9. Click **OK** to close the **HP Font Installer** dialog box.

Removing external fonts

1. In Windows Vista, click the **Start** button, click **Control Panel**, click **Hardware and Sound**, and then click **Printers**.

In Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Server 2008, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.

In Windows 2000, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.
2. Right-click the name of the product.
3. Click **Properties**.
4. Click the **Device Settings** tab.
5. Click the **External Fonts** option. The **Properties** button appears.
6. Click **Properties**. The **HP Font Installer** dialog box appears. The external fonts that are installed appear in the **Installed Fonts** window.
7. Select the fonts that you want to remove, and then click **Remove**. The fonts are removed.
8. Click **OK** to close the **HP Font Installer** dialog box.

Installable Options

Items under **Installable Options** are automatically populated and their defaults set when the driver is installed.

The HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product has printing options that you can install and configure in this section. The following controls are available:

- [Automatic Configuration](#)
- [Tray 3](#)
- [Duplex Unit \(for 2-Sided Printing\)](#)
- [Allow Manual Duplexing](#)
- [Printer Hard Disk](#)
- [Job Storage](#)
- [Job Separator](#)
- [Mopier Mode](#)

Automatic Configuration

Use the **Device Settings** tab to tell the driver about the hardware configuration of the product. If bidirectional communication is enabled in a supported environment, update this tab by selecting the **Update Now** setting in the **Automatic Configuration** setting. The default setting is **Off**. After an automatic configuration, the setting returns to **Off** after the changes are made.

If your environment does not support bidirectional communication, the **Update Now** setting is unavailable, so you must manually configure the options on this tab.


If you have more than one driver installed for the product (for example, the default HP PCL 6 Print Driver and the HP PCL 5 Universal Print Driver), the Update Now feature works automatically only on the driver on which it is activated. The other driver will not be updated, and might show the default setting for the specific product model.

Tray 3

This control specifies whether you have Tray 3, an additional 500-sheet tray, installed on the product. Tray 3 comes standard on the HP Color LaserJet CP3525x product model, and is optional on the other HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series models.

Duplex Unit (for 2-Sided Printing)

The duplexing unit comes installed on the HP Color LaserJet CP3525dn and the HP Color LaserJet CP3525x product models.

 **NOTE:** The HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product supports smart duplexing. The product uses the smart duplexing feature to detect information on both sides of the print job pages and only runs the pages through the duplexing unit if printable information appears on the second side of the page.

Allow Manual Duplexing

Select **Allow Manual Duplexing** to print on both sides of any supported size and most types of paper (except transparencies, envelopes, and labels). To use this feature, you must reinsert the paper stack into the input tray to print the second side. The product pauses while you make this adjustment.

This setting is enabled by default.

Printer Hard Disk

When this option is installed, the **Job Storage** option and the **Mopier Mode** are enabled in the print driver. Use the **Job Storage** option to store print jobs and then print them later from the control panel. The multiple-original print (mopy) function is an HP-designed feature that produces multiple, collated copies from a single print job.

Job Storage

When **Job Storage** is enabled, the product can store print jobs so that you can gain access to those print jobs later at the control panel.

Job Separator

Use this control to specify whether a print job identifier page should be printed between print jobs.

Mopier Mode

The multiple-original print (mopy) function is an HP-designed feature that produces multiple, collated copies from a single print job. Multiple-original printing (mopying) increases performance and reduces network traffic by transmitting the job to the product once, and then storing it in memory or on the hard disk. The remainder of the copies are printed at the fastest speed. All documents that are printed in mopier mode can be created, controlled, managed, and finished from the computer, which eliminates the extra step of using a photocopier.

The HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series supports the transmit-once mopying feature when the **Mopier Mode** setting on the **Device Settings** tab is **Enabled**.

When you use the HP PCL 6 Print Driver, copying is performed in one of two ways: either through the software or through the product hardware. When mopier mode is enabled, copying takes place through the product hardware. One copy of a multiple-page print job is transmitted once through the network to the product, together with a printer job language (PJM) command directing the product to make the specified number of copies.

When you disable mopier mode, you are not necessarily disabling multiple collated copies, which the driver can still perform through the software rather than the product hardware (the copying path that is disabled when you change the **Mopier Mode** setting to **Disabled**). However, a multiple-copy print job that is sent when the mopier is disabled loses the advantage of transmitting the print job once, because the job is sent through the network for each collated copy.

Mopier mode and collation

Copying and collating print jobs are independent but closely related functions. Copying, the ability to send original print jobs to the product, is performed by the print driver. Collating can be controlled by either the print driver or the document software program. The copying mode is selected by default in the driver, and can be disabled by changing the **Mopier Mode** setting on the **Device Settings** tab to **Disabled**.

Control collation through the print driver by selecting or clearing the **Collated** check box on the **Advanced** tab. Click **Copy Count** under the **Paper Output** setting. You can clear the check box, which is available only when the **Copy Count** option is set to more than 1 copy, to allow the software program to control collation.

To receive uncollated multiple copies of a print job, you must clear the **Collated** check box *and* make sure that the software program collation feature is not selected.

The following table shows the relation between mopier mode settings and collation settings in the software program and the driver. The first three columns show the settings; the last column, "Expected result", shows how a 3-page print job would appear.

Table 4-4 Driver mopier mode and collation settings

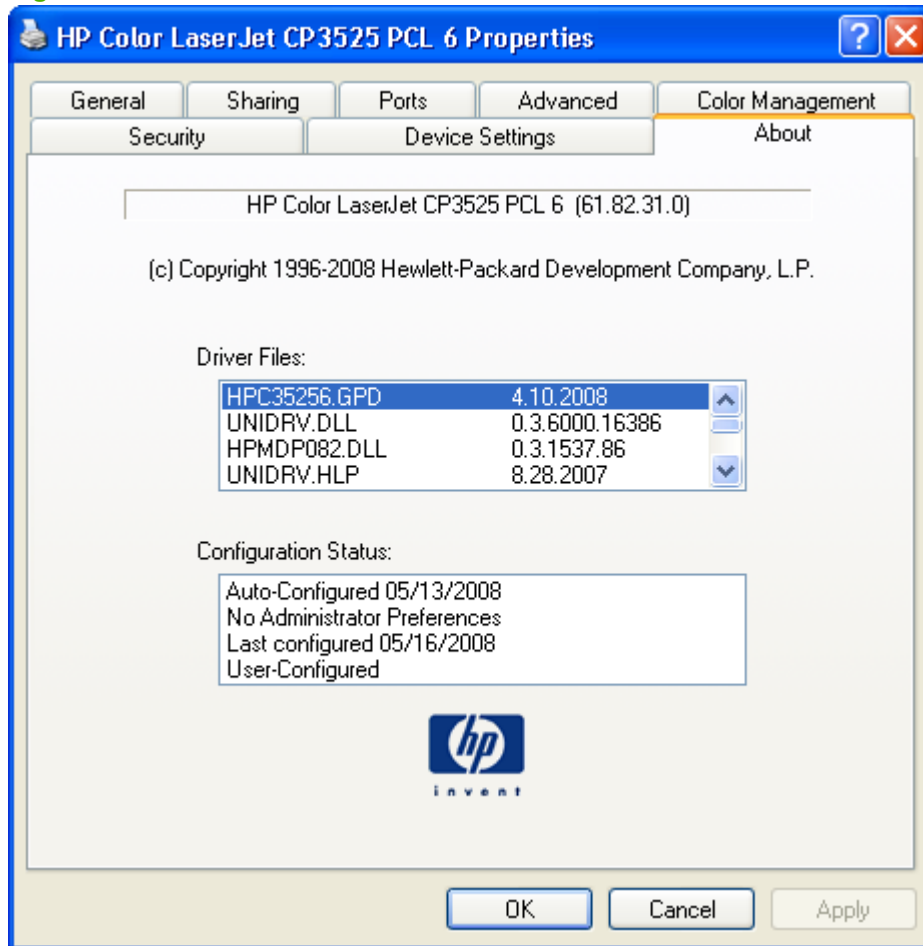
| Mopier mode | Application collation | Driver collation | Expected result |
|-------------|-----------------------|------------------|---------------------|
| Disabled | Not selected | Not selected | 3 copies uncollated |
| Disabled | Not selected | Selected | 3 copies uncollated |
| Disabled | Selected | Not selected | 3 copies collated |
| Disabled | Selected | Selected | 3 copies collated |
| Enabled | Not selected | Not selected | 3 copies uncollated |
| Enabled | Not selected | Selected | 3 copies uncollated |
| Enabled | Selected | Not selected | 3 copies collated |
| Enabled | Selected | Selected | 3 copies collated |

About tab features

 **NOTE:** The **About** tab is located on the **Properties** tab set. For information about how to access these tabs, see [Properties driver tabs on page 119](#).

The **About** tab provides detailed information about driver component versions. It contains an overall build version number (in parentheses after the model name) together with specific information about each of the components. The information varies according to the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series model number, driver, date, and versions. The **About** tab is shown in the following figure.

Figure 4-26 About tab




The **About** tab lists driver installation file names and their version numbers. The **About** tab also indicates whether the driver was autoconfigured, whether administrator preferences were set, the date the driver was last configured, and whether the configuration is autoconfigured or user-configured.

The **About** button is also available on most driver screens. The **About** button provides a driver version number and creation date.

5 HP Universal Print Drivers for Windows — PS and PCL 5

Introduction

 **NOTE:** For more information about installation and usage of the HP Universal Print Drivers, go to the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/upd

This chapter describes the features of the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series PostScript (PS) Emulation and PCL 5 Universal Print Drivers for Windows 2000, Windows XP (32-bit and 64-bit), Windows Server 2003 (32-bit and 64-bit), Windows Server 2008 (32-bit and 64-bit), and Windows Vista (32-bit and 64-bit).

You can control print jobs from several places:

- the product control panel
- the software program print dialog box
- the driver user interface

Generally, for features that are duplicated in more than one location (for instance, you can select the paper input tray from any of them), settings that are established in the software program take precedence over print-driver settings. Print-driver settings, in turn, override product control-panel settings.

When you install the printing-system software in Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008 (32-bit and 64-bit), and Windows Vista, the HP PCL 6 Print Driver is installed by default. The HP PS Universal Print Driver can be installed by performing an Advanced Installation, and the HP PCL 5 Universal Print Driver is available for download at the following web site:

www.hp.com/go/cljcp3525_software

The following sections describe the options that are available on each tab of the HP PS Universal Print Driver and the PCL 5 Universal Print Driver and describes any differences between them. Unless otherwise noted, features described here apply to both drivers.

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Access to print drivers](#)
- [Help system](#)
- [Advanced tab features](#)
- [Printing Shortcuts tab features](#)

- [Paper/Quality tab features](#)
- [Effects tab features](#)
- [Finishing tab features](#)
- [Job Storage tab features](#)
- [Color tab features](#)
- [Services tab features](#)
- [Device Settings tab features](#)
- [About tab features](#)

Access to print drivers

Depending on the operating system on which you are installing the print drivers, you can gain access to the print drivers and different print-driver interfaces in several ways.

To gain access to the print-driver settings from within most software programs, follow these steps:

1. Click **File**.
2. Click **Print**.
3. Click **Properties**.

The appearance and names of the driver tabs can vary, depending on the operating system. These driver settings apply only while that software program is open.

You can control the drivers directly from the Printers folder. Here you have access to two sets of driver tabs: the **Printing Preferences** tabs and the **Properties** tabs. The settings that you make on the **Printing Preferences** driver tabs control the driver default settings for each user's profile. Installable options can be configured in **Properties** driver tabs.

Printing Preferences driver tabs

The **Printing Preferences** driver tabs change the default settings that are used across all software programs. To gain access to these tabs, follow these steps:

1. In Windows Vista, click the **Start** button, click **Control Panel**, click **Hardware and Sound**, and then click **Printers**.

In Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Server 2008, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.

In Windows 2000, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

2. Right-click the product name.
3. Click **Printing Preferences**.

The following **Printing Preferences** print-driver tabs are available:

- **Advanced**
- **Printing Shortcuts**
- **Paper/Quality**
- **Effects**
- **Finishing**
- **Job Storage**
- **Color**
- **Services**

Properties driver tabs

This set of tabs controls the driver behavior and driver connections. To gain access to the **Properties** tabs, follow these steps:

1. In Windows Vista, click the **Start** button, click **Control Panel**, click **Hardware and Sound**, and then click **Printers**.

In Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Server 2008, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.

In Windows 2000, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

2. Right-click the product name.
3. Click **Properties**.

The following **Properties** print-driver tabs are available:

- **General**
- **Sharing**
- **Ports**
- **Advanced**
- **Color Management**
- **Security**
- **Device Settings**
- **About**

Help system

The HP PS Universal Print Driver and the PCL 5 Universal Print Driver include a full-featured Help system to provide assistance with printing and configuration options.


What's this? Help

Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Vista support **What's this?** Help. You can gain access to **What's this?** Help messages in any of the following ways:

- Right-click a feature or control. A pop-up Help window appears.
- Click the ? button in the upper-right corner of the frame, next to the X, to change the cursor to an arrow with a question mark. When you use this special cursor to select a control, the pop-up Help window for that feature appears.
- Click a feature or control, and then press the F1 key. The Help window for the currently selected control appears.

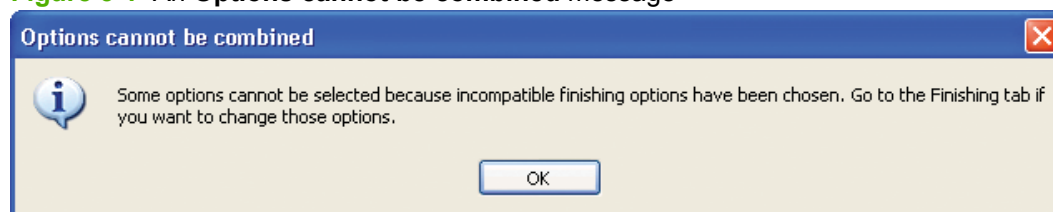
Options Cannot be Combined messages

Options Cannot be Combined (constraint) messages are unsolicited messages that appear in response to specific print-driver selections. These messages alert you to selections that are illogical or impossible given the product capabilities or the current settings of other controls.

 **NOTE:** Constraint messages are limited, and the underlying software architecture might accept some settings that are illogical or impossible for the product to perform. Sending a job with incompatible settings can lead to unexpected results. If print jobs do not print as expected, check the product documentation for the product capabilities.

In Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Vista operating environments, some technically invalid print-driver configurations result in warning messages. Duplexing, for example, is not possible when the Transparency paper type is selected. The following figure shows an **Options cannot be combined** message.

Figure 5-1 An **Options cannot be combined** message



Click **OK**, then go to the **Finishing** tab to resolve the conflicting settings.

Advanced tab features

NOTE: The **Advanced** tab is located on the **Printing Preferences** tab set. For information about how to access these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 118](#),

Use the **Advanced** tab to change the layout of printed pages. Use this tab to configure special controls that are not commonly used, as well as to control features such as paper size and copies in the driver (although most current software programs support these features in the **Print** dialog box or through the page settings in the software program). The following figure shows the **Advanced** tab.

Figure 5-2 The default appearance of the **Advanced** tab – PS Universal Print Driver

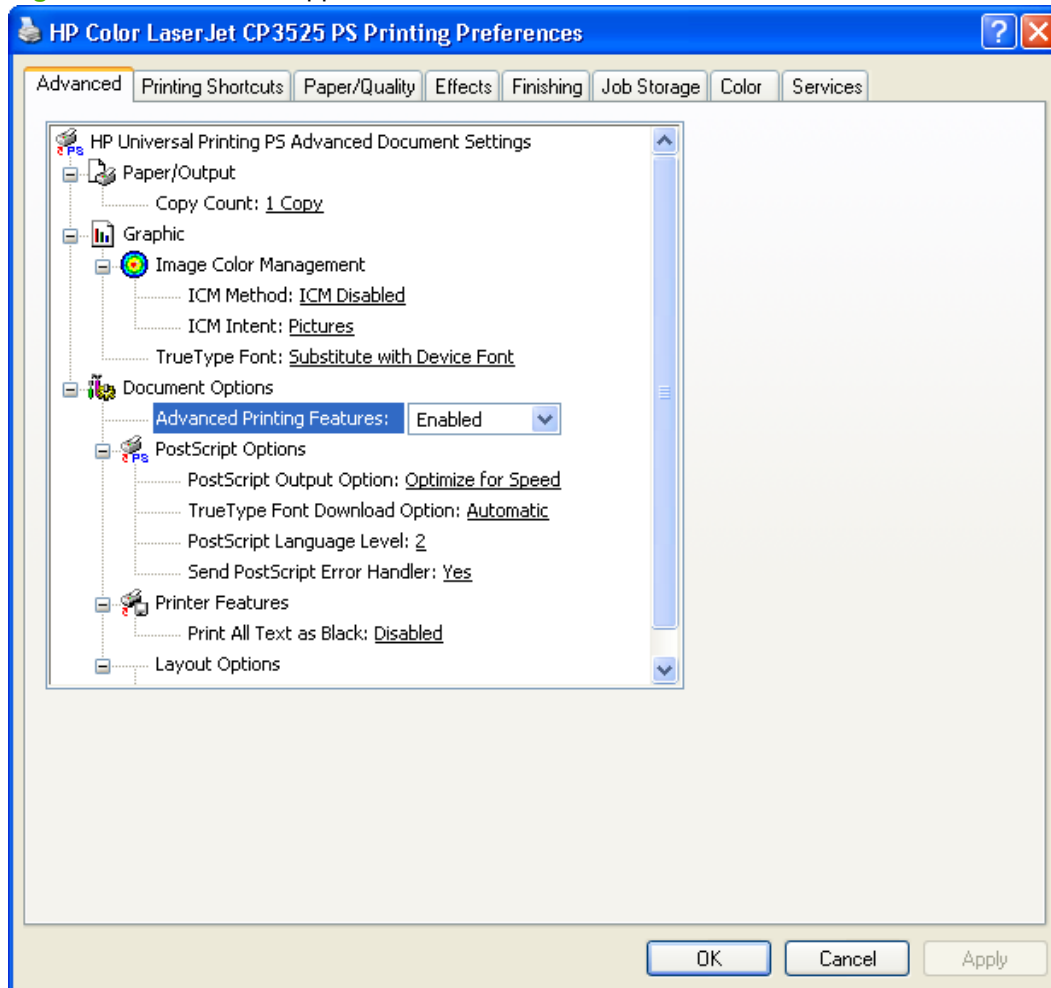
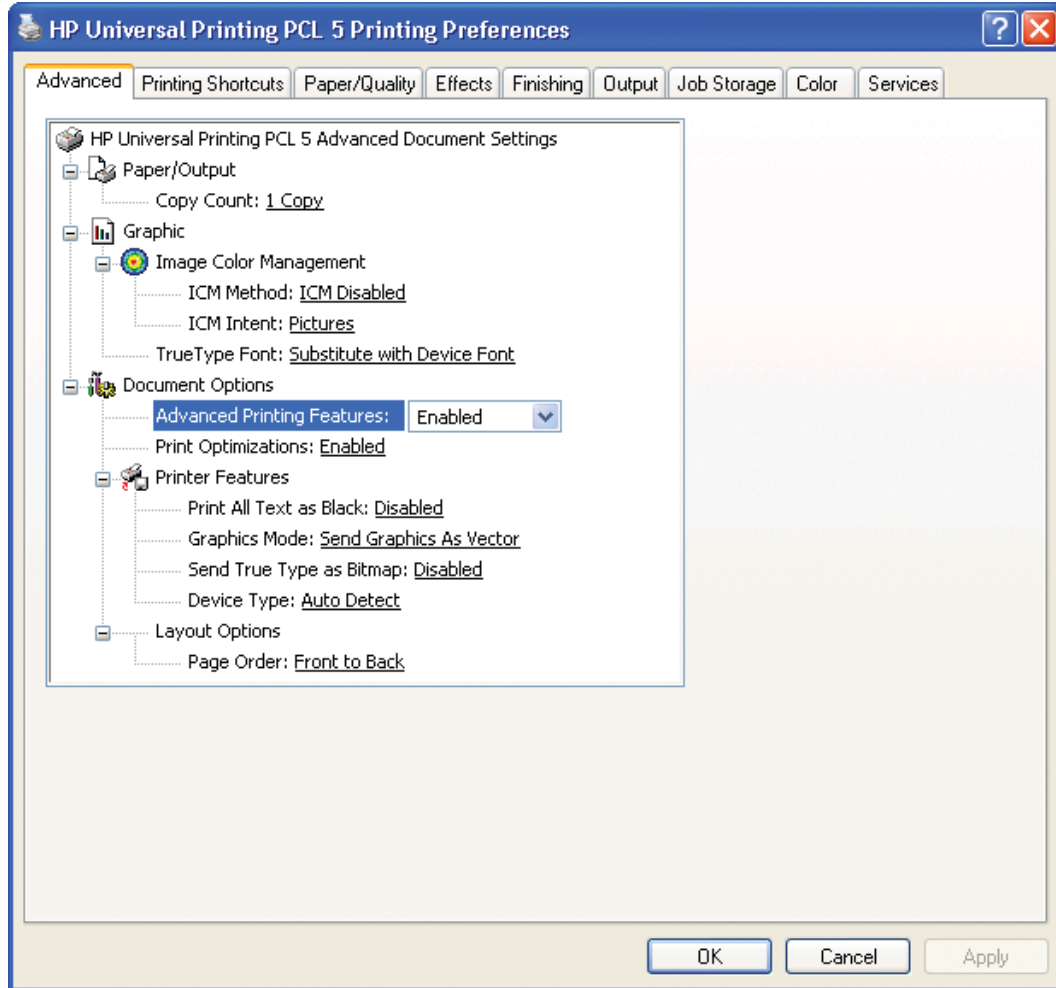


Figure 5-3 The default appearance of the **Advanced** tab – PCL 5 Universal Print Driver



The **Advanced** tab contains the following controls:

- [Paper/Output](#)
- [Graphic](#)
- [Document Options](#)

Paper/Output

The **Paper/Output** setting contains the **Copy Count** setting.

Copy Count

Copy Count specifies the number of copies to print. This driver setting is useful for software programs that do not provide a copy count. If a copy count is available in the software program, set the copy count in the software program.

The number of copies that you request appears in the **Copy Count** option. You can select the number by typing in the text box or by using the up and down arrows to the right of the text box. Valid entries are numbers from 1 to 9999. The copies value will not advance from the maximum number (9999) to 1 when the up arrow is used, or change from 1 to the maximum number (9999) when the down arrow is used. When you click another group box or leave the **Advanced** tab, invalid entries into the text box

(such as non-numerical input, numbers less than 1, or numbers greater than the maximum allowed) are changed to the last valid value that appeared in the text box. The default number of copies is 1.

Because you can set the number of copies that you want from some software programs, conflicts between the software program you are using and the driver can arise. In most cases, the software program and the driver communicate, so that the number of copies set in one location (such as the program) will appear in the other (such as the driver). For some programs, this communication does not take place, and the copies values are treated independently. For these programs, setting 10 copies in the program and then setting 10 copies in the driver will result in 100 copies (10 x 10) being printed. It is recommended that you set the number of copies in the program, whenever possible.

Graphic

The **Graphic** setting contains the following controls:

- **Image Color Management** settings
- **True Type Font** settings

Image Color Management

This control lists the available Image Color Management (ICM) options used for printing color graphics. ICM, a set of calculations for color matching, makes it possible for programs to adjust colors before printing so that the color of images on the screen more closely match the color of those images when they are printed.



NOTE: The ICM control is typically set to **ICM Disabled**.

True Type Font

Use **Substitute with Device Font** (the default setting) to print documents that contain TrueType fonts by using equivalent printer fonts. This permits faster printing; however, you might lose special characters that the equivalent printer font does not support. Select **Download as Softfont** to download TrueType fonts for printing instead of using printer fonts.

Document Options

The **Document Options** setting contains the following controls:


- [Advanced Printing Features](#)
- [Print Optimizations – PCL 5 Universal Print Driver only](#)
- [PostScript Output Options – PS Universal Print Driver only](#)
- [Printer Features](#)
- [Layout Options](#)

Advanced Printing Features

When the **Advanced Printing Features** setting is **Enabled**, metafile spooling is turned on and **Finishing** tab options such as **Page Order**, **Booklet Layout**, and **Pages per Sheet** are available, depending on your product. For normal printing, leave the **Advanced Printing Features** setting at the default (**Enabled**). If compatibility problems occur, you can disable the feature. However, some advanced printing features might still be available in the print driver, even though they have been


disabled. If you select an advanced printing feature in the print driver that has been disabled on the **Advanced** tab, the feature is automatically re-enabled.

Print Optimizations – PCL 5 Universal Print Driver only

 **NOTE:** The **Print Optimizations** setting is available only in the PCL 5 Universal Print Driver. It is not available in the PS Universal Print Driver.

The default setting for **Print Optimizations** is **Enabled**. When this feature is enabled and your document contains overlapping text and graphics, the text that is placed on top of a graphic might not print correctly. If the printed output is not correct, you can disable this feature. When this feature is disabled, print optimization-features, such as substituting device fonts for TrueType fonts and scanning for horizontal and vertical rules, are turned off.

PostScript Output Options – PS Universal Print Driver only

 **NOTE:** **PostScript Output Options** are available only in the PS Universal Print Driver. They are not available in the HP PCL 5 Universal Print Driver.

Select one of the following settings in the **PostScript Output Options** drop-down menu:

- **Optimize for Speed.** This is the default setting.
- **Optimize for Portability.** Use this setting to create a file that conforms to the Adobe Document Structuring Conventions (ADSC). Each page of the document is a self-contained object. This option is useful if you want to create a postscript file and print it on a different product.
- **Encapsulated PostScript (EPS).** Use this setting to include the file as an image in another document that is to be printed from another program.
- **Archive format.** Use this option to create a postscript file that you can use later.

Select one of the following settings in the **TrueType Font Download** drop-down menu:

- **Automatic.** This is the default setting. The HP PS Universal Print Driver determines which format is best.
- **Outline.** Select this option if you want to download the TrueType font as a scalable outline font.
- **Bitmap.** Select this option to download the TrueType font as a bitmap font.
- **Native TrueType** If the product is a TrueType rasterizer printer; select this option to download the TrueType font as an outline font.

Select one of the following settings in the **PostScript Language Level** drop-down menu:

- **3**
- **2**
- **1**

The default setting is **2**. It is usually better to select the highest number available, because it provides more features. In some instances, lower numbers might be necessary. For example, if you are printing a file to disk and that file is to be printed by someone with a level-1 product, select **1**.

Select one of the following settings in the **Send PostScript Error Handler** drop-down menu:

- **Yes.** This is the default setting. When an error occurs in the print job, an error page is sent to the product.
- **No.** Select this setting if you do not want an error page to be printed when an error occurs.


Printer Features

The **Printer Features** setting contains the following controls:

- **Print All Text as Black**

The feature is **Disabled** by default. When **Enabled** is selected, the driver prints all text as black regardless of the original document text color. Color text is printed as black, except for white text, which remains white. (White text is a reliable method of printing reverse typeface against a dark background.) This setting does not affect graphic images on the page, nor does it affect any text that is part of a graphic.


- **Graphics Mode – PCL 5 Universal Print Driver only**

 **NOTE:** The **Graphics Mode** settings are available only in the PCL 5 Universal Print Driver. They are not available in the PS Universal Print Driver.

Use the **Graphics Mode** feature to select the graphics-compression method:


- **Send Graphics as Vector.** Sends graphics to the product as a combination of HP-GL/2 and raster images. This setting may produce higher quality graphics output.
- **Send Graphics as Raster.** Sends all graphics to the product as images composed of individual dots. If your file is not printing correctly, try printing it in this mode.

- **Send TrueType as Bitmap – PCL 5 Universal Print Driver only**

 **NOTE:** The **Send TrueType as Bitmap** settings are available only in the PCL 5 Universal Print Driver. They are not available in the PS Universal Print Driver.

Send TrueType as Bitmap provides an alternative for software programs that have trouble using TrueType fonts for special graphic aspects such as shading, rotation, or slanting. The setting is **Disabled** (off) by default. The TrueType fonts are converted to bitmap soft fonts before downloading. The **Enabled** setting causes the driver to send TrueType fonts to the product as outlines, which retains the standard format (outline) of the fonts.

- **Device Type – PCL 5 Universal Print Driver only**

 **NOTE:** The **Device Type** settings are available only in the PCL 5 Universal Print Driver. They are not available in the PS Universal Print Driver.

The **Device Type** setting lists product-specific printing options. The available options for the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product are **Auto Detect**, **Color**, and **Monochrome**.

Layout Options

The **Layout Options** setting contains the **Page Order** setting.

Page Order specifies the order in which the pages of your document are printed. **Front to Back** prints the document so that page 1 prints first. **Back to Front** prints the document so that page 1 prints last.



NOTE: The page-ordering operation works on whole sheets of paper rather than on individual logical pages. Accordingly, if you set **Pages per Sheet** (on the **Finishing** tab) to be greater than one, the ordering of logical pages on a physical sheet of paper does not change.

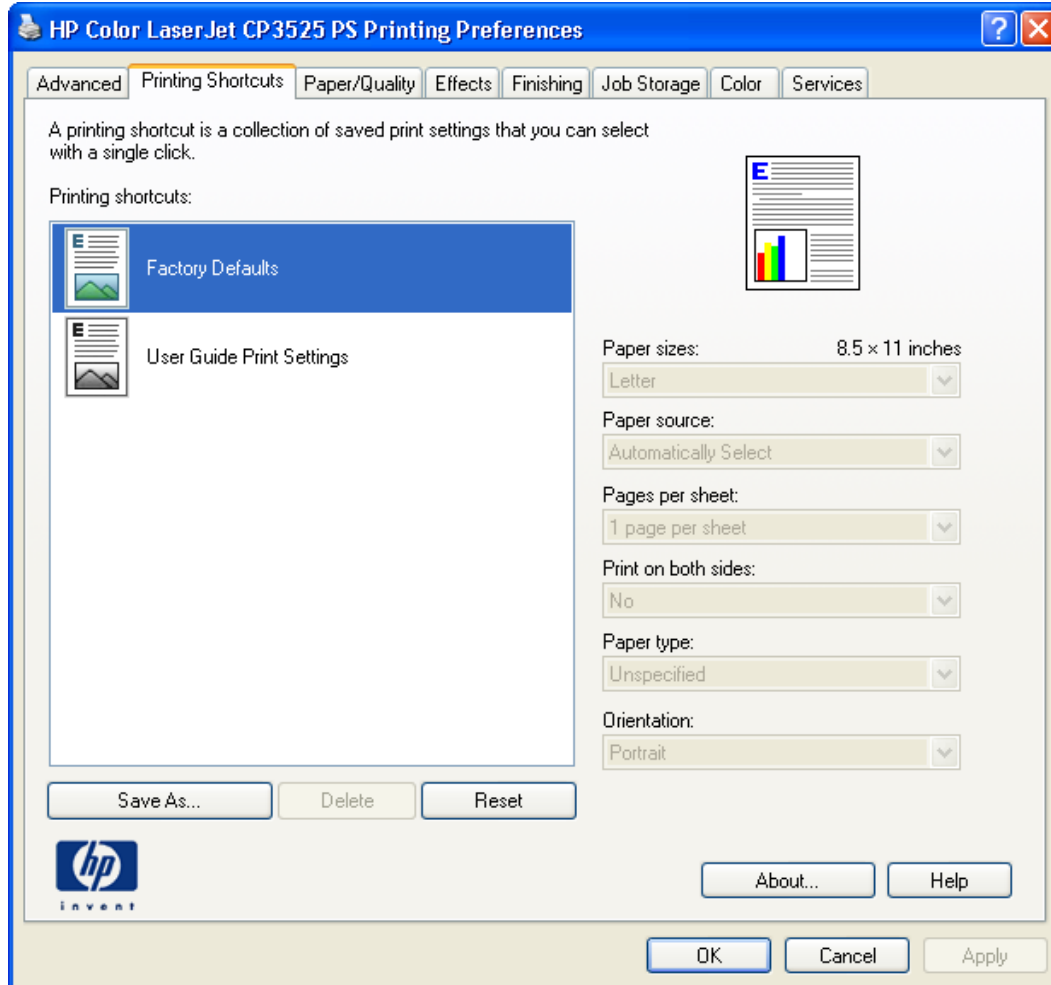
Printing Shortcuts tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Printing Shortcuts** tab is located on the **Printing Preferences** tab set. For information about how to access these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 118](#).

Use the **Printing Shortcuts** tab to store specific combinations of driver settings for easy use.

The following figure shows the **Printing Shortcuts** tab.

Figure 5-4 Printing Shortcuts tab



The **Printing Shortcuts** tab is a new tab that appears on the HP PS Universal Print Driver and the PCL 5 Universal Print Driver beginning with the HP Color LaserJet CM4730 MFP. In previous drivers, the Print Task Quick Sets appeared in most of the driver tabs, and was used to capture commonly used driver settings. Like Quick Sets, the **Printing Shortcuts** tab saves commonly used driver settings under a shortcut name.

The **Printing Shortcuts** tab contains the following control sets:

- [Factory Defaults](#)
- [User Guide Print Settings](#)
- [Document preview image](#)

Factory Defaults

When **Factory Defaults** is selected, the customizable options are grayed out, locking in those default options.

The **Factory Defaults** are as follows:

- **Paper sizes:** Letter
- **Paper source:** Automatically select
- **Pages per sheet:** 1 page per sheet
- **Print on both sides:** No
- **Paper type:** Unspecified
- **Orientation:** Portrait

User Guide Print Settings

The **User Guide Print Settings** are as follows:

- **Paper sizes:** Legal
- **Paper Source:** Automatically Select
- **Pages per sheet:** 1 page per sheet
- **Print on both sides:** No
- **Paper type:** Plain
- **Orientation:** Portrait

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up.

Move the cursor over the document preview image to change the cursor from an arrow to a gloved hand. Toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

Figure 5-5 Document preview image

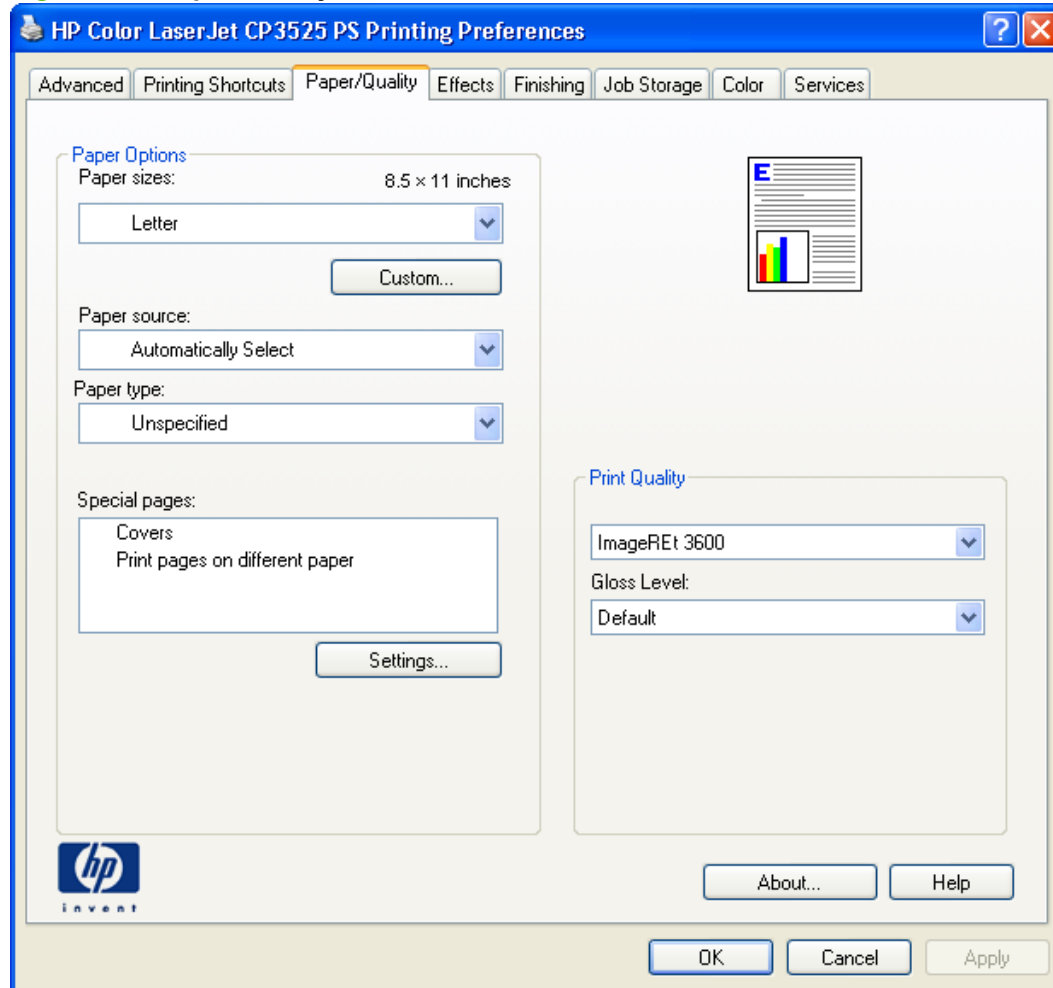


Paper/Quality tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Paper/Quality** tab is located on the **Printing Preferences** tab set. For information about how to access these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 118](#).

Use the **Paper/Quality** tab to specify the size, type, and source of the paper. You can also use this tab to specify different paper selections for the front cover, first page, other pages, last page, and back cover of the document. The following figure shows the **Paper/Quality** tab.

Figure 5-6 Paper/Quality tab



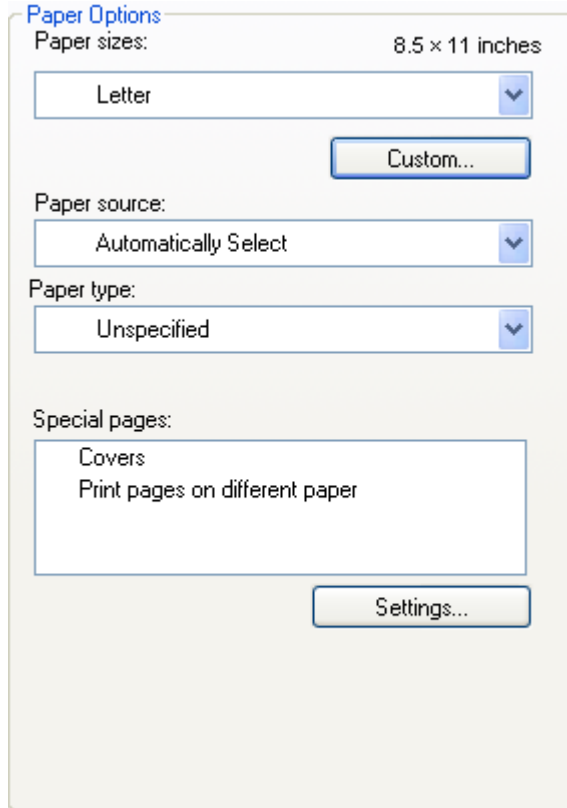
The **Paper/Quality** tab contains the following control sets:

- [Paper Options](#)
- [Document preview image](#)
- [Print Quality](#)

Paper Options

The settings specified in the **Paper Options** group box on the **Paper/Quality** tab apply to all of the pages of the document. The following figure shows the **Paper Options** group box and the selections that are available by default.

Figure 5-7 Paper Options group box



The settings in the **Paper Options** group box are described in the following order:

- [Paper sizes](#)
- [Custom Paper Size](#)
- [Paper source](#)
- [Paper type](#)
- [Special pages](#)

Paper sizes

The **Paper sizes** setting is a drop-down menu that lists all of the supported paper sizes.

When you move the mouse over the dimensions label, the mouse cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. Click the dimensions label to toggle between English and metric units.

Because paper-size settings in most software programs override driver settings, it is generally best to use the driver to set paper size only when you are printing from software programs that do not include a paper-size setting, such as NotePad, or when you are producing a book or a booklet that does not require different paper sizes.



NOTE: Certain software programs can override the size command and specify different paper sizes within a single document.

When you change the print-driver setting to a paper size that is not currently loaded in the product, a control-panel message appears that prompts you to load the paper size or select another tray.

For information about paper sizes, see [Media attributes on page 295](#).

When the **Settings** under the **Special Pages** section have been changed, the **Paper sizes**, **Paper source**, and **Paper type** menus change also, offering a variety of options. For more information, see [Special pages on page 140](#).

Custom Paper Size

The **Custom Paper Size** dialog box appears when you click **Custom...** on the **Paper/Quality** tab. The **Custom Paper Size** dialog box contains the following options.

Name

Use the **Name** text box to type a new name for a custom paper size.

The name that appears in the **Name** text box depends on the following conditions:

- If a saved custom paper size has been selected from the drop-down menu on the **Paper/Quality** tab, then the **Name** text box shows the name of the selected custom paper size.
- If a standard paper size has been selected on the **Paper/Quality** tab, then the **Name** text box shows the default name of **Custom**.
- If a new name has been typed into the **Name** text box for the purpose of saving a new size or renaming an existing size, then that new name will remain in the text box until the new size is saved or the dialog box is closed.

If you type a new name into the **Name** text box, but then do not click **Save**, you can change the width and height values without losing the name. However, if you close the dialog box without clicking **Save**, any unsaved name or size values are lost without warning.

Paper size

The width and height values can be changed by typing numeric strings into the text boxes in the **Paper Size** group box.

Any entry that is greater than the maximum limits of the width and height control is rounded down to the maximum valid entry, while any entry that is smaller than the minimum limits of the width and height control is rounded up to the minimum valid entry.

If units are in millimeters, the custom paper-size range minimum is the limit rounded up to the nearest whole millimeter. The custom paper-size range maximum is the limit rounded down to the nearest whole millimeter. Any non-numerical entry reverts to the last valid entry. Width and height entries are validated when the focus has changed.

The resolution of each control is 1 millimeter or 1/10 of an inch, depending on the current measurement units.

Units

To change measurement units, click one of the options in the **Units** group box (either **Inches** or **Millimeters**).

Custom width and height control limits

The minimum paper size for the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product is 98.40 x 148.00 mm (3.87 x 5.83 in) and the maximum is 215.90 x 355.60 mm (8.50 x 14.00 inches). The following table summarizes paper size limits for each paper-handling device.

Table 5-1 HP PS Universal Print Driver and HP PCL 5 Universal Print Driver custom paper sizes

| Tray | Dimensions | Minimum | Maximum |
|---------------------------------|------------|------------------|-------------------|
| Tray 1 (100-sheet multipurpose) | Width | 98.4 mm (3.9 in) | 216 mm (8.5 in) |
| | Length | 148 mm (5.83 in) | 356 mm (14.0 in) |
| Tray 2 (250-sheet) | Width | 148 mm (5.83 in) | 216 mm (8.5 in) |
| | Length | 210 mm (8.27 in) | 297 mm (11.69 in) |
| Trays 3 (500-sheet) | Width | 148 mm (5.83 in) | 216 mm (8.5 in) |
| | Length | 210 mm (8.27 in) | 356 mm (14.0 in) |

Paper source

The **Paper source** setting specifies the source tray to use for printing a document. The list of source trays depends on the product accessories that are installed. Any optional source trays that are installed through the **Device Settings** tab also appear here.

The **Paper source** drop-down menu can contain the following options, depending on what has been installed on the product:

- **Automatically select**
- **Printer Auto Select**
- **Manual Feed in Tray 1**
- **Tray 1** (100-sheet multipurpose tray)
- **Tray 2** (500-sheet tray)
- **Tray 3** (500-sheet paper and heavy media tray, HP Color LaserJet CP3525x only; optional on all other HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series models)

The default setting is **Automatically Select**. When this setting is selected, the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series uses the source tray that supports the paper size that you have selected. If you select a source tray other than **Automatically select**, make sure that the correct paper size is loaded in the source tray. For information about paper sources, see the [Media attributes on page 295](#).

Paper type

The **Paper type** drop-down menu shows **Unspecified**, **HP Matte 90g**, **HP Matte 160g**, and **More**. Clicking **More** opens the **Type Is** dialog box. Click **+** next to **Type Is** to view all of the paper types that the product supports and that are listed in the following categories:

- **Everyday <96g**
 - **Unspecified**
 - **Plain**

- **HP Matte 90g**
- **Light 60-74g**
- **Bond**
- **Recycled**
- **Presentation 96-130g**
 - **HP Matte 105g**
 - **HP Matte 120g**
 - **HP Soft Gloss 120g**
 - **HP Glossy 130g**
 - **Mid-Weight 96-110g**
 - **Heavy 111-130g**
 - **Mid-Weight Glossy 96-110g**
 - **Heavy Glossy 111-130g**
- **Brochure 131-175g**
 - **HP Matte 160g**
 - **HP Glossy 160g**
 - **Extra Heavy 131-175g**
 - **Extra Heavy Glossy 131-175g**
- **Photo/Cover 176-220g**
 - **HP Matte 200g**
 - **HP Glossy 220g**
 - **Cardstock 176-220g**
 - **Card Glossy 176-220g**
- **Other**
 - **Transparency**
 - **Labels**
 - **Letterhead**
 - **Envelope**
 - **Preprinted**
 - **Prepunched**

- **Color**
- **Tough Paper**

When you use the default setting, **Unspecified**, the product uses the default paper type, which is usually **Plain**.

No mechanism exists for manually adding custom paper types through the driver. Custom types can be added only by using the bidirectional communication mechanism, so they must already exist in the product when the bidirectional query occurs. If bidirectional communication is enabled, then the information an updated list of paper types is returned. If bidirectional communication is not enabled, then the driver looks for custom paper types that have been saved from a previous bidirectional communication query, and uses those. Otherwise, no custom paper types are available through the driver.

The default setting is **Unspecified**, and the program selects the paper type. If you select a different setting, make sure that the correct paper type is loaded in the tray that you selected in the **Paper source** setting. For more information about paper types, see [Media attributes on page 295](#).

When you change the print-driver setting to a paper type that is not currently loaded in the product, a control-panel message appears that prompts you to load the paper type or select another tray.

Special pages

To specify special pages to be used, click the **Settings** button under **Special Pages**.

Covers

To use specify cover settings, click **Covers** on the **Special Pages** window.

Use the **Covers** options to include a blank or preprinted cover on a document, or to include a front/back cover from a source tray that is different from the one used for the remainder of the document.

The following are the **Covers** options:

- **Add a blank or preprinted cover:** Select which cover is customized: **Front**, **Back**, or **Both**.
- **Paper source:** The **Paper source** setting specifies the source tray to use for adding a front and/or back cover to the document. The list of source trays depends on the accessories that are installed. Any optional trays that are installed through the **Device Settings** tab also appear here.
- **Paper type:** The **Paper type** setting specifies the paper size to use for front and/or back covers. Changes made to the **Paper type** setting here override any previous **Paper type** settings using the same paper source.



NOTE: The **Back Cover** options are not available when the **Booklet Printing Layout** setting is enabled on the **Finishing** tab. The back cover setting is unavailable, because this page would be printed in the middle of a booklet.

NOTE: The same size of paper will be used for the entire print job.

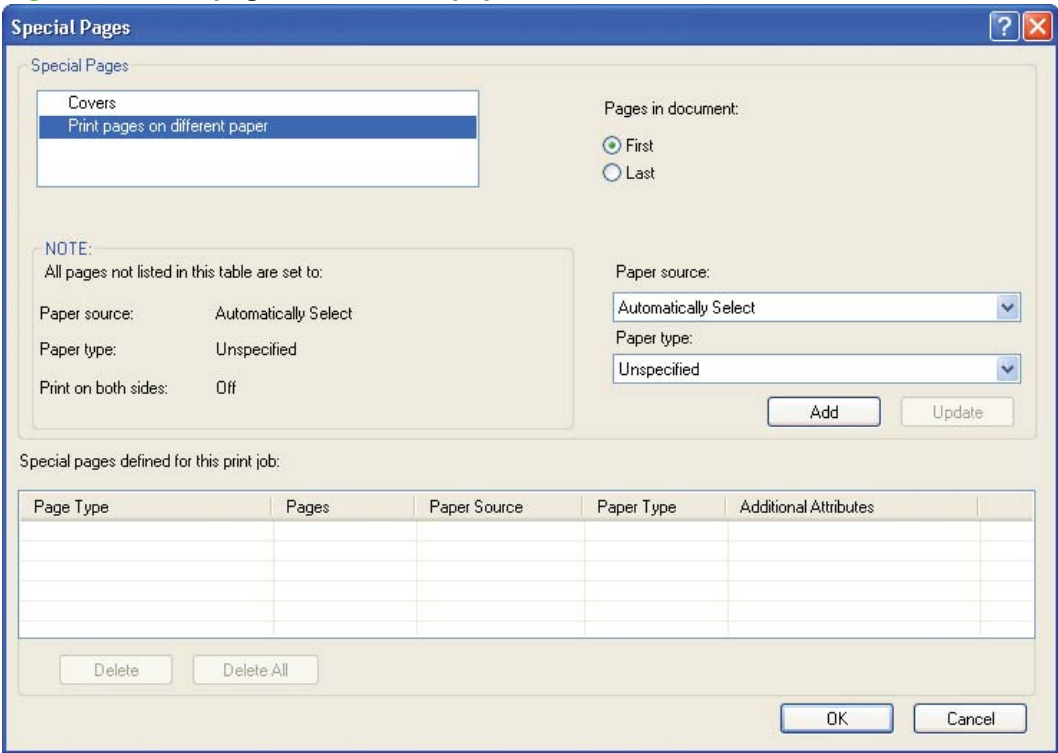
When you change the type and source of the paper and covers, the settings remain configured until you close the software program.

Print pages on different paper

Use the **Print pages on different paper** options to select an alternative paper type or source for the first or last page of a document.

The following figure shows the **Print pages on different paper** settings and options.

Figure 5-8 Print pages on different paper — First, or Last



The following are the **Print pages on different paper** options:

- **Pages in document.** Select which pages are customized: the **First** page, or the **Last** page.
- **Paper source:** The **Paper source** setting specifies the source tray to use for printing a document. The list of source trays depends on the accessories that are installed. Any optional trays that are installed through the **Device Settings** tab also appear here.
- **Paper type:** The **Paper type** drop-down menu shows all of the paper types that the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series supports.

 **NOTE:** The same type of paper is used for the entire print job.

When you change the type and source of the paper and covers, the settings remain configured until you close the software program.

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of the following **Printing Preferences** driver tabs:

- **Printing Shortcuts**
- **Paper/Quality**
- **Effects**

- **Finishing**
- **Color**

Switching between tabs does not change the location or appearance of the document preview image. When you move the mouse over the document preview image, the mouse cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. You can toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

Print Quality

The **Print Quality** group box contains the following controls:

- [Print Quality](#)
- [Gloss Level](#)

Print Quality

Use this control to select a print quality. ImageREt settings precisely control colors by combining up to fourcolors and varying the amount of toner in a given area to create smooth colors, sharp images, and crisp text.

The **Print Quality** drop-down menu contains the following resolution options.

- **ImageREt 3600**. This setting is selected by default.
- **1200 x 600**. This setting may improve the rendering of fine lines and text.

Gloss Level

The HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series is capable of printing exceptionally high gloss levels on a wide range of paper types. However, on some paper types, the gloss level might noticeably decrease from page to page for a particular print job.

The following adjustments can be set by the user in order to maintain exceptionally high gloss level on all printed pages.

Gloss Level driver settings

For users who normally print general office documents where high gloss levels are not critical but need high gloss for particular print jobs. Users can select the appropriate gloss option for their document through the driver

On the **Paper/Quality** tab, the following **Gloss Level** settings are available:

- **Default**. Uses printer settings for gloss.
- **Best**. High gloss on all pages.
- **Standard**. Uses the standard gloss setting. This setting provides the fastest print performance, but also produces some gloss variation over time.

Select **Best** for glossy print jobs such as photos or brochures if the gloss finish decreases after the first page is printed. The **Best** setting reduces printing performance on the print job for which it was selected, but it does not impact product performance for other users.

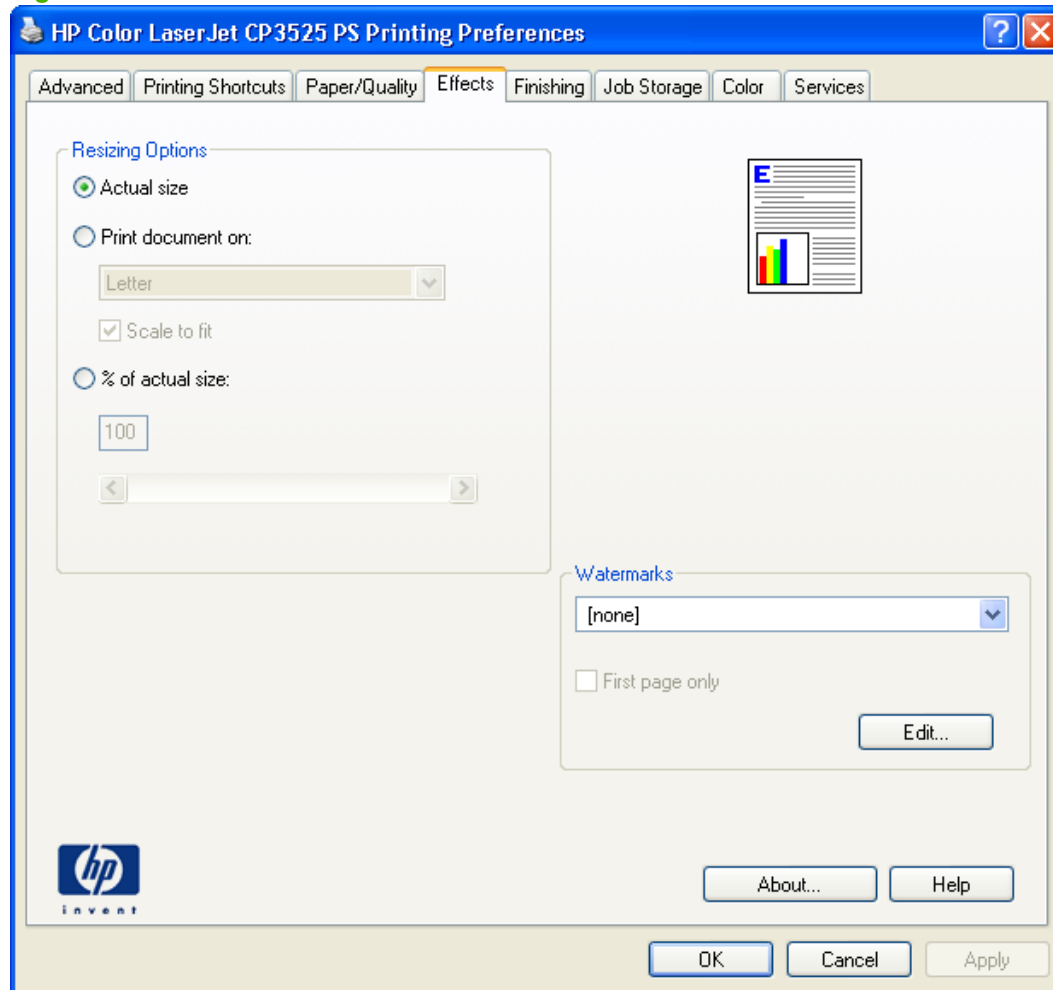
See the *HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series User Guide* for control panel options and further information about maintaining high gloss levels.

Effects tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Effects** tab is located on the **Printing Preferences** tab set. For information about how to access these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 118](#).

Use the **Effects** tab to create unique paper effects such as scaling and watermarks. The following figure shows the **Effects** tab.

Figure 5-9 Effects tab



The **Effects** tab contains the following controls:

- [Resizing Options](#)
- [Document preview image](#)
- [Watermarks](#)

Resizing Options

The **Resizing Options** group box consists of the following controls:

- **Actual Size** (default)
- **Print Document On** setting

- **Scale to Fit** option
- **% of Actual Size** setting

Actual Size

Actual Size is the default setting. It prints the document without changing the document size.

Print Document On

Click the **Print Document On** option to format the document for one paper size and then print the document on a different paper size, with or without scaling the image to fit the new paper size.

The **Print Document On** control is disabled by either of the following conditions:

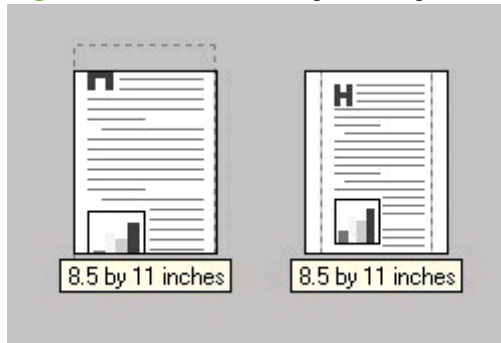
- The **% of Actual Size** value is not 100.
- The **Pages per Sheet** value (on the **Finishing** tab) is not 1.

When **Print Document On** is selected, the drop-down menu shows the paper sizes on which you can print. The list contains all of the standard paper sizes that the selected paper source supports and any custom sizes that you have created. When **Print Document On** is selected, **Scale to Fit** is automatically selected. Clear this check box if you do not want your document reduced or enlarged to fit on the selected paper.

Scale to Fit

The **Scale to Fit** check box specifies whether each formatted document page image is scaled to fit the target paper size. By default, **Scale to Fit** is selected when **Print Document On** is selected. If the setting is turned off, then the document page images will not be scaled, and are instead centered at full size on the target paper. If the document size is larger than the target paper size, then the document image is clipped. If it is smaller, then it is centered within the target paper. The following figure shows preview images for a document formatted for Legal-size paper with the **Print Document On** check box selected, and the target size specified as **Letter**.

Figure 5-10 Preview images – Legal on Letter; **Scale to Fit** off (left) and on (right)



When the size for which the document is formatted (that is, the logical size) differs from the target size, the preview image uses a dashed gray line to show the boundaries of the logical page in relation to the target paper size.

% of Actual Size

The **% of Actual Size** option provides a slider bar to use for scaling the percentage setting. The default setting in the text box is 100% of actual size. Actual size is defined as the paper size that is selected within the driver or what the driver receives from the software program (if the software program does

not negotiate the paper size with the driver). The driver scales the page by the appropriate factor and sends it to the product.

The limits of the range are from 25% to 400%, and any values outside the range are adjusted to those limits as soon as the focus is removed from the control (that is, when the **Tab** key is pressed or another control is selected).

Any change to the scale also changes the page preview, which increases or decreases from the upper-left corner of the preview.

The slider bar controls the scale directly. The value in the text box changes as the slider-bar indicator is dragged, and the document preview image is updated to the new image scale. Each click on the arrows increases or decreases the scale by 1%. Each click on the slider bar affects the scale by 10%.

You cannot achieve an exact value by dragging the slider-bar indicator. Instead, either use the slider-bar indicator to approximate the value that you want and then use the arrows to refine the value, or type the value into the text box.

The following settings disable **% of Actual Size**:

- **Print Document On** (on the **Effects** tab) is selected
- **Pages per Sheet** (on the **Finishing** tab) is not 1

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of the following Printing Preferences driver tabs:

- **Printing Shortcuts**
- **Paper/Quality**
- **Effects**
- **Finishing**
- **Color**

Switching between tabs does not change the location or appearance of the document preview image. When you move the mouse over the document preview image, the mouse cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. You can toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

Watermarks

Use the **Watermarks** feature to select a watermark, create your own custom watermarks (text only), or edit an existing watermark. The following watermarks are preset in the driver:

- **(none)**
- **Confidential**
- **Draft**
- **SAMPLE**

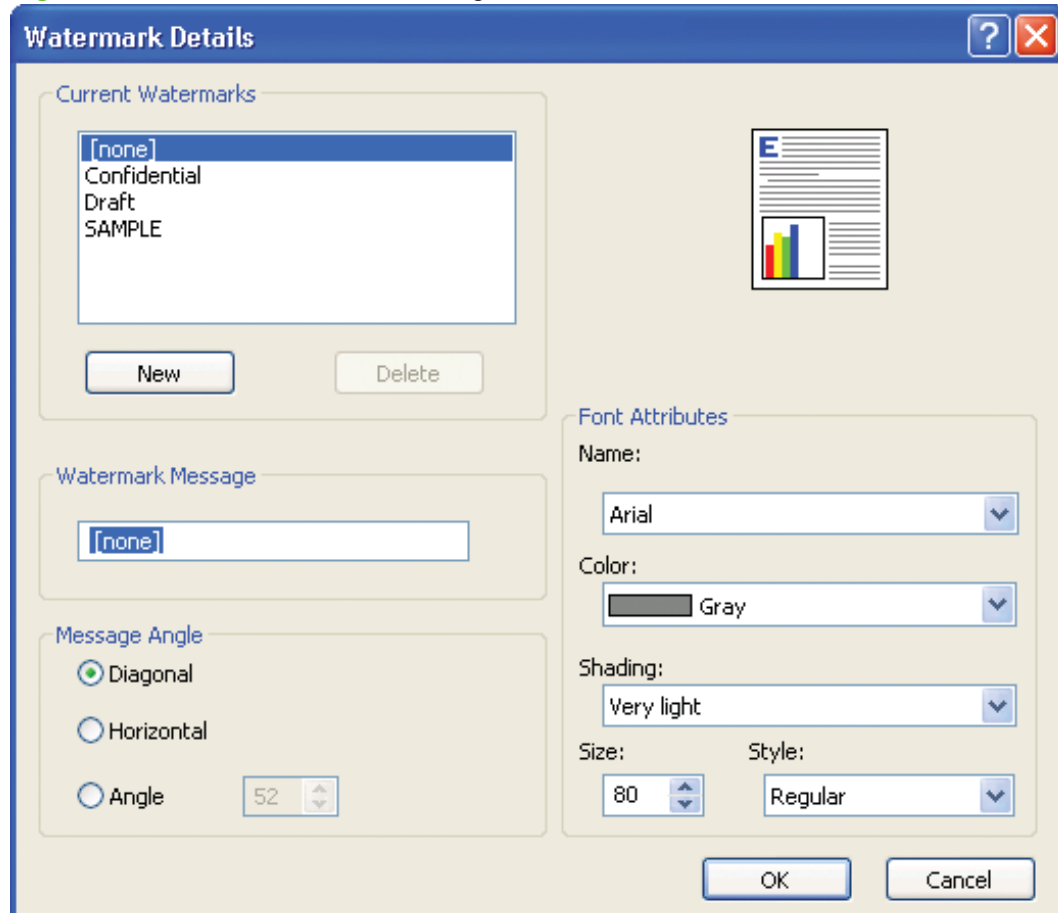
The drop-down menu shows alphabetically sorted watermarks that are currently available on the system, plus the string "(none)," which indicates that no watermark is selected. This is the default setting. Any watermark that is selected from this list appears in the preview image.

When the **First Page Only** check box is selected, the watermark is printed only on the first page of the document. The **First Page Only** check box is disabled when the current watermark selection is "(none)."

Watermarks are applied to logical pages. For example, when **Pages per Sheet** is set to **4** and **First Page Only** is turned off, four watermarks appear on the physical page (one on each logical page).

Click **Edit**, and the **Watermark Details** dialog box appears.

Figure 5-11 Watermark Details dialog box



The dialog box shows a preview image and provides options for creating a new watermark and controlling the message angle and font attributes.

Click **OK** to accept all of the changes that are made in the **Watermark Details** dialog box. However, clicking **Cancel** does not cancel all of the changes. If you make changes to a watermark and then select a different watermark or click **New**, all of the changes are saved, and only the current, unsaved changes can be canceled.


Current watermarks

The **Current Watermarks** group box contains a list of available watermarks, both predefined watermarks that are available in the driver and any new watermarks that you have created.

To create a new watermark, click **New**. The new watermark appears in the **Current Watermarks** list and in the **Watermark Message** text box as "**Untitled**" until you name it. The name that you type in the **Watermark Message** field appears in the **Current Watermarks** group box in the **Watermark Details** dialog box and in the **Watermarks** group box on the **Effects** tab.

To name the new watermark, type the selected watermark text in the **Watermark Message** text box.

To delete a watermark, select the watermark in the **Current Watermarks** list and click **Delete**. A warning appears asking whether you are sure you want to delete the selected item. Click **Cancel** if you want to keep the watermark. Click **OK** to delete the selected watermark.

 **NOTE:** You can have no more than 30 watermarks in the **Current Watermarks** list at one time. When you reach the limit of 30 watermarks, the **New** button is disabled.

To edit an existing watermark, select the watermark in the **Current Watermarks** list. If you change the **Watermark Message** for that watermark, you are, in effect, creating a new watermark.

Watermark Message

The **Watermark Message** is also the name that identifies the watermark in the **Current Watermarks** list, except when more than one watermark has the same message. For example, you might want several different watermarks with the message DRAFT, each with a different typeface or font size. When this occurs, the string is appended with a space, a pound sign, and a number (for example, **Draft #2**). When a number is added, the number two is used first, but if the resulting name is also in the list, then the number increases until the name is unique (**Draft #3**, **Draft #4**, and so on).

Message Angle

Use the controls in the **Message Angle** group box to print the watermark in different orientations on the page. All settings center the watermark string within the page; the selection of a particular setting affects only the angle of the string placement. The following settings are available:

- **Diagonal**. This is the default setting. Select this setting to place the text along a line that spans the lower-left to upper-right corners of the page.
- **Horizontal**. Select this setting to place the text along a line that spans the mid-left and mid-right edges of the page.
- **Custom**. Select this setting to place the text at the specified angle across the page. Use the numeric spin box to select the angle.

Font Attributes

Use the controls in the **Font Attributes** group box to change the font and the shading, size, and style of the font.

The **Font Attributes** group box contains the following controls:

- **Name**

The **Name** drop-down menu lists fonts that are currently installed on the system. The default is language-dependent.

- **Color**

The **Color** drop-down menu contains the following selections:

- **Gray**
- **Red**
- **Yellow**
- **Green**
- **Cyan**
- **Blue**
- **Magenta**
- **Shading**

The default **Shading** setting for new and preset watermarks is **Very Light**. The following range of shades is available from the **Shading** drop-down menu:

- **Lightest**
- **Very Light** (default)
- **Light**
- **Medium Light**
- **Medium**
- **Medium Dark**
- **Dark**
- **Very Dark**
- **Darkest**

These values represent the intensity of the gray that is used. Select **Light** to produce a lightly saturated gray watermark. Select **Lightest** to produce the lightest shade of watermark. Select **Darkest** to produce a black watermark.

- **Size**

Font sizes from 1 to 999 points are available from the **Size** menu. The default point size is language-dependent.

- **Style**

The following settings are available:

- **Regular**
- **Bold**
- **Italic**
- **Bold Italic**

The default **Style** setting for new and preset watermarks is **Regular**.

Default watermark settings

The following table shows **Font Attribute** settings for new and preset watermarks.

Table 5-2 Font Attribute settings for new and preset watermarks

| Setting | New watermark | Preset watermark |
|---------|---------------|--------------------|
| Name | Arial | Varies by language |
| Color | Gray | Gray |
| Shading | Very Light | Very Light |
| Size | 80 | Varies by language |
| Style | Regular | Regular |

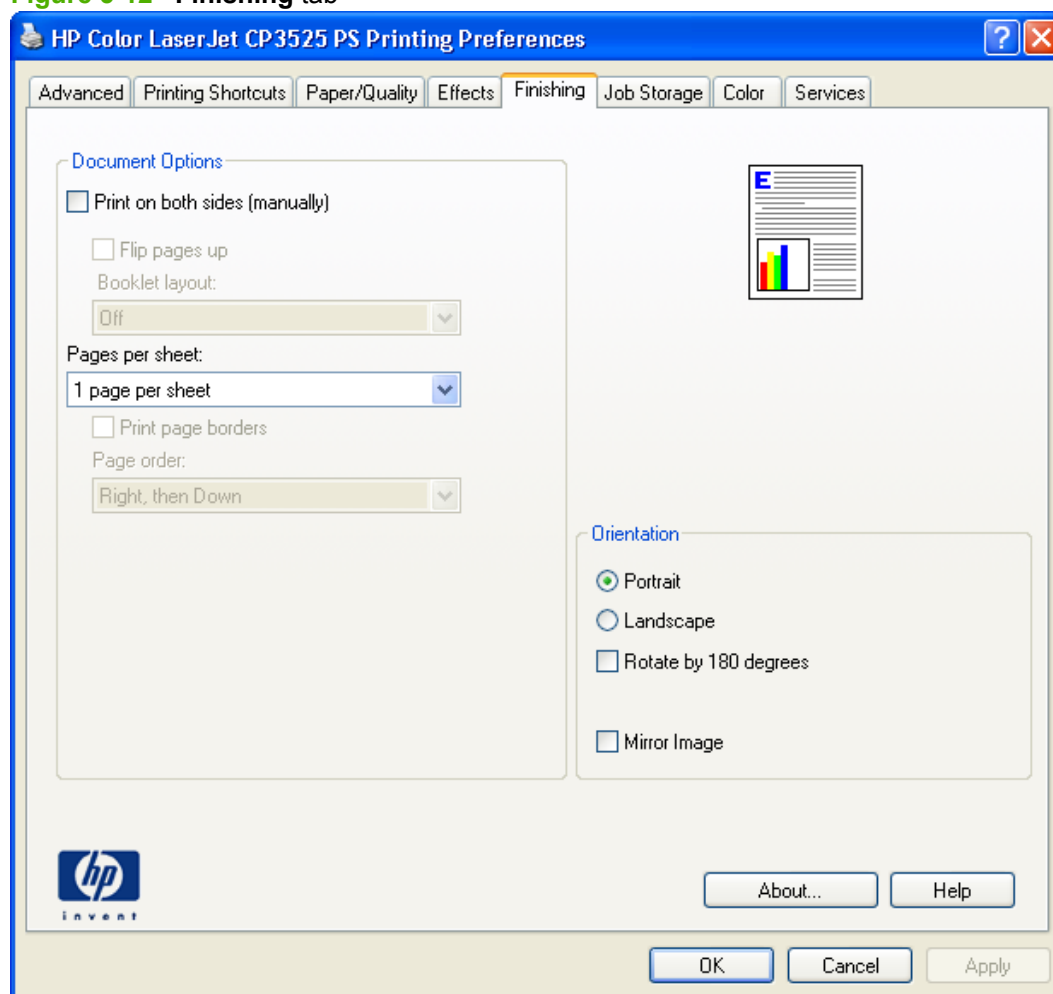
Click **OK** to accept all of the changes that have been made in the **Watermark Details** dialog box. Clicking **Cancel** does not cancel all of the changes. If you make changes to a watermark and then select a different watermark or click **New**, all of the changes are saved, and only the current, unsaved changes can be canceled.

Finishing tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Finishing** tab is located on the **Printing Preferences** tab set. For information about how to access these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 118](#).

Use the **Finishing** tab to print booklets and control the paper output. The following figure shows the **Finishing** tab.

Figure 5-12 Finishing tab



The **Finishing** tab contains the following controls:

- [Document Options](#)
- [Document preview image](#)
- [Orientation](#)


Document Options

The **Document Options** group box contains the following controls:

- [Print on Both Sides](#)
- [Flip Pages Up](#)

- [Booklet layout](#)
- [Pages per Sheet](#)
- [Print Page Borders](#)
- [Page Order](#)

Print on Both Sides

 **NOTE:** This feature is called **Print on Both Sides (Manually)** for the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 and HP Color LaserJet CP3525n models because these models do not include an automatic duplex unit. For all other product models, this feature is called **Print on Both Sides**.

The default setting for the **Print on Both Sides** option is off (not selected). **Print on Both Sides** is available when the following conditions exist:

- **Paper type** on the **Paper** tab is set to any paper type *except for* the following types:
 - **Labels**
 - **Color Laser Transparency**
- **Paper sizes** is set to any paper size *except for* the following sizes:
 - **Envelope #10**
 - **Double Postcard (JIS)**
 - **Envelope #9**
 - **Envelope Monarch**
 - **Envelope B5**
 - **Envelope C5**
 - **Envelope C6**
 - **Envelope DL**

Print on both sides automatically

The duplexing unit in the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product prints on two sides of a sheet of paper when the **Print on Both Sides** option is specified in the print job. The HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product comes with a duplexing unit installed in the following models:

- HP Color LaserJet CP3525dn
- HP Color LaserJet CP3525x

These product models support smart duplexing. The smart duplexing feature increases printing performance by preventing one-page print jobs or single-sided pages of a duplexed print job from going through the duplexing unit even when the duplexing feature has been selected in the driver.

All paper types support the smart duplexing feature, except for paper types that cannot be printed on both sides (such as labels, transparencies, and envelopes) and the following paper types:

- Prepunched
- Preprinted
- Letterhead

When the paper type is set to **Unspecified**, the smart duplexing feature is disabled.

To achieve the best print quality when printing on the second side of the page, the product needs to make adjustments to its print modes. When you select a paper type, you are, in effect, instructing the product to use a group of settings (such as fuser temperature and print speed) to print the paper with the best possible quality. This group of settings is known as print mode. A different print mode is used with each paper type. Print-mode adjustments for the second side of a duplexed page are automatic.

Print on both sides manually

- **Manually Print on 2nd Side** is *not* selected

Select the **Print on Both Sides (Manually)** check box to print on the second side of the paper for the HP Color LaserJet CP3525n product model, which does not have a duplexing unit installed. Also select Print on Both Sides (Manually) on the other HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product models for paper types that are not available when using the automatic duplexing unit, such as cardstock and thick paper.

Manually printing on the second side of a page is available when you are using the HP PCL 6 driver. If a duplexing unit is installed and manual duplexing is enabled in the driver, the product automatically prints on both sides of paper types that are supported for automatic duplexing (Letter, A4, Legal, and 8.5 x 11 only), and forces manual printing on both sides for paper types that are not supported.

Select the paper type that corresponds to the paper that you are using for the print job. The following paper types have a different print modes when you manually print on the second side:

- Plain
- Preprinted
- Letterhead
- Prepunched
- Bond
- Recycled
- Colored
- Rough



NOTE: To make the **Print on Both Sides (Manually)** check box available in the document options, select the **Allow Manual Duplexing** option on the **Device Settings** tab in the print-driver **Properties** tab set. See [Installable Options on page 179](#).

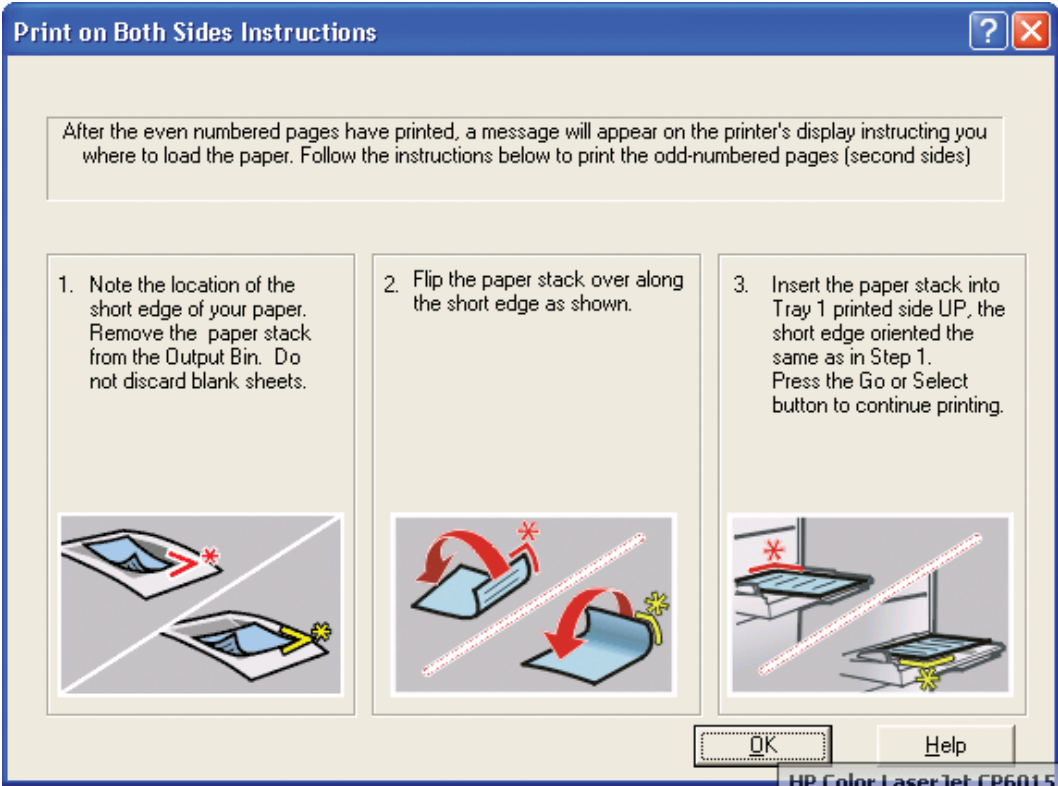
If you want to print on both sides manually while using paper that is supported for automatic duplexing, you must select and apply the **Not Installed** setting on the **Duplex Unit (for 2-Sided Printing)** option on the **Device Settings** tab.

Cardstock paper can be manually printed on the second side, but no change occurs to the print mode. Transparencies and labels should not be manually printed on the second side.

To print a multiple-page document, follow these steps:

1. Select the **Print on Both Sides (Manually)** check box.
2. Click **OK**. The even-number pages of the document print.
3. When the control panel shows the MANUALLY FEED message, insert the stack of paper (on which the even-number pages have been printed) as indicated in the following figure.

Figure 5-13 Print on Both Sides Instructions dialog box



When you have completed the steps that appear in the dialog box, the second half of the print job prints on the back side of the stack of paper. The driver does not require the program to specifically support odd- and even-page printing, because the driver coordinates this function.

Flip Pages Up

Use the **Flip Pages Up** check box to specify the duplex-binding option. By default, the **Flip Pages Up** check box is not available. It is available only when **Print on Both Sides** is selected. The following table demonstrates the results of selecting this check box, depending on the paper orientation selected on the **Finishing** tab.

Table 5-3 Page orientation

| Orientation (Finishing tab) | Flip Pages Up selected | Flip Pages Up not selected |
|-----------------------------|------------------------|----------------------------|
| Portrait | Short-edge binding | Long-edge binding |
| Landscape | Long-edge binding | Short-edge binding |

When **Print on Both Sides** is selected, the document preview image changes to show a spiral binding along either the left edge or the top edge of the page. In addition, a folded-over corner appears in the lower-right portion of the preview image, indicating that printing occurs on the back side. An arrow on the folded-over corner points in the direction that the pages would be flipped if they were bound together.

Short-side binding is for print jobs with pages that read by flipping over like the pages of a calendar. Long-side binding is for print jobs with pages that read by turning like the pages of a book.

Booklet layout

The **Booklet Layout** drop-down menu, visible when **Print on Both Sides** is selected, offers choices that are based on the current paper size. The default setting for the **Booklet Printing** drop-down menu is **Off**. The other settings have the following format, where **[paper size]** depends on the paper size that is set on the **Paper/Quality** tab:

- **Left Binding**
- **Right Binding**

When you select **Left Binding** or **Right Binding**, the document preview image changes to show the location of the binding. If the **Pages per Sheet** setting is on the default setting of 1, it automatically changes to **2 pages per sheet**. If you change the **Pages per Sheet** setting manually to 4, 6, 9, or 16 pages per sheet, the booklet setting is disabled. See [Pages per Sheet on page 157](#) for more information.

Book and Booklet Printing


The HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series supports book and booklet printing.

A book is a print job consisting of at least two pages. It can have a different paper type for the front cover, first page, other pages, last page, or back cover. Use the **Covers** and **Print pages on different paper** settings on the **Paper/Quality** tab to select different paper for the front cover, first page, other pages, and back cover. For more information, see [Paper/Quality tab features on page 134](#).

A booklet is a print job that places two pages on each side of a sheet that can then be folded into a booklet that is half the size of the paper. Use the **Booklet Layout** drop-down menu on the **Finishing** tab to control booklet settings.

Print a booklet

1. Open the driver **Printing Preferences** tab set, and then click the **Paper/Quality** tab. For information about how to access the **Printing Preferences** tab set, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 118](#).
2. Select the booklet settings in the **Paper Type** and **Paper Source** drop-down menus.
3. Click the **Effects** tab, and then select the physical paper size to be used in the booklet from the **Print document on** drop-down menu.

 **NOTE:** Typically, you select the size of each page of the booklet in your software program by clicking **File**, clicking **Page**, and then clicking **Setup**. For example, if each page of the finished book is supposed to be Letter-sized in your 2-up booklet, select **Letter** in your software program, and then select **11x17** from the **Print document on** drop-down menu (physical size of the page). If your software program does not allow you to set the paper size, use the **Paper sizes** drop-down menu on the **Paper/Quality** tab.

4. Click the **Finishing** tab, and select the following settings from the drop-down menus:
 - **Print on both sides.** Click to select the check box.
 - **Booklet layout.** Click to select **Left Binding** edge for booklets.
 - **Pages per sheet.** Click to select **2**.
 - **Orientation.** Click to select the preferred setting.
5. Click **OK** in the print driver.
6. Click **OK** in the **Print** dialog box to print.

Pages per Sheet

Use the **Pages per Sheet** option to select the number of pages that you want to print on a single sheet of paper. If you choose to print more than one page per sheet, the pages appear smaller and are arranged on the sheet in the order that they would otherwise be printed. The **Pages per Sheet** drop-down menu provides six settings:

- **1 page per sheet** (this is the default)
- **2 pages per sheet**
- **4 pages per sheet**
- **6 pages per sheet**
- **9 pages per sheet**
- **16 pages per sheet**



NOTE: When you select an option other than **2 pages per sheet**, booklet printing is unavailable.

Related controls indented beneath **Pages per Sheet** are **Print Page Borders** and **Page Order**, which become active when **Pages per Sheet** is greater than 1.

Print Page Borders

Print Page Borders sets a line around each page image on a printed sheet to help visually define the borders of each logical page.

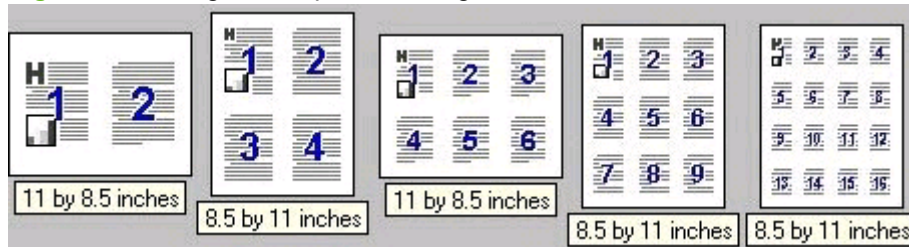
Page Order

The **Page Order** drop-down menu contains four selections:

- **Right, then Down**
- **Down, then Right**
- **Left, then Down**
- **Down, then Left**

The preview document image changes to reflect alterations in these settings, as shown by the examples in the following figure.

Figure 5-14 Page-order preview images



- 2 pages per sheet
- 4 pages per sheet
- 6 pages per sheet
- 9 pages per sheet
- 16 pages per sheet

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of the following **Printing Preferences** driver tabs:

- **Printing Shortcuts**
- **Paper/Quality**
- **Effects**
- **Finishing**
- **Color**

Switching between tabs does not change the location or appearance of the document preview image. When you move the mouse over the document preview image, the mouse cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. You can toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

Orientation

Orientation refers to the layout of the image on the page, and does not affect the way that paper feeds into the product. You can specify the orientation of the print job. The three available orientations are portrait, landscape, and rotated. The default orientation is **Portrait**.



NOTE: Nearly all software programs establish the orientation for the printed page, so the page orientation in the driver is useful only for the few software programs that do not set an orientation.

The **Orientation** group box contains the following options:

- **Portrait.** The top edge of the document is the shorter edge of the paper.
- **Landscape.** The top edge of the document is the longer edge of the paper.

- **Rotate by 180 degrees.** This creates a landscape or portrait orientation in which the image is rotated 180°. This setting is useful for printing prepunched paper.
- **Mirror image — PS Universal Print Driver only.** Click to reverse your document or image from left to right.

You can toggle orientation between portrait and landscape by clicking the document preview image. If you select the **Rotate by 180 degrees** check box, no change occurs in the document preview image.

Job Storage tab features



NOTE: The **Job Storage** tab is located on the **Printing Preferences** tab set. For information about how to access these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 118](#).

Use the job-storage feature to store print jobs in the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product memory or hard disk for printing at a later time. These job-storage features are described here.

The **Job Storage** tab appears among the driver tabs only if the job-storage feature is enabled on the **Device Settings** tab. To support job-storage features for complex jobs, or if you often print complex graphics, print postscript (.PS) documents, or use many downloaded fonts, HP recommends that you install additional memory, install a hard disk, or both. Added memory also gives you more flexibility in supporting job-storage features. A minimum total memory of 288 MB is required to use the **Proof and Hold** and **Personal Job** job-storage features. A hard disk is required to use the **Quick Copy** and **Stored Job** job-storage features.

After a hard disk is installed, the driver must be configured to reflect the changes in the product. If bidirectional communication is enabled in your environment, the Update Now feature can be used to update the drivers. For more information, see [Automatic Configuration on page 179](#).

To configure the drivers manually after installing a hard disk, follow these steps:

1. In Windows Vista, click the **Start** button, click **Control Panel**, click **Hardware and Sound**, and then click **Printers**.

In Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Server 2008, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.

In Windows 2000, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

2. Right-click the product name.
3. Click **Properties**.
4. Click the **Device Settings** tab.
5. Select **Installed** for the **Printer Hard Disk** under **Installable Options**, and then select **Installed** in the drop-down menu.
6. Click **OK** to make the printer hard disk and job-storage features available.

You can disable the job-storage feature while leaving the printer hard disk enabled. To disable the job-storage feature, follow these steps:

1. In Windows Vista, click the **Start** button, click **Control Panel**, click **Hardware and Sound**, and then click **Printers**.

In Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Server 2008, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.

In Windows 2000, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

2. Right-click the product name.
3. Click **Properties**.
4. Click the **Device Settings** tab.

5. Select **Job Storage**.
6. Select **Disabled** in the **Change 'Job Storage' Setting** dialog box that appears.

If the job-storage feature is enabled (without installing a hard disk but with at least 288 MB of total memory), two **Job Storage Mode** settings are available on the **Job Storage** tab:

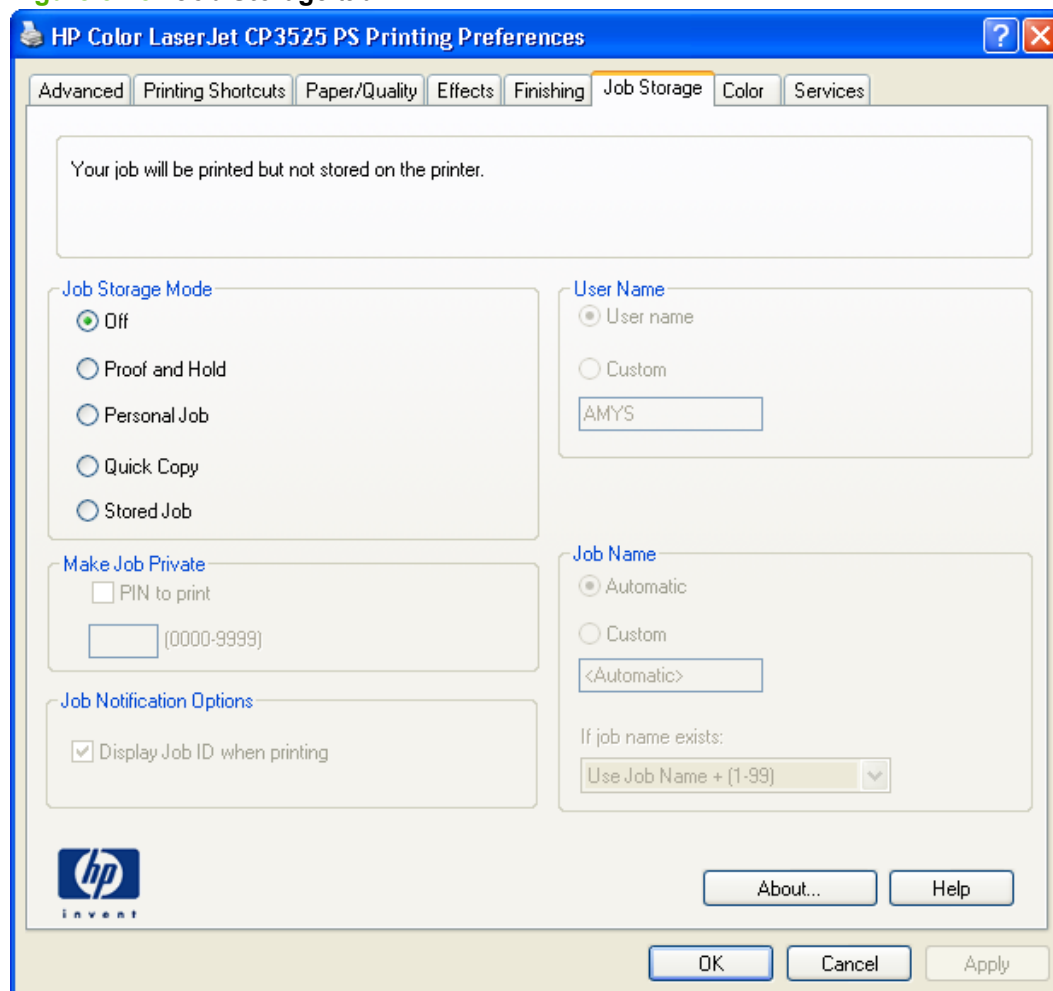
- **Proof and Hold**
- **Personal Job**

Two additional **Job Storage Mode** settings become available on the **Job Storage** tab if a hard disk is installed:

- **Quick Copy**
- **Stored Job**

The following figure shows the **Job Storage** tab.

Figure 5-15 Job Storage tab



The **Job Storage** tab contains the following controls:

 **NOTE:** Information about using the job-storage feature when printing is also described here.

- [Status group box](#)

- [Job Storage Mode](#)
- [PIN to print](#)
- [Job Notification Options](#)
- [User Name](#)
- [Job Name](#)
- [Use job-storage features when printing](#)

Status group box

The unlabeled group box on the **Job Storage** tab contains a status message about the destination of a print job. The status information changes depending on the selections that are made on the **Job Storage** tab.

Job Storage Mode

Use the **Job Storage Mode** options on the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product to store documents at the product and then control their printing at the product control panel.

The HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product offers the following **Job Storage Mode** options:

- **Off**
- **Proof and Hold**
- **Personal Job**
- **Quick Copy**
- **Stored Job**

These options and the settings that control them are described below.

Off

When selected, this option turns the job-storage feature off (it is disabled), which means that the print job will not be stored in the product.


Proof and Hold

To use the **Proof and Hold** option, the job-storage feature must be enabled.

When selected, this option stores the print job in memory and prints only the first copy of the job, allowing you to check the first copy. If the document prints correctly, you can print the remaining copies of the print job at the control panel. You can set the number of proof-and-hold print jobs that can be stored in the product at the control panel.

.

After it is released for printing, the proof-and-hold job is immediately deleted from the product. If more copies are needed, you must reprint the job from the software program. If you send a second proof-and-hold job to the product with the same user name and job name as an existing proof-and-hold job (and you have not released the original job for printing), the job overwrites the existing job. Proof-and-hold jobs are deleted if you turn off the product.

 **NOTE:** The product configuration can be set to hold a maximum of 50 quick-copy or proof-and-hold jobs. The number is set at the product control panel in the **CONFIGURATION** menu, and the default is 32. When this preset limit is reached, the new document overwrites the oldest held document. Also, a document that has the same user name and job name as one that is already stored on the printer hard disk overwrites the existing document.

Personal Job

To use the **Personal Job** option, the job-storage feature must be enabled.

When you select **Personal Job**, the print job is sent to the product, but is not printed until you request the job at the product control panel. Selecting **Personal Job** activates the **PIN** group box. If **PIN to print** is selected, the print job can be printed only after you type the correct PIN at the control panel. After the job is printed, the job is immediately deleted from the product. This feature is useful when you are printing sensitive or confidential documents that you do not want to leave in an output bin after printing.


The Private Job/PIN coupling has a PIN restriction of four ASCII numeric characters (0 through 9). If you type non-numeric characters, they are removed immediately. If you type more than four characters, the characters past the fourth are truncated. The text box temporarily accepts fewer than four digits in the string, but when the text box loses focus, the zeroes pad the left end until the PIN contains exactly four digits. The default initialized value for the PIN is 0000 for **Personal Job**.

After it is released for printing, the private job is immediately deleted from the product. If more copies are needed, you must reprint the job from the software program. If you send a second private job that has the same user name and job name as an existing private job (and you have not released the original job for printing), the job overwrites the existing job, regardless of the PIN. Private jobs are deleted if you turn off the product.

Quick Copy

To use the **Quick Copy** option, a printer hard disk must be installed, and the job-storage feature must be enabled.

When you select **Quick Copy**, the entire print job prints and a copy of the print job is stored on the product, after which you can print additional copies of the print job at the product control panel. The number of quick-copy print jobs that can be stored in the product is set by using the product control panel.

 **NOTE:** The product configuration can be set to hold a maximum of 50 quick-copy or proof-and-hold jobs. The number is set at the product control panel in the **CONFIGURATION** menu, and the default is 32. When this preset limit is reached, the new document overwrites the oldest held document. Also, a document that has the same user name and job name as one that is already stored on the printer hard disk overwrites the existing document. **Quick Copy** jobs are deleted if you turn off the product.

Stored Job

To use the **Stored Job** option, a hard disk must be installed on the product and the job-storage feature must be enabled.

Use the **Stored Job** option to send a print job directly to the printer hard disk without printing it. The print job is stored in the product as if it is an electronic file cabinet. After the print job is stored on the printer hard disk, you can print the job at the product control panel.


The job remains stored in the product until it is deleted or overwritten by a document that has the same user name and job name. Stored jobs remain on the printer hard disk when the product is turned off. Use this feature for forms and other common or shared documents.

A stored job can be managed in two ways: as either a private or a public job.

Select the **PIN to Print** check box to set the private mode. Use a private stored job to send a print job directly to the product, which can then be printed only after you type a PIN up to four digits long at the product control panel. (You can set the PIN in the **PIN** group box.)

After the job is printed, the job remains in the product and can be printed again at the product control panel.

The box labeled **PIN** is usually inactive. The **PIN to Print** option becomes available when you select **Stored Job**. If you select the **PIN to Print** box, you must type a PIN to make the stored job private.

 **NOTE:** A *private stored* job is not the same as a *personal* job. *Personal* jobs are deleted from the product after they are printed. *Private stored* jobs are retained in the product after printing, but require that a PIN be typed each time they are printed. A printer hard disk is required for *Private stored* jobs.

PIN to print

PIN to print is available when **Stored Job** is selected. Select the **PIN to Print** box, then type a 4-digit PIN number in the box provided. The stored job is sent to the product, where you must enter the 4-digit PIN on the control panel to retrieve the stored job.

The **PIN to Print** box is available when **Personal Job** is selected. Select the **PIN to Print** option, and then type a 4-digit PIN number in the text box provided. The stored job is sent to the product, where you must type the 4-digit PIN on the control panel to retrieve the stored job.

Job Notification Options

Clicking a **Job Storage Mode** selection causes the **User Name** and **Job Name** options to become available. The **Display Job ID when printing** check box is selected by default. The **Display Job ID when printing** option causes a pop-up dialog box to appear when the job-storage print job is printed. The dialog box shows the user name and job name that are associated with the stored print job, as well as the printer name, port, and location.

User Name

Use the **User Name** settings to help identify the job at the product control panel. The following are the **User Name** settings:

- **User Name.** This option associates your Windows user name with the stored print job. The Windows user name automatically appears in the text box below the **User Name** options.
- **Custom.** Use this option to type a custom name for the stored print job. When you click **Custom**, the text box below the option becomes available. The **User Name** field can contain no more than 16 characters, and is limited to A through Z and 0 through 9, because the name appears on the product control-panel display. If you try to type a lowercase character, it automatically shifts to uppercase. If you try to type a character in an ASCII code of fewer than 32 or more than 126 characters, the character is removed from the text box, along with all of the characters that follow it. If you try to type more than 16 characters, any character beyond 16 is truncated.

Job Name

Use the **Job Name** options to specify a name to identify the job at the product control panel. The following are the **Job Name** settings:

- **<Automatic>** This option, which is the default selection, automatically generates the job name that is associated with the stored print job. The file name of the print job is used if it is available to the print driver. Otherwise, the software program name or a time stamp is used for the job name.
- **Custom.** Use this to type a custom job name for the stored print job. When you click **Custom**, the text box below the option becomes available. In those languages for which **<Automatic>** cannot be translated without the use of invalid characters, the driver uses a string of three dashes. The acceptable characters for job name and user name vary for each operating system. The string must be of a length and type that can appear on the product control-panel display.

The **Job Name** text box can contain no more than 16 characters, and is limited to A through Z (uppercase or lowercase) and 0 through 9 so that the name can appear on the product control-panel display. If you try to type a character in an ASCII code of fewer than 32 or more than 126 characters, the character is removed from the text box, along with all of the characters that follow it. If you try to type more than 16 characters, any character beyond 16 is truncated.

When the dialog box is closed, or as soon as the focus is removed from the control (that is, when the **Tab** key is pressed or another control is selected), an empty string is replaced with **<Automatic>**. The acceptable characters for job name and user name vary for each operating system. The string must be of a length and type that can appear on the product control-panel display.

If Job Name Exists. When you store a print job, you can create a print-job name or the product software can assign one automatically. If a print job with the same name already exists, the new print job overwrites the existing print job. To eliminate the chances of a new print job overwriting an old print job because both have the same name, select **Use Job Name + (1-99)**. After you create the print job name, or when one is created automatically, the product software assigns a number between 1 and 999 to the end of the print job name to make the name unique. Select **Replace Existing File** if you always want the product software to overwrite an existing print job with the same print job name.

Use job-storage features when printing

To use job-storage features when printing, follow these steps:

1. Click **File** and then click **Print** from the software program. The **Print** dialog box appears.




NOTE: Clicking the print icon in the software program toolbar prints the job without using job-storage features.

2. Click **Properties**. The **Properties** dialog box appears.
3. Click the **Job Storage** tab.
4. Select the job-storage options by clicking the appropriate option button, and then complete any required fields.
5. Click **OK**.

Release a job-storage print job


After you send a print job that uses the job-storage feature, you can release the job to print from the product control panel.

1. Press the **menu** button  to open the menus.
2. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ until **RETRIEVE JOB** is highlighted on the product control panel, and then press **OK**.
3. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to your user name, and then press **OK**.
4. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to the job name, and then press **OK**.
5. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ until **PRINT** is highlighted on the product control panel, and then press **OK**.
6. Press **OK**.
7. If a PIN number is assigned to the job, press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to select the first digit of the PIN, and then press **OK**. The number in the product control-panel display changes to an asterisk. Repeat this step for each of the remaining three digits of the PIN number.

If no PIN number is assigned to the job, continue with the next step.
8. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to select the number of copies to print.
9. Press **OK** to print the job.

Deleting a job-storage print job

Sometimes it is necessary to delete a print job from the printer hard disk. You can do this from the product control panel.

1. Press the **menu** button  to open the menus.
2. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ until **RETRIEVE JOB** is highlighted on the product control panel, and then press **OK**.
3. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to your user name, and then press **OK**.
4. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to the job name, and then press **OK**.
5. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ until **DELETE** is highlighted on the product control panel, and then press **OK**.
6. Press **OK**.
7. If a PIN number is assigned to the job, press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to select the first digit of the PIN, and then press **OK**. The number in the product control-panel display changes to an asterisk. Repeat this step for each of the remaining three digits of the PIN number.

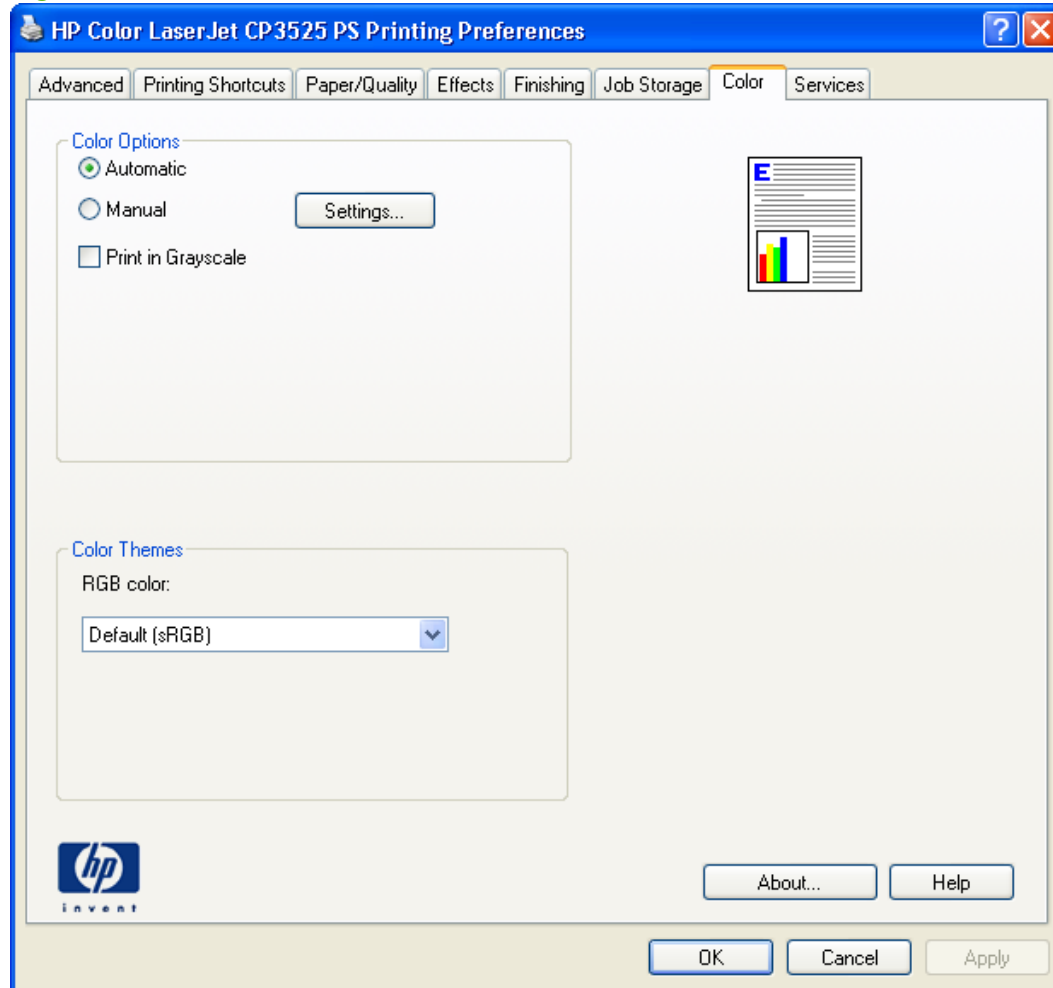
If no PIN number is assigned to the job, continue with the next step.
8. Press **OK** to delete the job.

Color tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Color** tab is located on the **Printing Preferences** tab set. For information about how to access these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 118](#).

Use the **Color** tab to specify predefined color-option settings or to fine-tune the color treatments and halftoning. Color output can also be converted to grayscale. The **Color** tab is shown in the following figure.

Figure 5-16 Color tab



The **Color** tab contains the following sets of controls:

- [Color Options](#)
- [Color Themes](#)
- [Document preview image](#)

Color Options

Use the **Color Options** group box to adjust the independent color controls. The settings affect the print job color rendering and print quality. The **Color Options** group box contains the following controls:

- **Automatic** option (default)
- **Manual** option
- **Settings** button (Click this button to open the **Color Settings** dialog box.)
- **Print in Grayscale** check box

Automatic

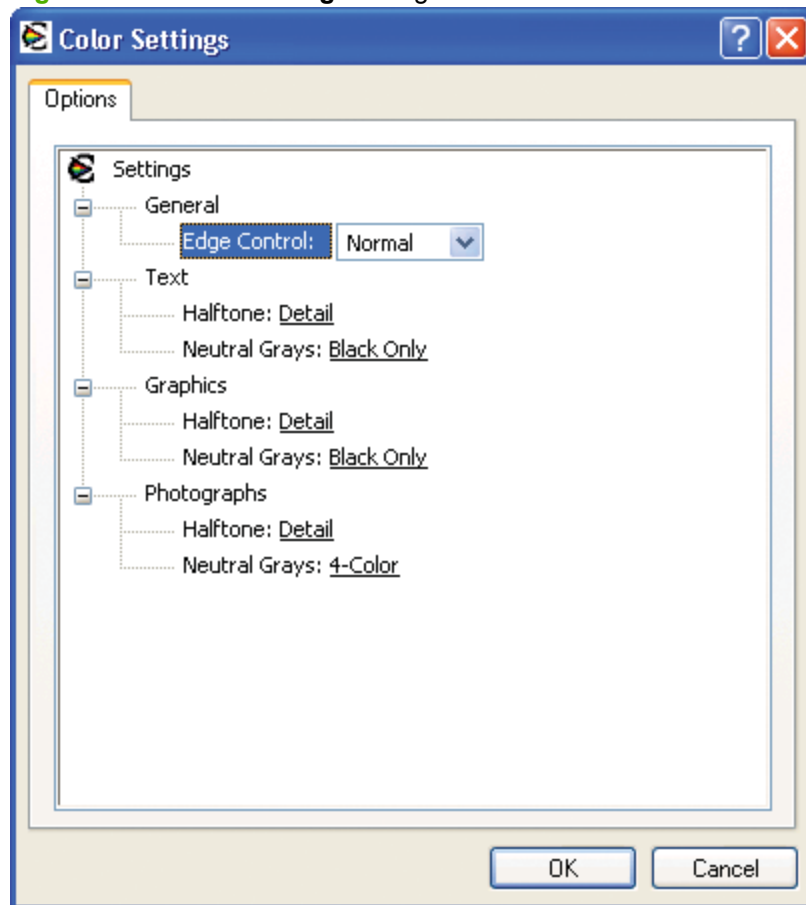
Use the **Automatic** option for color settings that automatically fine-tune the printed output. The **Automatic** color settings provide high-quality output while maintaining product performance for most color printing needs.

Manual

To change the color settings, select the **Manual** option, and then click **Settings**. The **Color Settings** dialog box appears.

To change the settings, make your selections by using the drop-down menus in the **Color Settings** dialog box, and then click **OK**. The following figure shows the **Color Settings** dialog box with "Custom" settings.

Figure 5-17 Color Settings dialog box



The **Color Settings** dialog box contains the following controls:

- **General**
 - **Edge Control**
- **Text**
 - **Neutral Grays**
 - **Halftone**
- **Graphics**
 - **Neutral Grays**
 - **Halftone**
- **Photographs**
 - **Neutral Grays**
 - **Halftone**

General

Use the **General** setting group to control **Edge Control** settings for all color printing.

Edge Control determines how edges are rendered. **Edge Control** consists of three components:

- Adaptive Halftoning, which increases edge sharpness
- Trapping, which reduces the effect of color plane misregistration by slightly overlapping the edges of adjacent objects
- Color Resolution Enhancement Technology (C-REt), which increases the apparent resolution by placing each dot for the smoothest edges

The **Edge Control** option offers four settings:

- **Off.** The **Off** setting turns Trapping, Adaptive Halftoning, and C-REt to **Off**.
- **Light.** The **Light** setting provides minimal trapping. Adaptive Halftoning is set to **On** and C-REt is set to **On**.
- **Normal.** The **Normal** setting provides the default trapping settings. Adaptive Halftoning is set to **On**, and C-REt is set to **On**.
- **Maximum.** The **Maximum** setting provides the most trapping. Adaptive Halftoning is set to **On**, and C-REt is set to **On**.

Neutral Grays

The **Neutral Grays** drop-down menu controls the selection of a device-dependent color table that is embedded in the product firmware. You can adjust the **Neutral Grays** setting independently for text, graphics, or photographs. The following options are available:

- **Black Only.** This option generates neutral colors (grays and black) by using only black toner. This option guarantees that neutral colors do not have a color cast. **Black Only** is the default setting for the **Text** and **Graphics** components.
- **4-Color.** This option generates neutral colors by combining all four colors of toner, which produces smoother gradients and transitions to non-neutral colors. It also produces the darkest possible black. **4-Color** is the default setting for **Photographs**.

Halftone

The **Halftone** setting controls the selection of a product-dependent halftone algorithm that is embedded in the product firmware. Halftoning is a method by which the product mixes the four primary colors (cyan, magenta, yellow, and black) in varying proportions to create the appearance of many colors. The **Halftone** options affect the resolution and clarity of the color on the printed page. You can select **Halftone** settings for text, graphics, and photographs independently.

The following Halftone options are available:

- **Detail.** This is the default option; it is useful for text and graphics that require sharp distinctions among lines or colors, or for images that contain a pattern or a high level of detail. Select this option for sharp edges and detail.
- **Smooth.** This option provides better results for large, solid-filled print areas. It also enhances photographs by smoothing out fine color gradations. Select this option for uniform and smooth area fills.

Color Themes

The **Color Themes** group box contains the following options:

- [RGB Color](#)

RGB Color

This option determines how colors are rendered. The following settings are available.

- [Default \(sRGB\)](#)
- [Photo \(sRGB\)](#)
- [Photo \(Adobe RGB 1998\)](#)
- [Vivid \(sRGB\)](#)
- [None](#)
- [Custom Profile](#)

Default (sRGB)

Select **Default (sRGB)** for most printing needs. This setting instructs the product to interpret RGB color as sRGB, which is the accepted standard of Microsoft and the World Wide Web Consortium (W3C). Colors are matched to optimize the RGB colors on the screen and to provide vivid images and graphics.

Photo (sRGB)

Select **Photo (sRGB)** to enhance documents in which the content is mainly bitmap images, such as .GIF or .EPS files. This setting instructs the product to use the best color matching for rendering sRGB bitmap images. This setting affects only raster data; it has no effect on text or vector-based graphics. Using glossy paper in combination with this setting provides the maximum enhancement.

Photo (Adobe RGB 1998)

Select **Photo (Adobe RGB 1998)** for documents that use the AdobeRGB color space rather than sRGB. For example, some digital cameras capture images in Adobe RGB, and documents that are produced with Adobe PhotoShop® use the Adobe RGB color space. When printing from a professional software program that uses Adobe RGB, it is important that you turn off the color management in the software program and allow the product software to manage the color space.

Vivid (sRGB)

The **Vivid (sRGB)** feature instructs the printer to increase the color saturation in the midtones. Less colorful objects are rendered more colorfully. This value is recommended for printing business graphics.

None

Select **None** to instruct the printer to print RGB data in raw device mode. To render documents properly when this option is selected, you must manage color in the program in which you are working or in the operating system.

△ **CAUTION:** Use this option only if you are familiar with the procedures for managing color in the software program or in the operating system.

Custom Profile

Select **Custom Profile** when you want to duplicate the printed output from other products or for using special effects. This setting instructs the product to use a custom profile to emulate color output from another product by modifying how color is rendered.

The default custom profile is an emulation of the color table used on the HP Color LaserJet 4650 product. The product holds only one custom profile at a time, so when you download and install another color table, it erases the default color table and installs the new one.

You can download custom profiles from the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/cljcp3525_firmware

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of the following **Printing Preferences** driver tabs:

- **Printing Shortcuts**
- **Paper/Quality**
- **Effects**
- **Finishing**
- **Color**

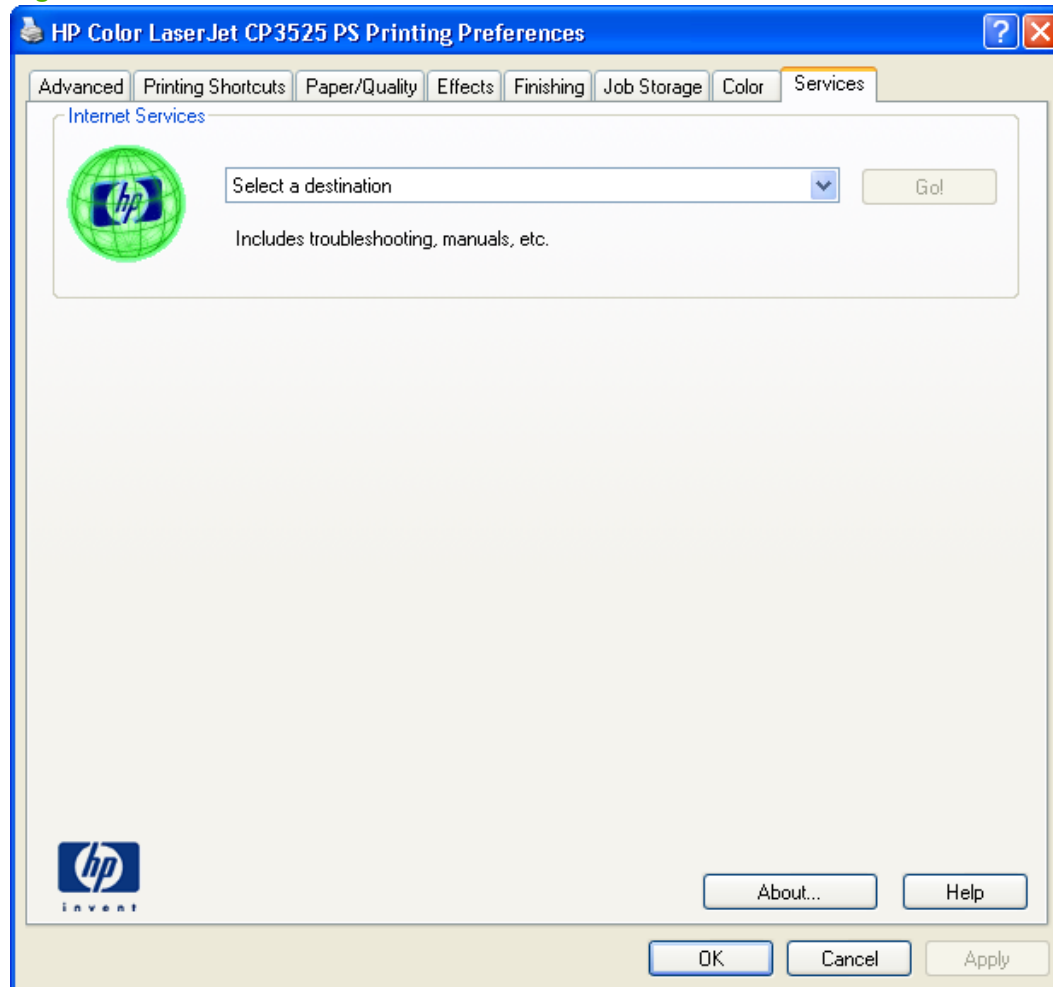
Switching between tabs does not change the location or appearance of the document preview image. When you move the mouse over the document preview image, the mouse cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. You can toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

Services tab features

 **NOTE:** The **Services** tab is located on the **Printing Preferences** tab set. For information about how to access these tabs, see [Printing Preferences driver tabs on page 118](#),

The **Services** tab is shown in the following figure.

Figure 5-18 Services tab



The **Services** tab contains the following group boxes:

- [Internet Services](#)

Internet Services

The **Internet Services** group box contains the **Select a destination** drop-down menu with the following selections:

- **Online diagnostic tools.** This is the HP Instant Support Web site, where you can find interactive tools and contacts for troubleshooting.
- **Support and troubleshooting.** This is the main Web site for HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product support.
- **Product manuals.** View or download HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product manuals.

- **Check for driver updates.** Automatically check your print drivers to see whether the correct and most up-to-date print drivers are installed.
- **Shop for supplies.** Shop online for HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product supplies.
- **Embedded Web Server.** Open your product's embedded web server.

If you have Internet access, select any of these items and click **Go!** to open the corresponding HP Web page.

Device Settings tab features

NOTE: The **Device Settings** tab is located on the **Properties** tab set00. For information about how to access these tabs, see [Properties driver tabs on page 119](#),

Available options depend on the feature. The following figure shows the tab.

Figure 5-19 Device Settings tab – PS Universal Print Driver

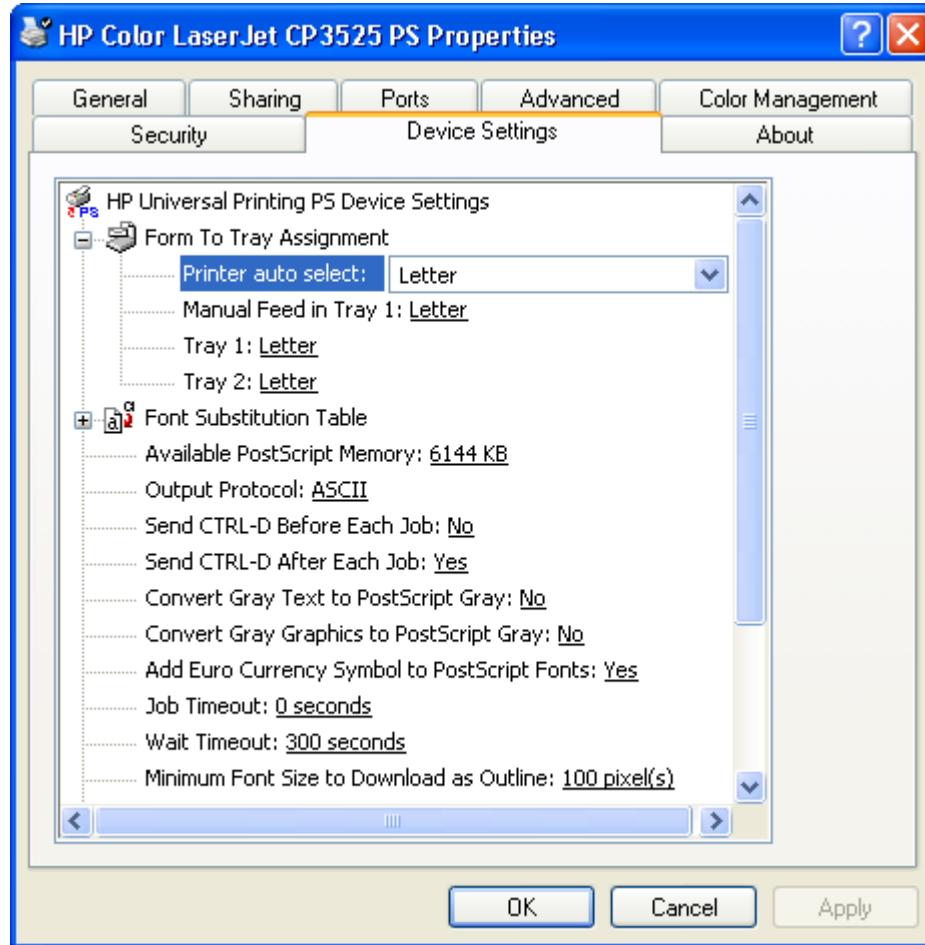
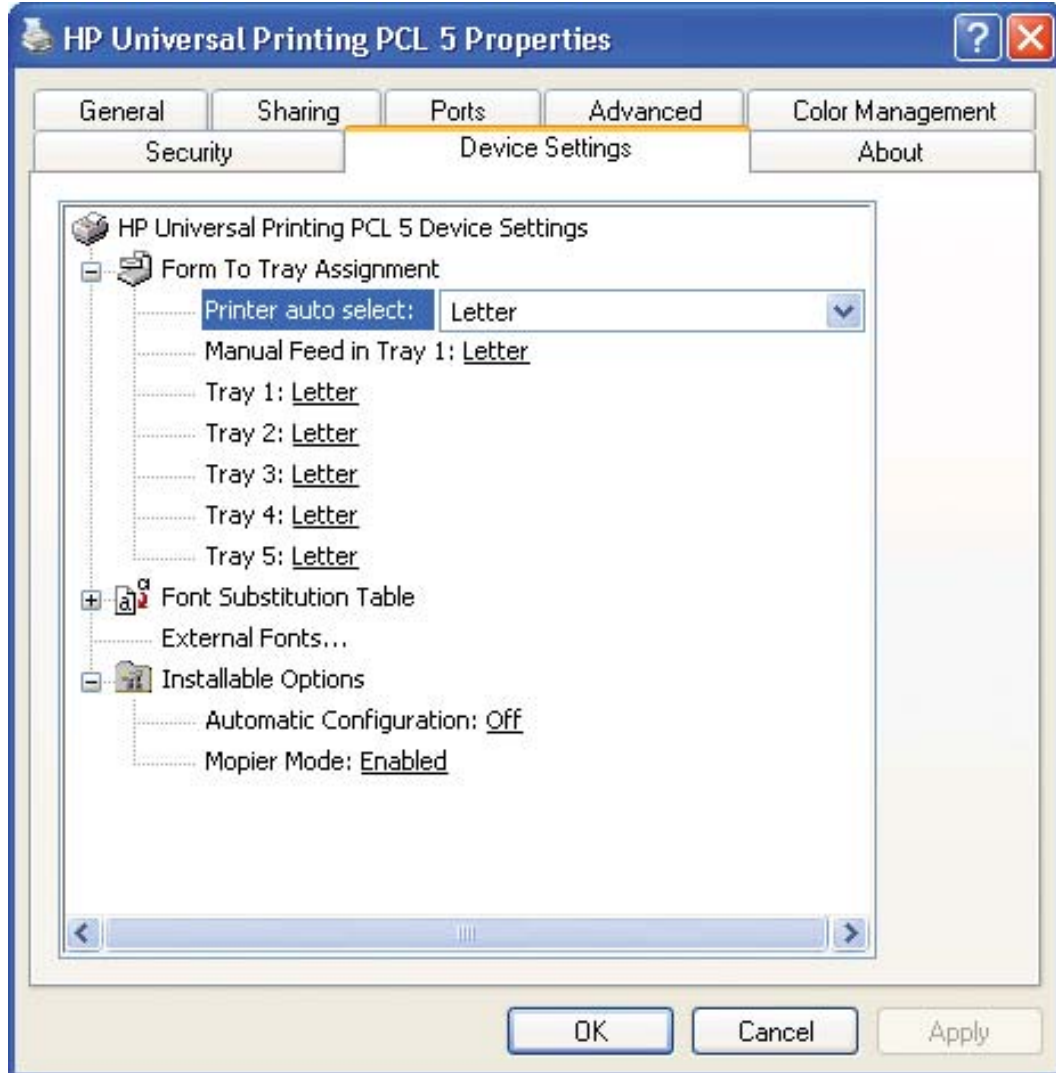


Figure 5-20 Device Settings tab – PCL 5 Universal Print Driver



The **Device Settings** tab contains controls for paper-handling devices and controls for managing the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product.

The **Device Settings** tab contains the following controls:

- [Form to Tray Assignment](#)
- [Font Substitution Table](#)
- [PS Universal Print Driver Device Settings](#)
- [Installable Options](#)

Form to Tray Assignment

A network administrator can use **Form to Tray Assignment** to specify the paper size in each input tray.

The HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product supports more than one source of paper. You can assign a form (which defines the paper size and margins) to each paper source. When a form is matched to a source, you can select the form when you print. The product prints from the tray to which that form is assigned.

Network administrators can use the **Form to Tray Assignment** setting to specify, in the driver, the paper size that is loaded into each available input tray. The use of forms constrains the choices that are available in the paper-size list on the **Paper/Quality** tab in the **Printing Preferences** driver tabs. This constraint prevents (or reduces the likelihood of) tying up the product with paper-mount messages that occur when users request sizes or types that are not available.

The trays listed in the **Form to Tray Assignment** setting include standard trays and optional accessory trays. Generally, items that are installed separately have a separate **Installable Options** setting.

The input trays listed here are also listed as paper sources on the **Paper/Quality** tab.

Configuring the trays

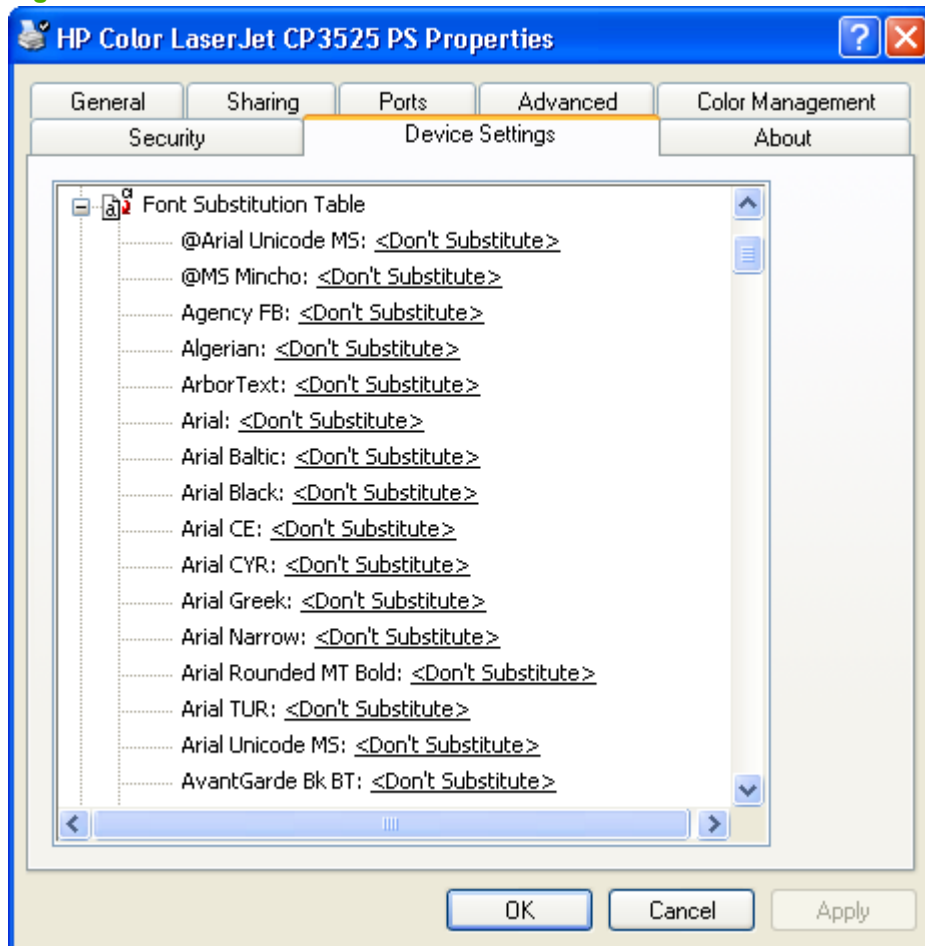
1. Select the appropriate tray in the **Form to Tray Assignment** list.
2. Use the drop-down menu to select the paper size (or form) that is loaded in that tray.
3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 for the remaining trays.
4. Click **OK** to enable your settings, or, if necessary, click **Cancel** to reconfigure all the trays, and remove the size and type constraints that have been imposed on the **Paper/Quality** tab.

Font Substitution Table

Use the **Font Substitution Table** settings to change the TrueType to printer font mapping and to install and remove external fonts for the product through the **External Fonts** option. External fonts can be soft fonts or DIMM fonts.

Click the **Font Substitution Table** option to open a list of fonts, as show in the following figure. Use the settings to change the TrueType-to-printer font mappings.

Figure 5-21 Font Substitution Table




PS Universal Print Driver Device Settings

The following controls are available and appear only in the PS Universal Print Driver **Device Settings** tab.

Available PostScript Memory

This control specifies the amount of available postscript memory and provides a spin box for changing this value. The available postscript memory is a subset of the product total physical memory. It is usually best to set the postscript memory to match what is shown on the configuration page. To print a configuration page from the product control panel, follow these steps:

Print a configuration page

1. Press the **menu** button  to open the menus.
2. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to **INFORMATION**, and then press **OK**.
3. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to **PRINT CONFIGURATION**.
4. Press **OK** to print the configuration page.

Output Protocol

This control specifies the protocol that the product uses for print jobs. The following options are available:

- **ASCII** (default)
- **TBCP**
- **Binary**

When you click **ASCII**, data is sent in ASCII format (7-bit), which might take longer to print but can be sent through any I/O channel, such as a serial, parallel, or network port.

When you click **TBCP** (Tagged Binary Communications Protocol), all data except special control characters is sent in binary (8-bit) format. The binary formats can be sent over parallel or serial communications ports and are faster than sending data in ASCII format.

When you click **Binary**, all data except special control characters is sent in binary (8-bit) format. The binary formats can be sent over parallel or serial communications ports and are faster than sending data in ASCII format.

Send Ctrl-D Before Each Job

This control specifies whether the product will be reset at the beginning of every postscript document. The default setting is **No**. Pressing **Ctrl-D** resets the product to its default setting to ensure that previous print jobs do not affect the current print job. Using **Ctrl-D** might cause a print job to fail if the product is connected through a network. If your document fails to print when sent to a product connected through parallel or serial ports, change **No** to **Yes**.

Send Ctrl-D After Each Job

This control specifies whether the product will be reset at the end of every postscript document. The default setting is **Yes**. Pressing **Ctrl-D** resets the product to its default setting to ensure that future print jobs are not affected by the current print job. Using **Ctrl-D** might cause a print job to fail if the product is connected through a network. If your document fails to print when sent to a network product, change **Yes** to **No**.

Convert Gray Text to PostScript Gray

This control specifies whether to convert the true gray value (RGB) in text to the gray provided by the HP PS Universal Print Driver. The following settings are available:

- **Yes**
- **No**. This is the default setting.

Convert Gray Graphics to PostScript Gray

This control specifies whether to convert the true gray value (RGB) in graphics to the gray provided by the HP PS Universal Print Driver. The following settings are available:

- **Yes**
- **No**. This is the default setting.

Add Euro Currency Symbol to PostScript Fonts

This control specifies whether to add the Euro symbol to the printer fonts. The following settings are available:

- **Yes.** This is the default setting.
- **No**

Job Timeout

This control specifies how long the product will try to process the postscript document before the product stops trying to print the document. If you specify **0 seconds**, the product continues trying to process indefinitely. The default setting is **0 seconds**. You can use the spin box to change this value from 1 to a maximum of **32,767 seconds**.

Wait Timeout

This control specifies how long the product waits to get more postscript information from the computer. After the specified time passes, the product stops trying to print the document and prints an error message. If you are trying to print a very complicated document, you might want to increase this value. If you specify **0 seconds**, the product waits indefinitely. The default setting is **300 seconds**. You can use the spin box to change this value to a maximum of **32,767 seconds**.

Minimum Font Size to Download as Outline

This control specifies the minimum font size (in pixels) for which the driver downloads TrueType fonts as outline (Type 1) fonts. A font smaller than the minimum setting is downloaded as a bitmap (Type 3) font. Use this option to fine-tune the **Automatic** setting for the **TrueType Font Download** option on the **Advanced** tab in **Document Defaults**. The default setting is **100** pixels. You can use the spin box to change this value from 0 to a maximum of **32,767** pixels.

Maximum Font Size to Download as Outline

This control specifies the maximum font size (in pixels) for which the driver will download TrueType fonts as bitmap (Type 3) fonts. A font larger than the maximum setting will be downloaded as an outline (Type 1) font. Use this option to fine-tune the **Automatic** setting or override the **Send TrueType as Bitmap** setting for the **TrueType Font Download** option on the **Advanced** tab in **Document Defaults**. The default setting is **600** pixels. You can use the spin box to change this value from 0 to a maximum of **32,767** pixels.

Installable Options

Items under **Installable Options** are automatically populated and their defaults set when the driver is installed.

The HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product has printing options that you can install and configure in this section. The following controls are available:

- [Postscript Passthrough – PS Universal Print Driver only](#)
- [JPEG Passthrough – PS Universal Print Driver only](#)
- [Mopier Mode](#)
- [Automatic Configuration](#)

Postscript Passthrough – PS Universal Print Driver only

Postscript Passthrough is enabled by default, and must be enabled for most print jobs. **Postscript Passthrough** provides additional capabilities for some software programs when printing to a postscript driver. Options such as **Watermarks**, **n-up** and **Booklet Printing** might not print correctly from some software programs with **Postscript Passthrough** enabled, because such programs send postscript information to the product that cannot be controlled by the driver. Other programs might print using these options without problems. Select **Disabled** and print the document again if you encounter problems.

 **NOTE:** In some cases, disabling **Postscript Passthrough** can cause unexpected results within a software program.

JPEG Passthrough – PS Universal Print Driver only

JPEG Passthrough is set to **Auto** by default. When set to **Auto**, **JPEG Passthrough** detects the printer connection type and either disables **JPEG Passthrough** for network (TCP/IP) connections or enables **JPEG Passthrough** for parallel (LPT), DOT4, and USB connections.

Select **Disable** to print JPEG images as bitmaps. This results in faster printing.

Select **Enable** to print JPEG images as JPEGs (JPEG passthrough).

Mopier Mode

The multiple-original print (mopy) function is an HP-designed feature that produces multiple, collated copies from a single print job. Multiple-original printing (mopying) increases performance and reduces network traffic by transmitting the job to the product once, and then storing it in memory or the hard disk. The remainder of the copies are printed at the fastest speed. All documents that are printed in mopier mode can be created, controlled, managed, and finished from the computer, which eliminates the extra step of using a photocopier.

The HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series supports the transmit-once mopying feature when the **Mopier Mode** setting on the **Device Settings** tab is **Enabled**.

When you use the HP PS Universal Print Driver or the HP PCL 5 Universal Print Driver, mopying is performed in one of two ways: either through the software or through the product hardware. When mopier mode is enabled, mopying takes place through the product hardware. One copy of a multiple-page print job is transmitted once through the network to the product, together with a printer job language (PJM) command directing the product to make the specified number of copies.

When you disable the mopier, you are not necessarily disabling multiple collated copies, which the driver can still perform through the software rather than the product hardware (the mopying path that is disabled when you change the **Mopier Mode** setting to **Disabled**). However, a multiple-copy print job that is sent when the mopier is disabled loses the advantage of transmitting the print job once, because the job is sent through the network for each collated copy.

Mopier mode and collation

Mopying and collating print jobs are independent but closely related functions. Mopying, the ability to send original print jobs to the product, is performed by the print driver. Collating can be controlled by either the print driver or the document software program. The mopying mode is selected by default in the driver, and can be disabled by changing the **Mopier Mode** setting on the **Device Settings** tab to **Disabled**.

Control collation through the print driver by selecting or clearing the **Collated** check box on the **Advanced** tab. Click **Copy Count** under the **Paper Output** setting. You can clear the check box, which

is available only when the **Copy Count** option is set to more than 1 copy, to allow the software program to control collation.

To receive uncollated multiple copies of a print job, you must clear the **Collated** check box *and* make sure that the software program collation feature is not selected.

The following table shows the relation between mopier mode settings and collation settings in the software program and the driver. The first three columns show the settings; the last column, "Expected result", shows how a 3-page print job would appear.

Table 5-4 Driver mopier mode and collation settings

| Mopier mode | Application collation | Driver collation | Expected result |
|-------------|-----------------------|------------------|---------------------|
| Disabled | Not selected | Not selected | 3 copies uncollated |
| Disabled | Not selected | Selected | 3 copies uncollated |
| Disabled | Selected | Not selected | 3 copies collated |
| Disabled | Selected | Selected | 3 copies collated |
| Enabled | Not selected | Not selected | 3 copies uncollated |
| Enabled | Not selected | Selected | 3 copies uncollated |
| Enabled | Selected | Not selected | 3 copies collated |
| Enabled | Selected | Selected | 3 copies collated |

Automatic Configuration

Use the **Device Settings** tab to tell the driver about the hardware configuration of the product. If bidirectional communication is enabled in a supported environment, update this tab by selecting the **Update Now** setting in the **Automatic Configuration** setting. The default setting is **Off**. After an automatic configuration, the setting returns to **Off** after the changes are made.

If your environment does not support bidirectional communication, the **Update Now** setting is unavailable, so you must manually configure the options on this tab.

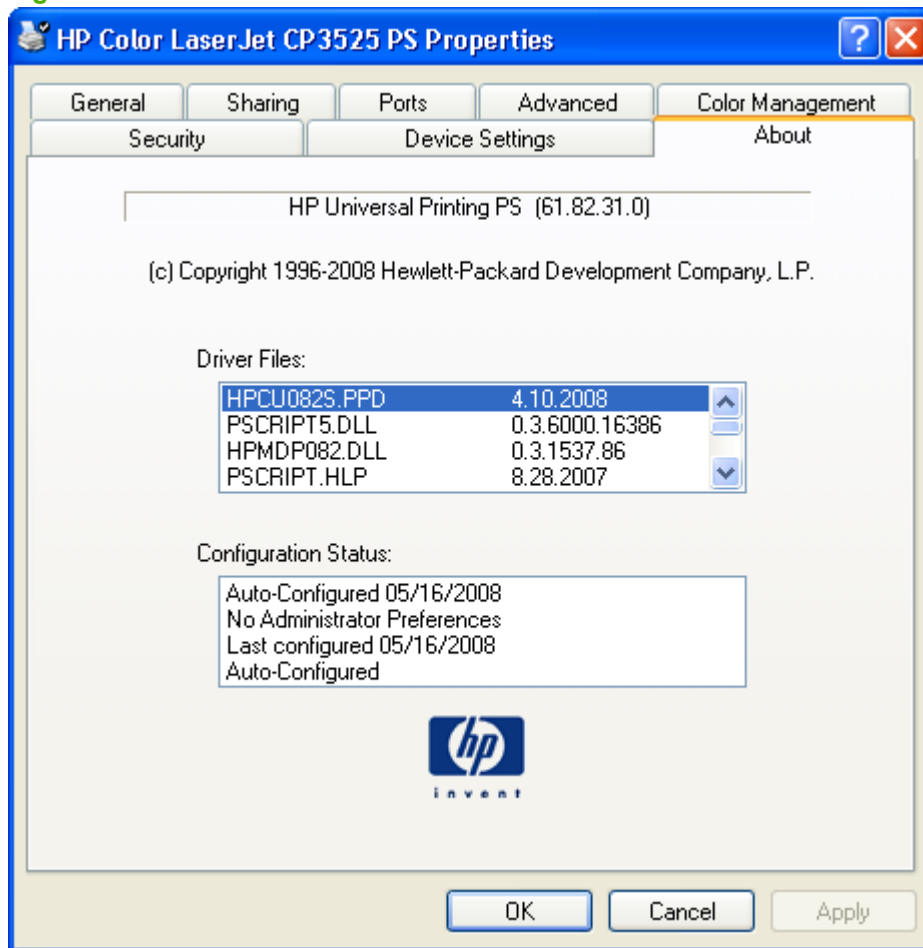
If you have more than one driver installed for the product (for example, the default HP PCL 6 Print Driver and the HP PCL 5 Universal Print Driver), the Update Now feature works automatically only on the driver on which it is activated. The other driver will not be updated, and might show the default setting for the specific product model.

About tab features

 **NOTE:** The **About** tab is located on the **Properties** tab set. For information about how to access these tabs, see [Properties driver tabs on page 119](#).

The **About** tab provides detailed information about driver component versions. It contains an overall build version number (in parentheses after the model name) together with specific information about each of the components. The information varies according to the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series model number, driver, date, and versions. The **About** tab is shown in the following figure.

Figure 5-22 About tab



The **About** tab lists driver installation file names and their version numbers. The **About** tab also indicates whether the driver was autoconfigured, whether administrator preferences were set, the date the driver was last configured, and whether the configuration is autoconfigured or user-configured.

The **About** button is also available on most driver screens. The **About** button provides a driver version number and creation date.

6 Macintosh software and utilities

Introduction

The HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series comes with software and installers for Apple, Inc. Macintosh systems.

This chapter provides procedures for installing and removing the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series printing-system software for Macintosh operating systems, as well as descriptions about the software and utilities. The chapter provides information about these topics:

- [Supported Macintosh operating systems](#)
- [Macintosh system requirements](#)
- [Printing-system software for Macintosh](#)
- [Install and uninstall the Macintosh printing system](#)
- [Availability](#)
- [HP Printer Utility for Macintosh](#)

Supported Macintosh operating systems

The HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series printing-system software supports Mac OS X v10.3.9, Mac OS X v10.4, Mac OS X v10.5, and later operating systems.

Macintosh system requirements

The HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series has the following system requirements for Macintosh systems: the minimum recommended RAM and processor as recommended by Apple, Inc., plus 150 MB of free hard disk space.

Printing-system software for Macintosh

The product includes the following software for Macintosh computers:

- PDEs for Mac OS X only (v10.3.9, v10.4, v10.5, and later)

PDEs

Printer Dialog Extensions (PDEs) are code plug-ins (for Mac OS X v10.3.9 and later only) that provide access to product features, such as number of copies, duplexing, and quality settings. The PDEs are HP additions to Apple's print driver.

HP Embedded Web Server

Mac OS X v10.3.9 and later support the HP Embedded Web Server (HP EWS). Use the HP LaserJet Utility to control features that are not available in the driver. Use the HP EWS to perform the following tasks:

- Name the product and assign it to a zone on the AppleTalk network.
- Change product settings.
- Set a password for the product.
- From the computer, lock out functions on the control panel to prevent unauthorized access (see the printing-software help).

Install notes

This text file contains important information about product features, instructions for installing the printing-system software, and technical assistance.

Online help


This HTML-based help system replaces the Apple Guide help system that was provided with Mac OS 9.x HP products. The help system is in English only, and can be viewed through a browser or in the Macintosh OS Help Center.

Screen fonts


The printing-system software for Macintosh operating systems no longer includes a font installer. The HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product uses previously installed system fonts when it is installed on a Macintosh computer.

Install and uninstall the Macintosh printing system

On a Macintosh computer, the installation procedures are basically the same for a network administrator, a network client, and a single user. Install the software on any computer that has save rights to the product. Users must have Administrator rights to install the software.

 **NOTE:** If the computer is connected to the product by a LocalTalk (printer port) connection, you must configure the AppleTalk (or network) control panel for the correct connection to communicate with the product. You must set up the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series, connect it to the computer or network, and turn it on *before* the software is installed. Macintosh operating systems do not support parallel connections.


The Macintosh partition contains an installer program for each language. Find the appropriate language for the operating system that is being used, and then use the installer program for that language.

 **NOTE:** Detailed installation steps can be found in [Mac OS X installation on page 246](#).

HP LaserJet software CD, Macintosh partition

The files contained in the Macintosh partition of the HP LaserJet software CD are grouped by language and reside in the following directory:

- HP CLJ CP3525.mpkg (installer for the Mac OS X operating system)
- Manuals

 **NOTE:** File layouts differ by language for each regional version of the software CD.


Install the HP LaserJet printing-system software for the Macintosh OS

Topics:


- [General installation instructions](#)
- [Mac OS X installation](#)
- [Setup instructions](#)

General installation instructions

1. Insert the Macintosh printing-system software CD into the CD-ROM drive.

 **NOTE:** If the CD screen does not open automatically, double-click the **HP Color LaserJet CP3525** CD-ROM icon on the desktop to open the CD-ROM window.

2. Double-click the **hpcljCP3525.mpkg** icon.
3. Follow the onscreen instructions to complete the software installation.

 **NOTE:** If you are installing the printing-system software on a Macintosh OS X system, be patient. The installer must perform an initial search of the computer for up to 1 minute. During this time the installer might appear to be stalled.

4. When software installation is complete, click **Quit**. Use the following chart to finish setting up the product:

The software program that you use to finish setting up the product varies by operating system. The following table shows the print setup tools that are available.

Table 6-1 Adding a product in Macintosh operating systems

| Operating System | Print Center | Printer Setup Utility |
|------------------|--------------|-----------------------|
| Mac OS X v10.3.9 | | x |
| Mac OS X v10.4 | x | x |
| Mac OS X v10.5 | x | x |

Mac OS X installation

This section provides information about the various installation dialog-box sequences for the Mac OS X operating system.

Main Install dialog box sequence

This section provides information about the Macintosh installation dialog-box sequence for the Easy Install (the typical installation option).

Insert the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series printing-system software CD in the CD-ROM drive.

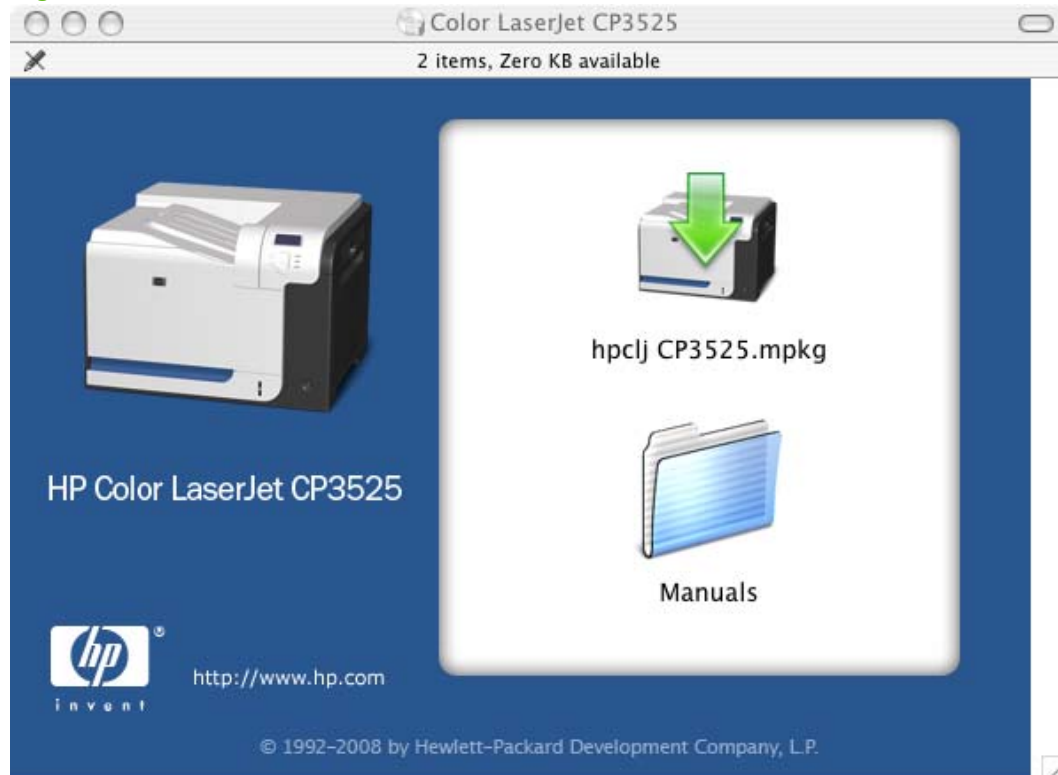
If the CD screen does not open automatically when the CD is put into the CD-ROM drive, double-click the **HP CLJ CP3525** CD-ROM icon on the desktop to open the installer folder.

Figure 6-1 HP CLJ CP3525 CD-ROM icon



The **HP Color LaserJet CP3525** dialog box opens.

Figure 6-2 HP Color LaserJet CP3525 screen



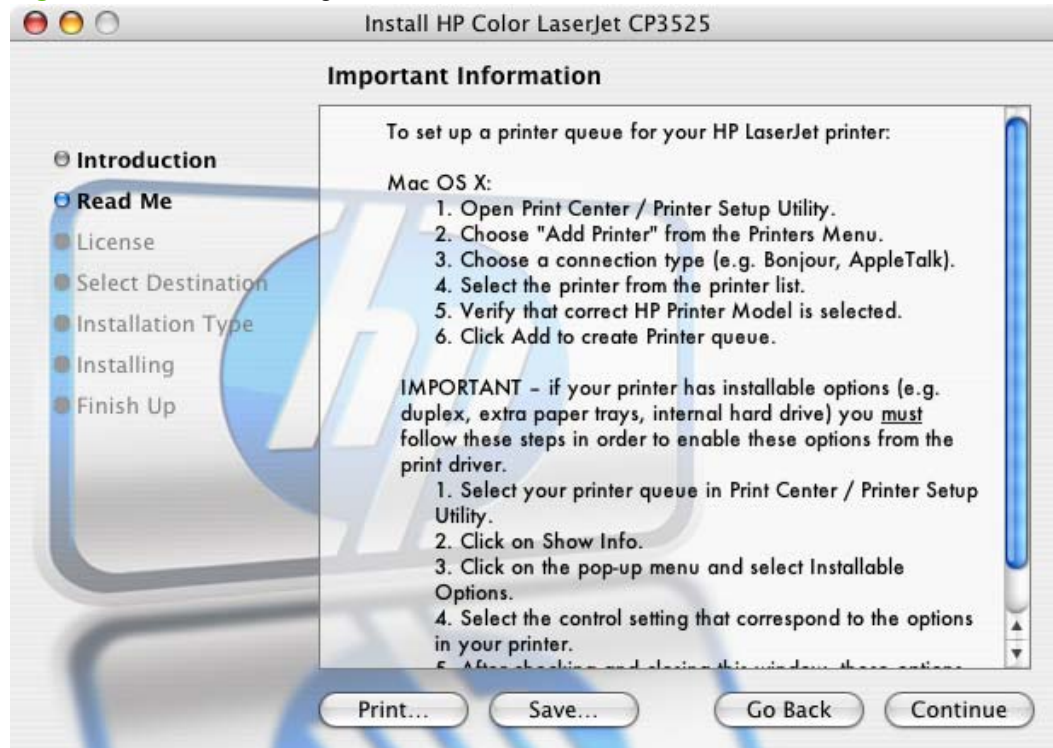
In the **HP LaserJet CP3525** pane, double-click the **hpcljCP3525.mpkg** icon. This begins the install process.

Figure 6-3 HP LaserJet for Macintosh installer startup-screen dialog box



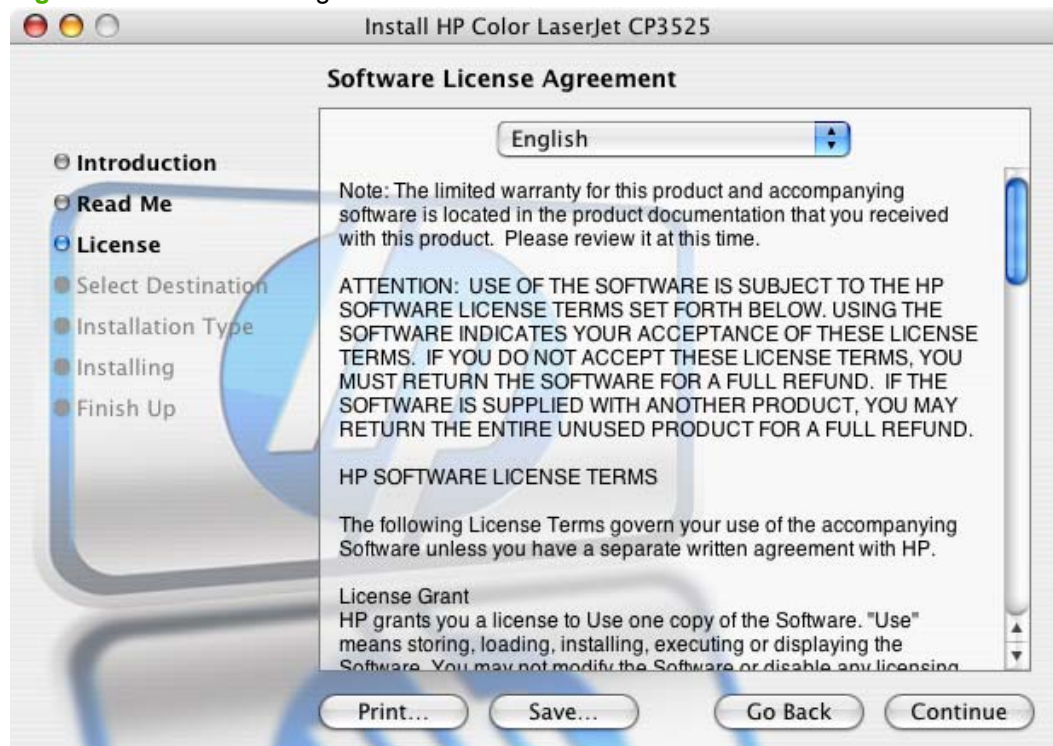
Click **Continue**. The **ReadMe** dialog box appears.

Figure 6-4 ReadMe dialog box



You can save or print the ReadMe file by clicking **Save** or **Print**, Read the ReadMe file, then click **Continue**. The **License** dialog box appears.

Figure 6-5 License dialog box



Click **Print...** to open the **Page Setup** dialog box for your default printer and print a copy of the license agreement.

Click **Save** to open the system **Save** dialog box, and then save the license agreement to disk.

Click **Go Back** to return to the previous screen.

Read the software-license agreement, and then click **Continue**. The **Agree/Disagree** dialog box appears.

Figure 6-6 Agree/Disagree dialog box



Click **Disagree** to end the installation, and then close the installer.

Click **Agree** to continue the installation. The **Select Destination** dialog box appears.

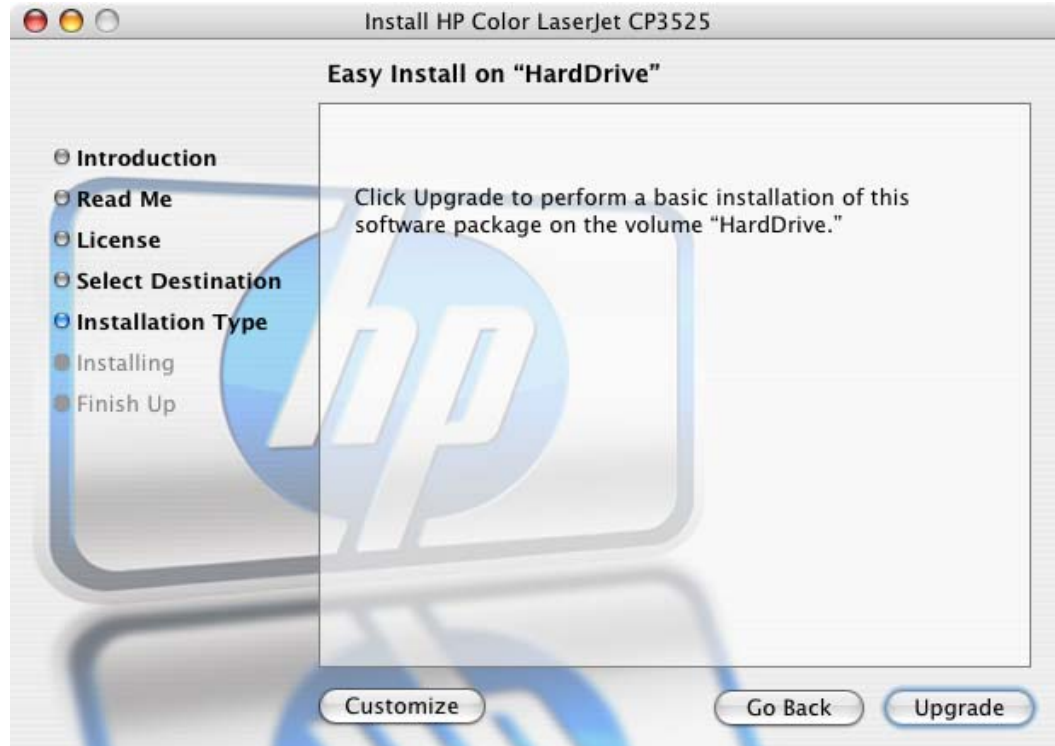
Figure 6-7 Select Destination dialog box



Click **Go Back** to go back to the previous screen.

Click **Continue** to continue the installation. The **Installation Type** dialog box appears.

Figure 6-8 Installation Type dialog box

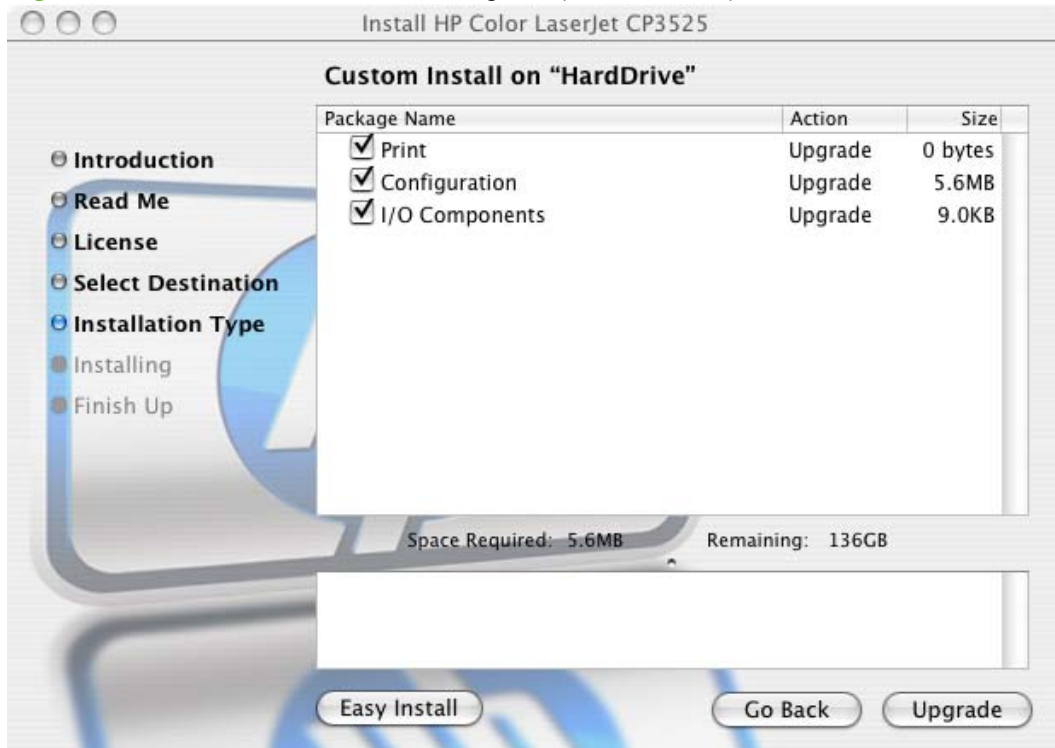


The default option in the drop-down menu at the top of the screen is **Easy Install**. You can also select **Custom Install** in the same menu.

Click **Install** to start the installation on the selected disk

Click **Go Back** to go back to the previous dialog box.

Figure 6-9 HP LaserJet Installer dialog box (custom install)



Use the check boxes on the list to install the components that you want to install.

Click **Install** to start the installation on the selected disk. The files are installed in the Library folder on the Macintosh CD.

Click **Go Back** to go back to the previous dialog box.

The **Authenticate** dialog box appears.

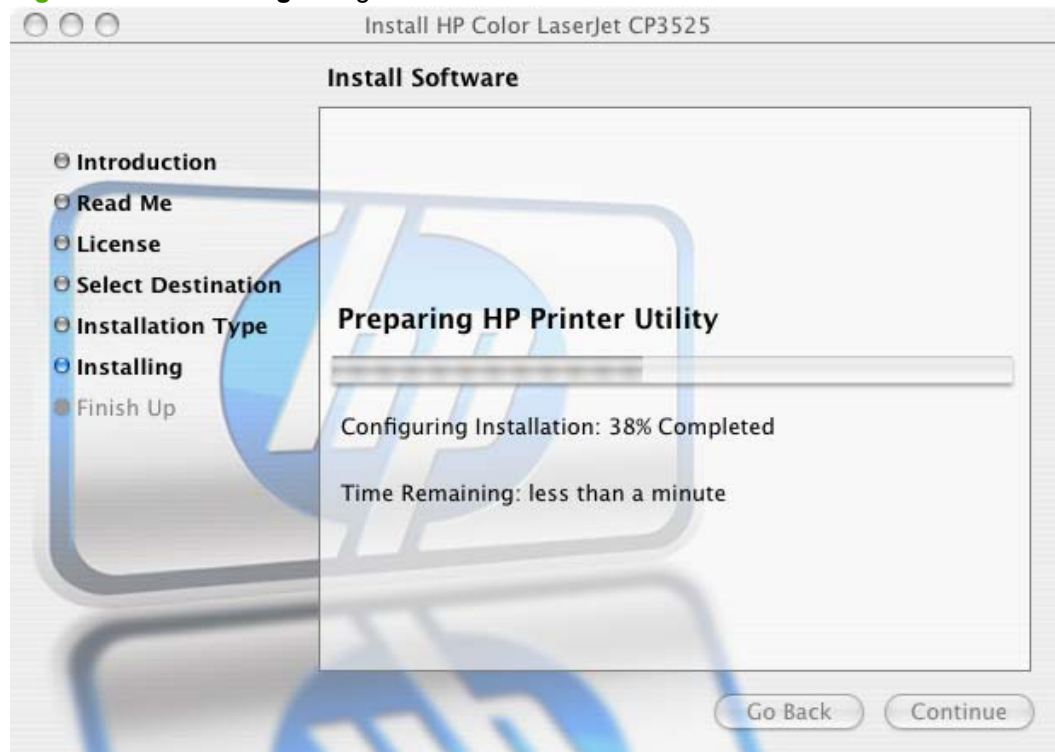
Figure 6-10 Authenticate dialog box



Type the correct administrator password, and then click **OK** to continue. The installer startup screen appears.

Click **Cancel** to exit the installation.

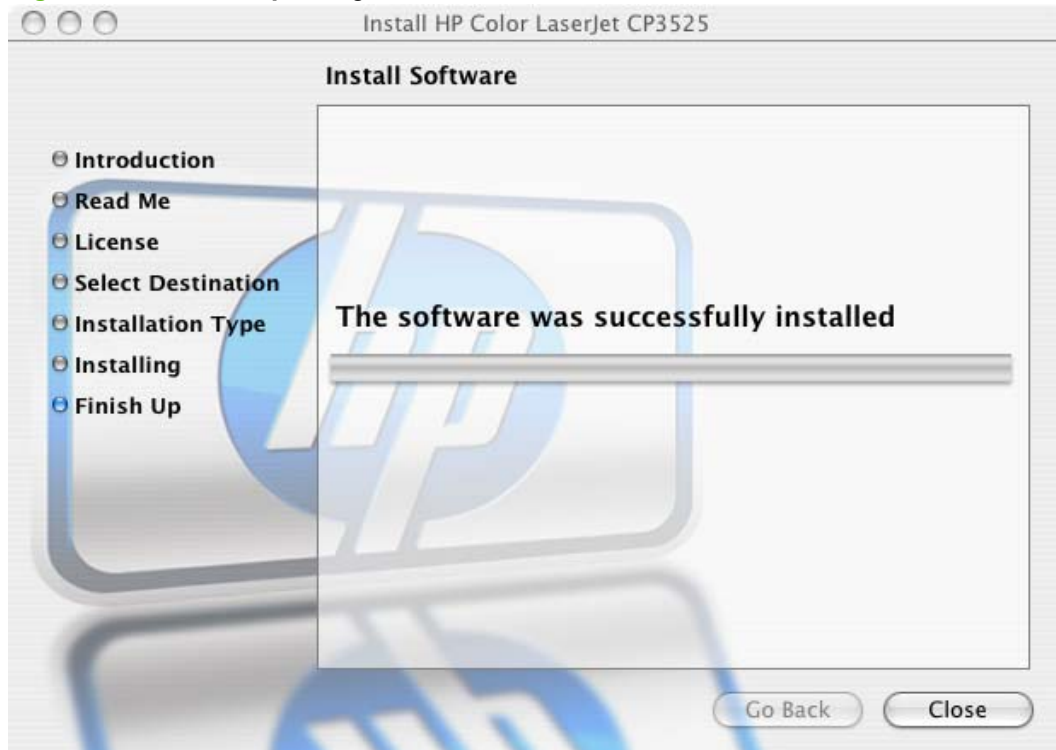
Figure 6-11 Installing dialog box



The **Installing** dialog box shows installation progress. No action is required.

When the installation is complete, the **Finish Up** dialog box appears, stating that the installation was successful.

Figure 6-12 Finish Up dialog box



Click **Close** to exit the installer.

Complete the instructions in [Setup instructions on page 253](#) to set up a printer queue for your HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product.

Setup instructions

This section contains information about the following topics:

- [Setting up a printer with Mac OS X v10.4, v10.5, and later](#)
- [Setting up a printer with Mac OS X v10.3.9](#)
- [Troubleshooting the product setup](#)

Setting up a printer with Mac OS X v10.4, v10.5, and later

Complete these steps *after* completing the printing-system software installation.


1. If you are installing the product using a USB connection, connect the USB cable between the product and the computer. Turn on the product. If you are installing using a network connection, verify that the network cable is connected to the product and that the product is on.
2. In the **Applications** folder (in the **Finder** utility), open the **Utilities** folder, and then run the **Printer Setup Utility**.
3. If you are installing the product using a USB connection, verify that the product appears in the printer list. The **Name** column in the printer list should display the product name. If this is the case, the USB setup is complete.

If the product does not appear, or if the correct information does not appear in the field, see [Troubleshooting the product setup on page 257](#).

If you are installing the product using a network connection, continue with the following steps.

4. Click **Add** in the **Printer List** to open the **Printer Browser** screen.
5. You can use either Bonjour (default browser)


or IP Printing for the network connection.

 **NOTE:** Bonjour is the easiest method and is the best method to use if the product is installed on your local network.

IP Printing *must* be used if you are installing the product on a different network.

If you are using Bonjour, carry out the following steps:

- a. Click the **Default Browser** tab.
- b. Select the product from the list. The software verifies that the product is connected to the network and the **Print Using** field is automatically populated with the correct PPD for the product.

 **NOTE:** If you are on a network that has more than one product, print a configuration page and match the Bonjour Printer Name to the name on the list to identify the product that you are installing.

NOTE: If the product does not appear in the list, verify that the product is on and connected to the network, then try turning the product off and then on again. If the product PPD does not appear in the **Print Using** pull-down list, turn the computer off and then on again, then restart the setup process. For more troubleshooting information, see [Troubleshooting the product setup on page 257](#).


- c. Click the **Add** button.
- d. Verify or select the appropriate **Installable Options**, and then click **Continue**. Select **Make Default** to set the device as your default.

You are finished with the setup process.

If you are using the IP Printing method, carry out the following steps:

- a. Click the **IP Printer** tab.
- b. Choose **HP Jet Direct – Socket** from the **Protocol** pull-down menu. This is the recommended setting for HP products.
- c. Follow these steps to print the configuration pages.

Print a configuration page

- i. Press the **menu** button  to open the menus.
- ii. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to **INFORMATION**, and then press **OK**.
- iii. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to **PRINT CONFIGURATION**.
- iv. Press **OK** to print the configuration page.

- d. On the first configuration page, under **IPv4**, find the IP Address. Type this address into the **Address** field on the add printer screen.
 - e. The **Name**, **Location**, and **Print Using** information will automatically be filled in. If the product PPD does not appear in the **Print Using** field, turn the computer off and then on again and restart the setup process.
6. Select the product and click **Add**. The **Installable Options** screen appears.
 7. In the **Optional Trays**: drop-down menu, select the trays that are installed on the product.
 8. In the **Collation in Printer**: drop-down menu, select the amount of memory and hard disk combination that is installed in the product:
 9. If the product has a hard disk, select **Installed** from the **Printer Hard Disk** drop-down menu.
 10. If the product has a duplex unit, select the **Duplex Unit** check box.
 11. In the **Accessory Output Bins**: drop-down menu, select the output bins that are installed on the product.
 12. In the **Paper Matching**: drop-down menu, select one of the following options:
 - **Prompt User for correct size**
 - **Nearest Size & Scale**
 - **Nearest Size & Crop**
 13. After you have selected the settings in the **Installable Options** screen, click **Continue**. The product name appears in the **Printer List** and the setup is complete.

Setting up a printer with Mac OS X v10.3.9


Complete these steps *after* completing the printing-system software installation.

1. If you are installing the product using a USB connection, connect the USB cable between the product and the computer. Turn on the product. If you are installing using a network connection, verify that the network cable is connected to the product and that the product is on.
2. In the **Applications** folder, open the **Utilities** folder, and then run the **Printer Setup Utility**.
3. If you are installing the product using a USB connection, verify that the product appears in the printer list. The **Kind** column in the printer list same change as before should display the product name. If this is the case, the setup is complete.

If the product does not appear, or if the correct information does not appear in the **Kind** field, see [Troubleshooting the product setup on page 257](#).

If you are installing the product using a network connection, continue with the following steps.

4. Click **Add** and then click **Add** to open the add printer screen.
5. Select the network connection protocol in the top pull-down menu. The two supported protocols are **Rendezvous** and **IP Printing**.

 **NOTE:** Rendezvous is the easiest method and is the best method to use if the product is installed on your local network.

IP Printing *must* be used if you are installing the product on a different network.

If you are using Rendezvous, carry out the following step:

Select the product in the **Name** list. The **Printer Model** and **Model Name** are selected automatically.



NOTE: If you are on a network that has more than one product, print a configuration page and match the Rendezvous Printer Name to the name on the list to identify the product that you are installing.



NOTE: If the product does not appear in the list, verify that the product is on and connected to the network. If it still does not appear, try turning the product off and then on again. Finally, turn the computer off and then on again, then restart the setup process. For more troubleshooting information, see [Troubleshooting the product setup on page 257](#).




NOTE: If the automatic selection fails, or if you want to manually select a .PPD file, click the **Printer Model** pull-down menu, select **HP**, and then select the .PPD file that you want to add. If the product PPD does not appear in the **Model Name** list, turn the computer off and then on again and restart the setup process.

If you are using IP Printing, carry out the following steps:

- a. Choose **Socket/HP Jet Direct** from the **Printer Type** pull-down menu. This is the recommended setting for HP products.
- b. Follow these directions to print the product configuration pages.

Print a configuration page

- i. Press the **menu** button  to open the menus.
 - ii. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to **INFORMATION**, and then press **OK**.
 - iii. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to **PRINT CONFIGURATION**.
 - iv. Press **OK** to print the configuration page.
 - c. On the first configuration page, under **Product Settings**, find the IP Address. Type this address into the **Printer Address** field on the add printer screen.
 - d. Select the **Printer Model** and select the product in the **Model Name** list. If the product PPD does not appear in the **Model Name** list, turn the computer off and then on again and restart the setup process.
6. Click **Add**. The product appears in the **Printer List**.
 7. To configure installable options such as a duplexing unit or optional paper trays, click **Show Info?** and select **Installable Options** in the drop-down menu.



NOTE: This step is necessary only for network connections and USB connections that use Rendezvous/Bonjour. AppleTalk automatically configures the installable options.

8. In the **Optional Trays:** drop-down menu, select the trays that are installed on the product.
9. In the **Collation in Printer:** drop-down menu, select the amount of memory and hard disk combination that is installed in the product:

10. If the product has a hard disk, select **Installed** from the **Printer Hard Disk** drop-down menu.
11. If the product has a duplex unit, select the **Duplex Unit** check box.
12. In the **Paper Matching:** drop-down menu, select one of the following options:
 - **Prompt User for correct size**
 - **Nearest Size & Scale**
 - **Nearest Size & Crop**
13. Click **Apply Changes**, and then close the **Printer List** dialog box.

Troubleshooting the product setup

If the product does not appear in the printer list after an installation:

Complete each one of these solutions in the order given, and restart the setup process after each one to see if the issue has been resolved.

- Verify that the USB or network cable is connected between the product and the computer and that the product is powered on.
- Try disconnecting and reconnecting the cable. If the computer has more than one USB port, try a different USB port.
- Turn the product off and then back on.
- Turn the computer off and then back on.
- If you are using a USB hub on the computer, disconnect any other USB devices from the hub.

If the wrong PPD appears in the Kind column in the printer list after installation:

1. Unplug the USB cable.
2. Delete the print queue with the incorrect type (for example, Generic PostScript Printer).
3. Reinstall the printing-system software.
4. Turn the computer off and then on.
5. Reconnect the USB cable from the computer to the product.

If these steps do not resolve the problem, delete the incorrect print queue, click **Add**, choose the product from the list, and then browse manually for the product PPD.

Uninstall the Macintosh printing system

To uninstall the Macintosh Printing System, perform the following steps:

1. Open **Systems Preferences**.
2. Select **Print & Fax**.
3. Click the Minus (–) symbol.
4. Delete the **Print Queue**.

5. Restart the computer.
6. Empty the **Trash**.

Availability

The Macintosh printing-system software consists of the following folders: the HP LaserJet Installer-Integrated installer program for Mac OS X, a PDF folder for manuals, and an in-house marketing application. The folders are named as follows:

- HP CLJ CP3525.mpkg (the HP LaserJet Installer)
- Manuals

HP Printer Utility for Macintosh

The HP Printer Utility is a software program that gives you access to the product in Mac OS X.

The HP Printer Utility does not work when it is installed by using the AppleTalk protocol. Use IP, Bonjour or Rendezvous to enable the HP Printer Utility.

The following topics are discussed:

- [Access to the HP Printer Utility](#)
- [Supplies Status](#)
- [Device Information](#)
- [HP Support](#)
- [Color Usage](#)
- [File Upload](#)
- [Upload Fonts](#)
- [Remote firmware update by using the HP Printer Utility](#)
- [Duplex mode](#)
- [Trays Configuration](#)
- [Stored Jobs](#)
- [E-mail Alerts](#)
- [Network Settings](#)
- [Supplies Management](#)
- [Protect Direct Ports](#)
- [Additional Settings](#)

Access to the HP Printer Utility

In Mac OS X v10.3.9, follow these steps to gain access to the HP Printer Utility:

1. Open the Finder.
2. Find and double-click **Printers**. The **Select Printer** screen appears.

In Mac OS X v10.4, v10.5, and later, follow these steps to gain access to the HP Printer Utility:

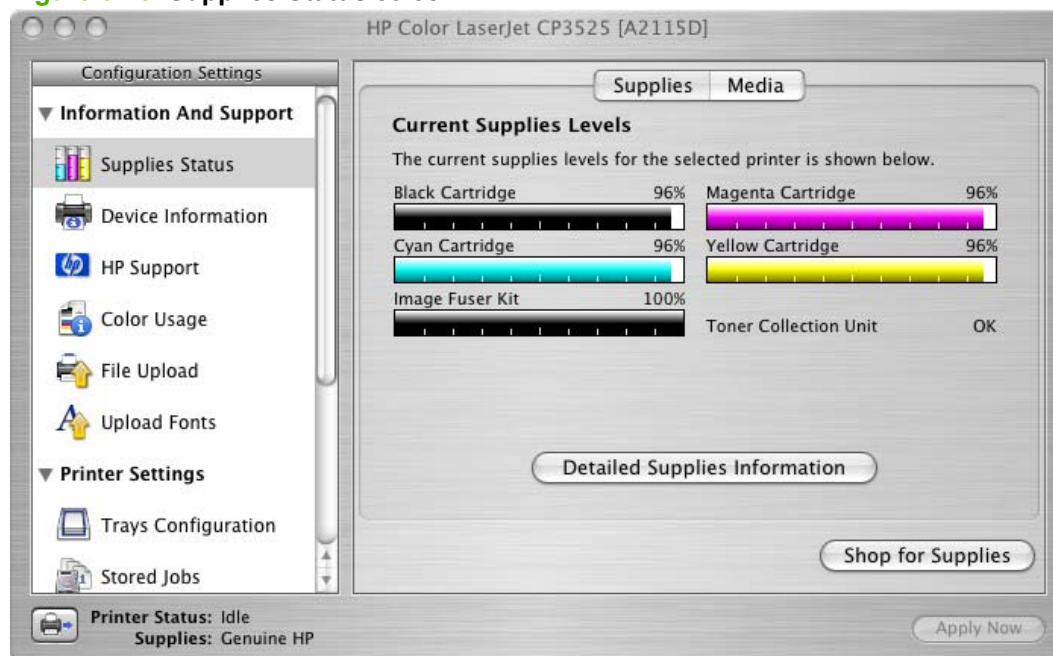
1. In the **Finder**, click **Applications** and then click **Utilities**.
2. Click to select the **HP Printer Utility**. Click to select the product, and then click **Select**.

The following sections describe the screens and features that are available in the HP Printer Utility.

Supplies Status

The HP Printer Utility opens to the **Supplies Status** screen.

Figure 6-13 Supplies Status screen



Click **Detailed Supplies Information...** to open the **Supplies Information** screen.

Use the scroll button to see information about the color print cartridges.

If you have Internet access and click **Shop for Supplies**, a screen appears that explains the ordering process and describes the kind of information that can be sent about your product to facilitate the ordering of supplies.

Click the **Hewlett-Packard Online Privacy Statement** link to open a screen that shows the HP privacy statement.

You can continue ordering supplies without sending product information by clicking the **continue without sending this information** link.

To send a message to HP, click the **contact HP** link.

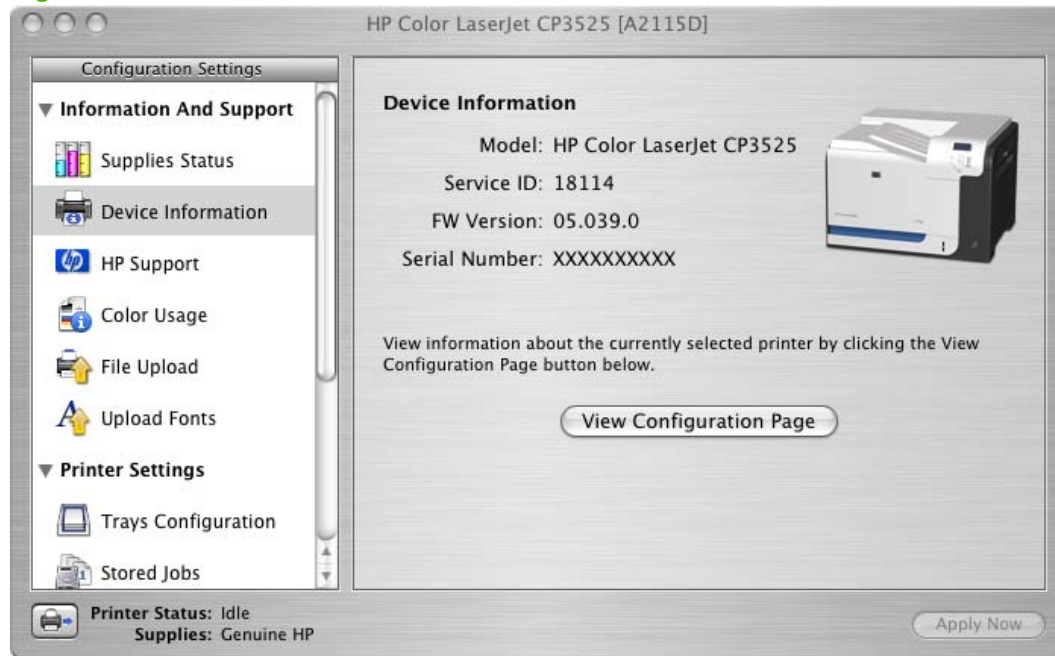
On the **Supplies Status** screen, click **paper** to see the status of the trays.

You can also order supplies from this screen by clicking **Order HP Supplies**.

Device Information

Click **Device Information** in the menu on the left to find the product service ID (if assigned), the firmware version, and the serial number.

Figure 6-14 Device Information screen

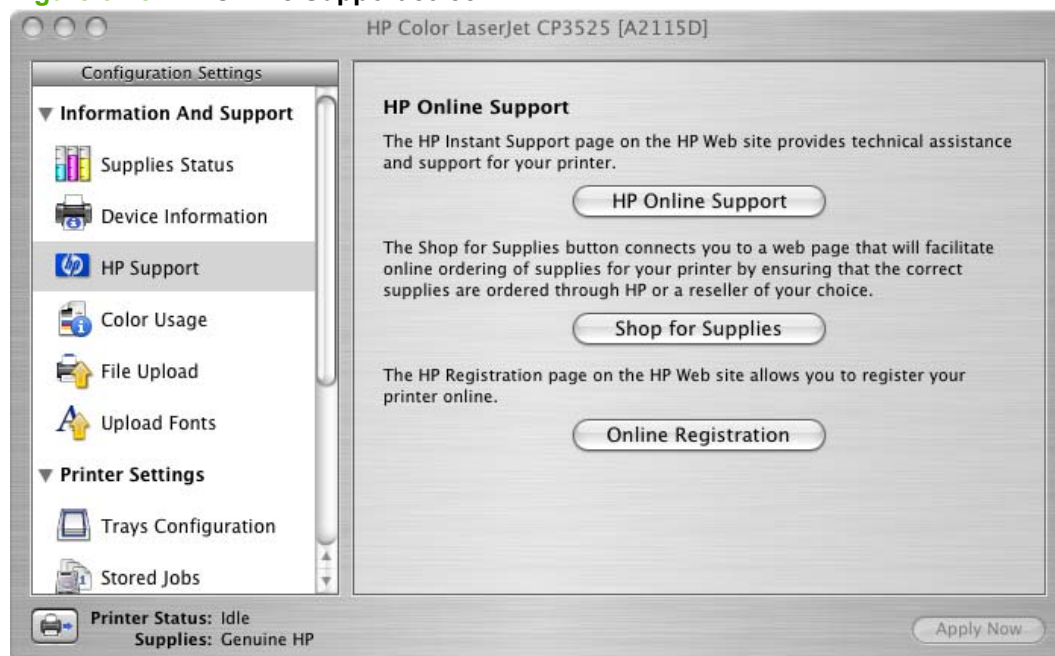


The product configuration page shows other settings; click **View Configuration Page**.

HP Support

Click **HP Support** to open the **HP Online Support** screen.

Figure 6-15 HP Online Support screen



If you have Internet access, you can connect to HP support pages over the Web from this screen.

Click the **HP Online Support** screen to open the HP Instant Support Web page.

Click the **Hewlett-Packard Online Privacy Statement** link to open a screen that shows the HP privacy statement.

Click the **Product Support** link if you do not want to send information to HP but would like to receive generic product support.

Click **Continue** to open a page where you can select the product and find further information about product support.

Click **Cancel** to return to the **HP Online Support** screen in the HP Printer Utility.

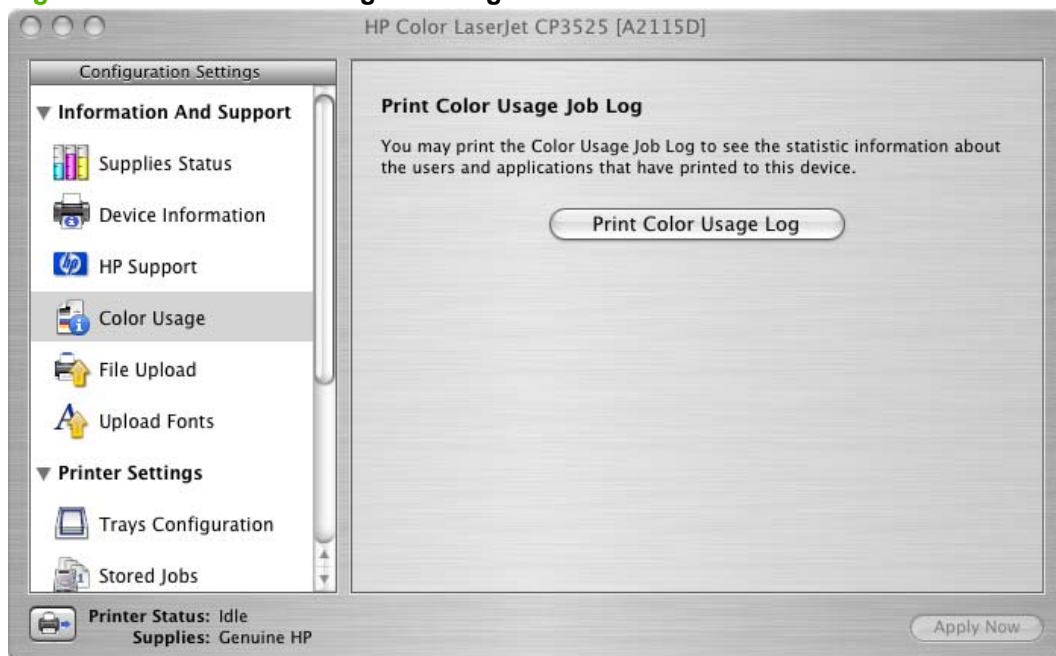
On the **HP Online Support** screen, click **Shop for Supplies** to open the Order Supplies Web page.

The **Online Registration** link is provided to register your product online.

Color Usage

Click **Color Usage** in the **Information and Support** menu to open a screen and print a color-usage job log.

Figure 6-16 Print Color Usage Job Log screen



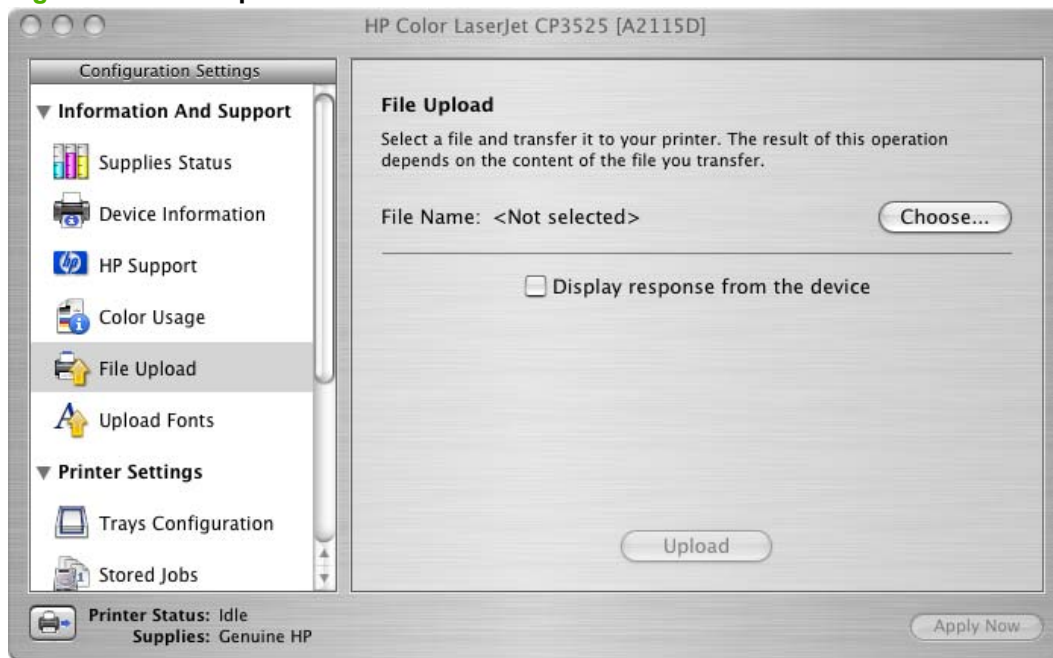
Click **Print Color Usage Log** to print a page that shows information about users, print jobs, and software programs that have printed to the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product. In addition, the color-usage log lists the following details about print jobs:

- Date and time
- Total number of jobs
- Mono (monochrome, or black-and-white) sides
- Color sides
- paper sheets

File Upload

On the **Configuration Settings** menu, click **File Upload** to open the **File Upload** screen.

Figure 6-17 File Upload screen



The **File Upload** command is supported for file types that can be sent directly to the product without first being opened through a software program. Some files can be uploaded to the product, but some cannot.

Documents in the following file formats can be printed by using a command line. That is, they do not need to be opened in a software program that supports the file format (such as the Adobe Acrobat or Acrobat Reader programs for .PDF files), but can be sent directly to the product by using the **File Upload** command.

- HP LaserJet printer command language (.PRN)
- Portable document format (.PDF)
- Postscript (.PS)
- Text (.TXT)

On the **File Upload** screen, click **Choose...** to open a navigation screen. Locate the file you want to upload and click **Open**.

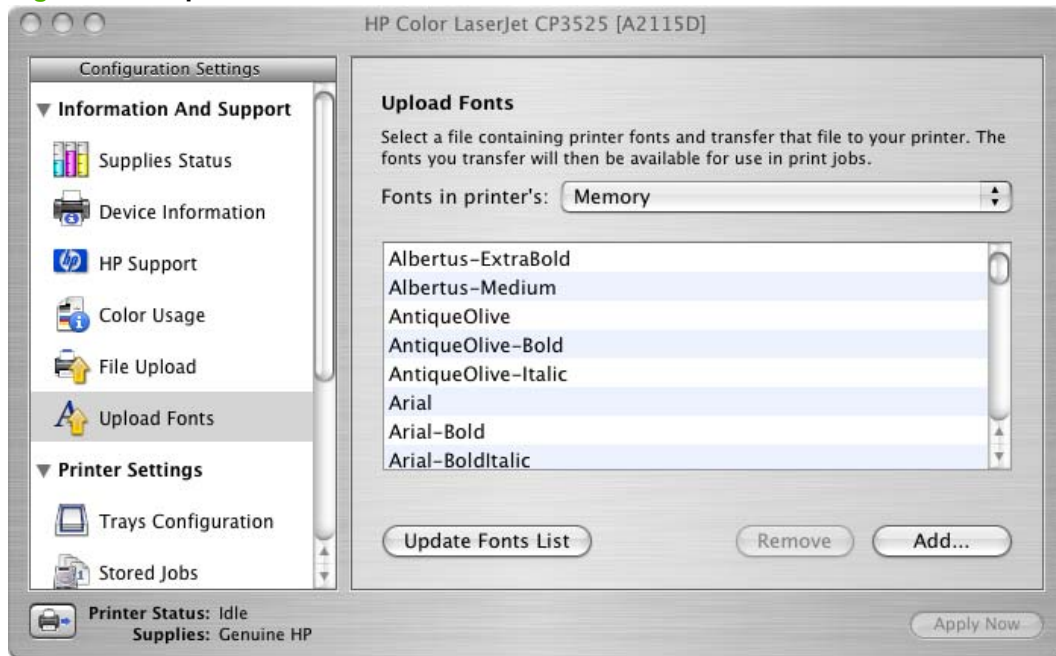
On the **File Upload** screen, click **Display response from the device** to see whether the upload was successful. If the file loads successfully, no message appears.

On the navigation screen, select the file and click **Open**. The file name appears in the **File Upload** screen of the HP Printer Utility. Click **Upload**.

Upload Fonts

In the **Configuration Settings** menu, click **Upload Fonts** to gain access to fonts that you can upload to the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product.

Figure 6-18 Upload Fonts screen



The drop-down menu in the **Upload Fonts** pane has the following options:

- **Memory.** Fonts that are available in the printer memory are listed.
- **Disk.** Select this option to show any fonts that are installed on the printer hard disk or flash disk. By default, no fonts are stored on either of these disks. To upload fonts, select the font name, and then click **Add**.

Remote firmware update by using the HP Printer Utility

Make sure that you have the tools and files that are necessary for the update. You will need the HP Printer Utility and the CP3525FW.RFU file, which is the firmware file for the product. The HP Printer Utility is a software program that is available only for Mac OS X v10.2 and later.

The HP Printer Utility can be found on the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series printing-system software CD-ROM that came with the product. If you do not have the CD-ROM, you can obtain the HP Printer Utility by downloading the latest product installer from www.hp.com/go/cljcp3525_software.

The firmware file (CP3525FW.RFU) can be downloaded from the following Web site:


www.hp.com/go/cljcp3525_firmware

See [Downloading the new firmware to the product on page 276](#) for more information.


After you have the firmware file and the HP Printer Utility, you are ready to begin the update process. Complete the following steps:

1. Open the HP Printer Utility.
2. Select **File Upload**, click **Choose**, browse to firmware upgrade file, and then click **Open**.

3. On the **Update Firmware** screen, click **Update**.

 **NOTE:** You might receive an error message on the screen indicating that the product is offline. Verify that the product is turned on. If it is, ignore the message. The **Updating** screen appears and the update proceeds as expected.

4. The update process can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or the computer. The messages described in the section [Printer messages during the firmware update on page 277](#) appear on the control panel.

 **NOTE:** The product automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel. Do *not* turn off the product or interfere with the update until you see this message.

5. Print a configuration page and verify that the firmware revision number matches the revision of the current update.

Duplex mode

For the HP Color LaserJet CP3525dn and HP Color LaserJet CP3525x product models, the **Configuration Settings** menu includes a **Duplex Mode** setting. Click this setting to open the **Duplex Mode** screen.

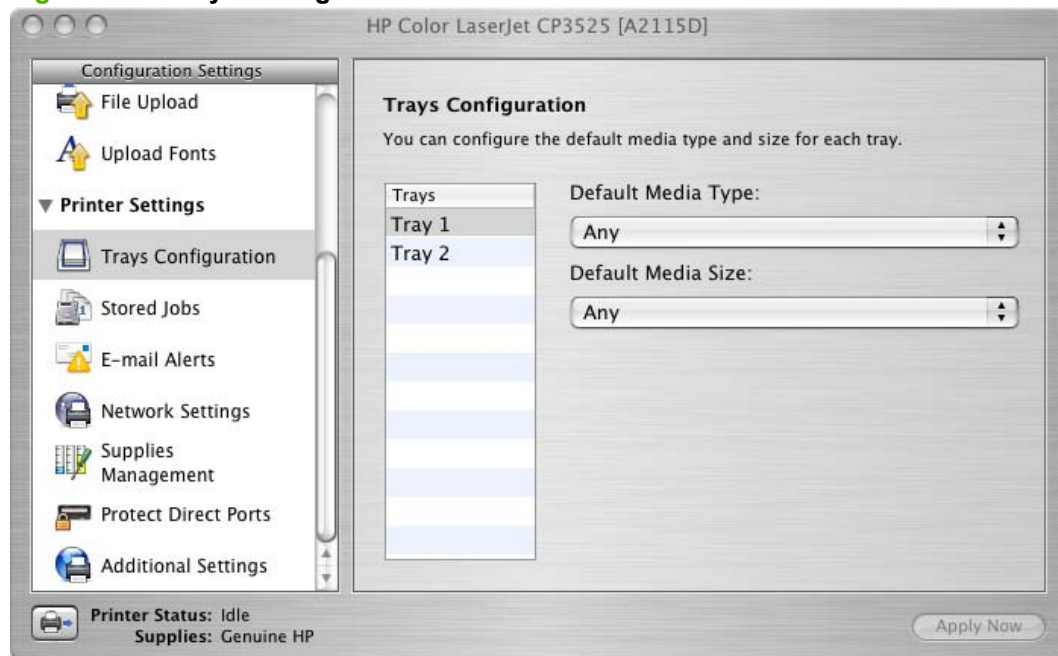
Use the Enable Duplex Mode command to print internal diagnostic and test pages on both sides of the page.

1. Select **Duplex Mode** to open the **Duplex Mode** screen.
2. Select the **Enable Duplex Mode** check box. This box is clear by default.
3. Click **Apply Now** to enable printing on both sides of the page.

Trays Configuration

The **Trays Configuration** screen is shown in the following figure.

Figure 6-19 Trays Configuration screen

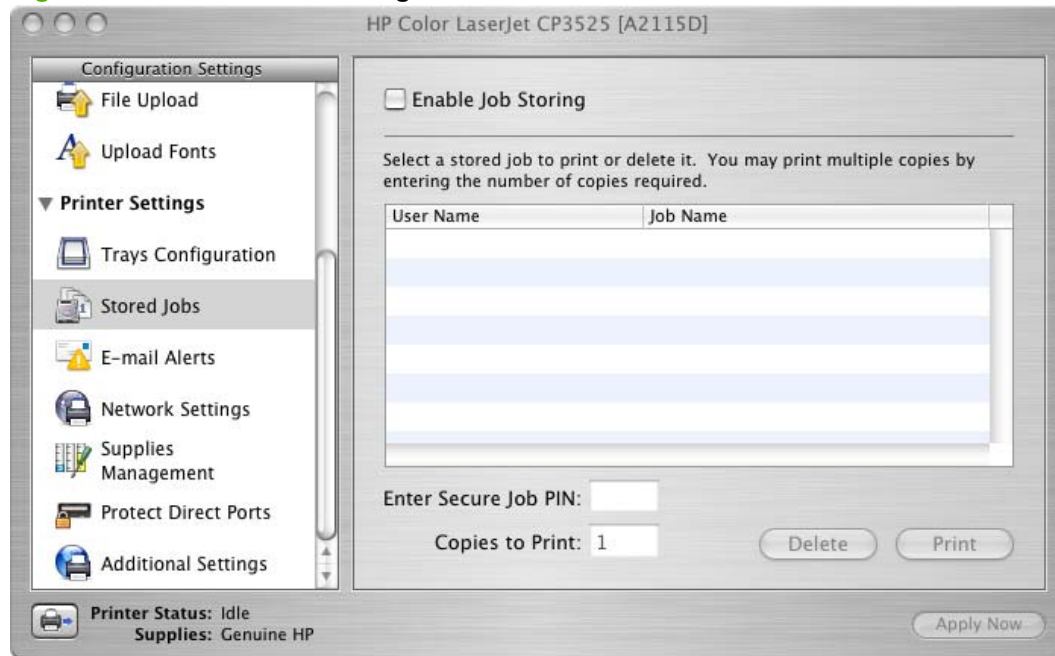


1. Select **Trays Configuration** to change paper size and type for each of the trays installed on your product.
2. To change the paper type, select a tray and then select a different paper type in the **Default Media Type** drop-down menu.
3. To change the paper size, select a tray and then select a different paper size in the **Default Media Size** drop-down menu.
4. Click **Apply Now** to save the settings.

Stored Jobs

Select **Stored Job** to change the **Enable Job Storing** setting. This setting is selected by default. Click to clear the check box to disable the job-storing feature.

Figure 6-20 Enable Job Storing screen



You can type a PIN for your job in the **Enter Secure Job PIN** field.

Select the number of copies in the **Copies to Print** field.

Select a stored job and click **Print** to print the job.

Select a stored job and click **Delete** to delete the job.

E-mail Alerts

Select **E-mail Alerts** to configure the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product to send e-mail notifications to users.

If a user name and password have been set, you might need to obtain them from the IT administrator. For more information, see the *HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series Embedded Web Server User Guide*.

Figure 6-21 E-mail Alerts screen

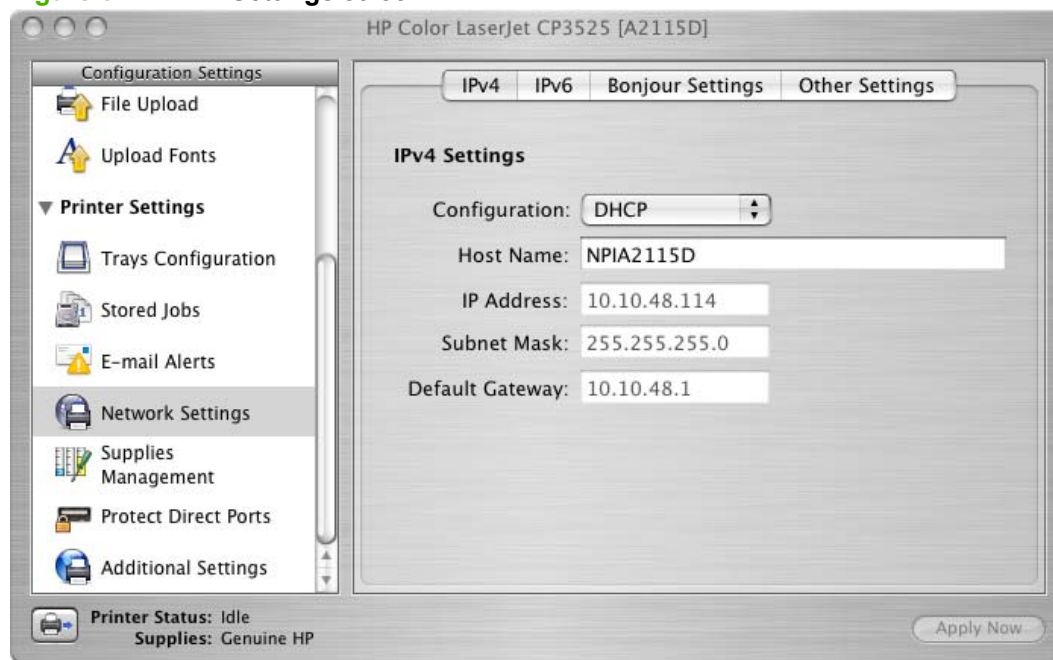


Click **Open E-mail Alerts Settings** to open the HP EWS. The HP EWS opens to the **Setup** screen on the **Alerts** tab, where you can set notifications.

Network Settings

Select **Network Settings** to open the **IP Settings** screen.

Figure 6-22 IPv4 Settings screen



The **Network Settings** screen provides access to **IPv4**, **IPv6**, **Bonjour Settings**, and **Other Settings**.

- **DHCP**
- **BootP**
- **Manual**

You can also use this screen to modify the following settings:

- **Host Name**
- **IP Address**
- **Subnet Mask**
- **Default Gateway**

To save new settings, click **Apply Now**.

To view and change other network settings, click **Other Settings**.

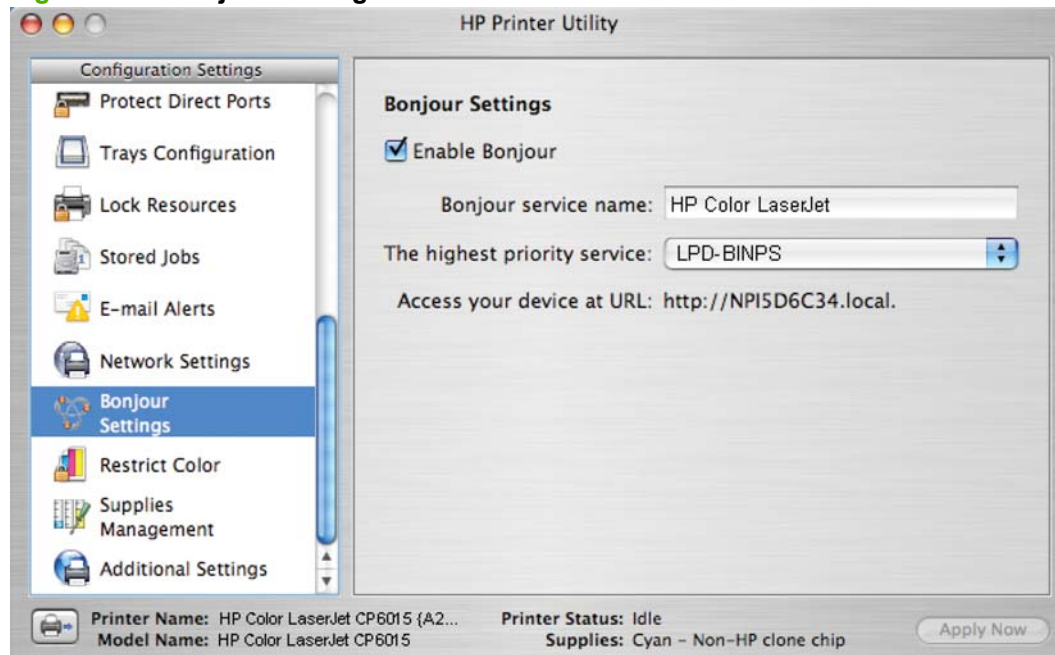
If a user name and password have been set, you might need to obtain them from your IT administrator. For more information, see the *HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series Embedded Web Server User Guide*.

The HP EWS opens to the **Network Settings** screen.

To view and change the Bonjour network settings, click **Bonjour Settings**. Bonjour is enabled by default.

To disable Bonjour, click to clear the **Enable Bonjour** check box and then click **Apply Now**.

Figure 6-23 Bonjour Settings screen



Select **Bonjour Settings** to open the **Bonjour Settings** screen. Bonjour is enabled by default.

The following options are available in the **The highest priority service** drop-down menu:

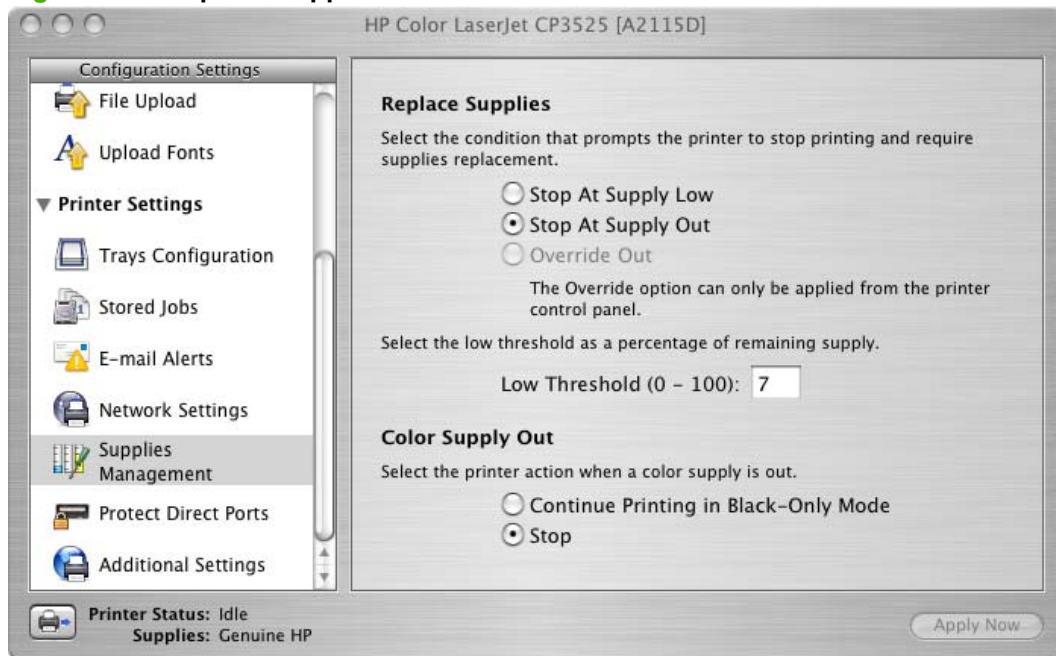
- **Port 9100** (default)
- **IPP**
- **LPD-RAW**
- **LPD-TEXT**
- **LPD-AUTO**
- **LPD-BINPS**

After you select a new setting, click **Apply Now** to save it.

Supplies Management

Click **Supplies Management** in the **Configuration Settings** menu to open the **Replace Supplies** screen.

Figure 6-24 Replace Supplies screen



The settings on this screen prompt the product to stop printing at a certain threshold (a specific number of pages in the tray). By default, the **Stop At Supply Out** setting is selected.

To prompt the product to stop printing at a different threshold, select **Stop at Supply Low** and type a value in the **Low Threshold (0-100)** field. When the number of sheets in the tray reaches this value, the product stops printing.

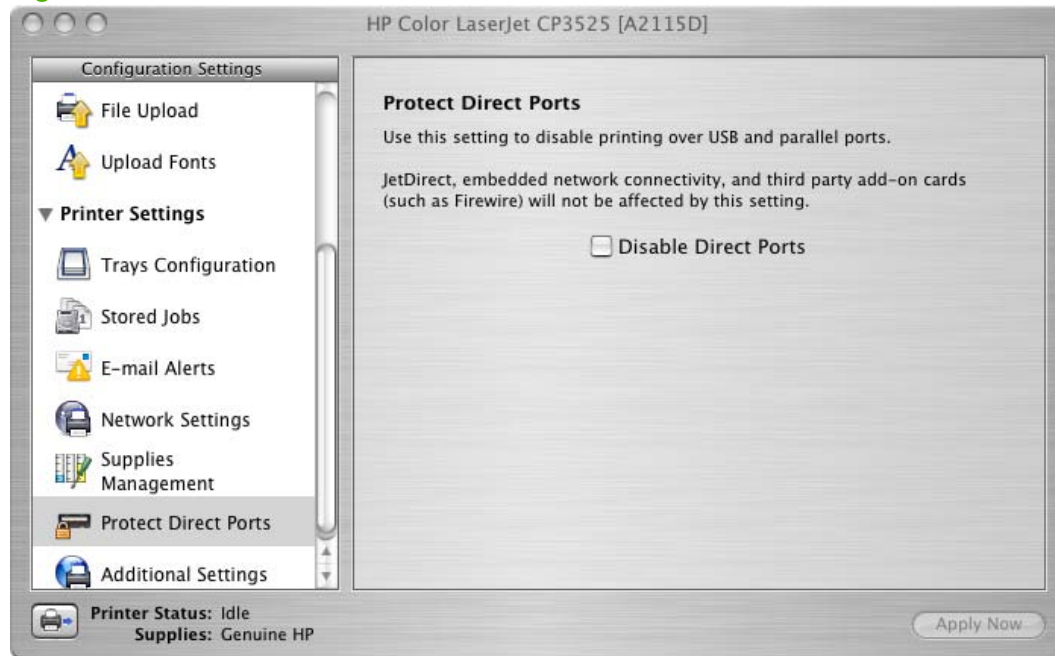
You can also specify the product behavior when the color print cartridges run out. By default, the **Continue Printing in Black-Only Mode** is selected. To prompt the product to stop instead of continuing to print using the black cartridge, select **Stop**.

Click **Apply Now** to save the new settings.

Protect Direct Ports

Use this setting to disable printing over USB and parallel ports. JetDirect, embedded network connectivity, and third-party add-on cards, such as FireWire, will not be affected by this setting.

Figure 6-25 Protect Direct Ports screen



Click **Disable Direct Ports**

Additional Settings

Select **Additional Settings** to gain access to the HP EWS.

Figure 6-26 Additional Settings screen



To open the HP EWS, click **Open Embedded Web Server**.

For information about HP EWS settings, consult the *HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series Embedded Web Server User Guide*.

7 Engineering Details

Introduction

This chapter presents engineering detail for the following topics:

- [Remote firmware update](#)
- [Printing print-ready documents](#)
- [Media attributes](#)

Remote firmware update

The HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product features remote firmware update (RFU) capability. The method for downloading remote firmware updates from the Web site is similar to that used to download the latest printing-system software and print drivers.


The process for remotely upgrading firmware involves three steps:

1. Determine the current level of firmware that is installed on the product.
2. Go to the HP Web site and download the latest firmware to the computer.
3. Download the new firmware to the product.

Determining the current level of firmware

To determine the current level of firmware, view the configuration page. To print a configuration page, follow these instructions.

Print a configuration page

1. Press the **menu** button  to open the menus.
2. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to **INFORMATION**, and then press **OK**.
3. Press the **up arrow** ▲ or the **down arrow** ▼ to scroll to **PRINT CONFIGURATION**.
4. Press **OK** to print the configuration page.

Downloading the new firmware from the HP Web site

The remote firmware update (.RFU) file and an associated readme file are packaged together as a self-extracting .EXE file. For detailed instructions about how to download the .EXE file, go to the following URL:

www.hp.com/go/cljcp3525_firmware

The .EXE file consists of a readme file and the .RFU file.

 **NOTE:** For UNIX systems, the remote firmware update file is a .TAR file.


For Macintosh systems, the remote firmware update file is an .SIT, .DMG, or .ZIP file.

Downloading the new firmware to the product

For support information about downloading new firmware from the Web, go to:

www.hp.com/support/cljcp3525

The product can receive a firmware update when the product is in a **READY** state. The product waits for all of the I/O channels to become idle before performing the update.

 **NOTE:** If the firmware update involves a change in the format of nonvolatile random-access memory (NVRAM), any menu settings that are changed from the default settings will return to default settings. The settings must be changed again if you want them to be different from the defaults. Examples of settings that are affected in this way are tray types, default symbol sets, and Web-access alerts.

The elapsed time for an update depends on the I/O transfer time, as well as the time that it takes for the product to reinitialize. The I/O transfer time depends on a number of things, including the speed of the host computer that is sending the update and the I/O method (parallel or network). The reinitialization time depends on the specific hardware configuration of the product, such as the number of EIO devices installed, the presence of external paper-handling devices, and the amount of memory that is installed.

Finally, any print jobs that are ahead of the RFU job in the queue are printed before the update is processed.

Use one of the methods described in this manual to update the product firmware.

Printer messages during the firmware update

The following table lists the causes and results of possible interruptions to the firmware update.

Table 7-1 Troubleshooting a firmware update

| Cause | Result |
|---|--|
| The job was cancelled from the control panel. | No update has occurred. |
| A break in the I/O stream occurred during send (for example, the parallel cable was removed). | No update has occurred. |
| A power cycle occurred during the RECEIVING UPGRADE process. | No update has occurred. |
| A power cycle occurred during the PERFORMING UPGRADE process. | No update has occurred. Resend the update through a parallel port or USB connection. |
| A power cycle occurred during the INITIALIZING process. | The update has been completed. |

Print jobs that are sent to the product while an update is in process do not interrupt the update.

All HP LaserJet products leave the factory with the most recent firmware version installed. If a remote firmware update fails in a Windows OS, the .RFU file must be resent. For more information, see [Table 7-3 Update messages on page 278](#).

If a remote firmware update fails in a Macintosh OS, contact support from an HP Customer Care Center.

The following table lists possible reasons for the failure of a remote firmware update and the corrective action required for each situation.


Table 7-2 Troubleshooting a firmware update failure

| Reason for firmware update failure | Corrective action |
|--|---|
| The .RFU file is corrupted. | The product recognizes that the file is corrupted and rejects the update. Download the file again and send the new file to the product. Download the file from www.hp.com/go/cljcp3525_firmware . |
| The wrong product is contained in the .RFU file. | The product recognizes the product mismatch and rejects the update. Download the correct file and send it to the product. Download the file from www.hp.com/go/cljcp3525_firmware . |
| The upgrade was interrupted. | See Table 7-3 Update messages on page 278 . |
| A flash hardware failure occurred. | Although it is extremely unlikely, the product might have a hardware failure. Call technical support to address the problem (see the flyer that came with the product for a local telephone support list). |

Three messages appear during a normal update process; a fourth (RESEND UPGRADE) appears only if the update process does not succeed.

Table 7-3 Update messages

| Printer message | Explanation |
|---|--|
| RECEIVING UPGRADE | <p>This message appears from the time the product recognizes the beginning of an .RFU update until the time the product has verified the validity and integrity of the .RFU update.</p> <p>NOTE: If the remote firmware update process is interrupted before the firmware is downloaded (while RECEIVING UPGRADE appears on the control-panel display), the firmware file must be sent again. No message appears on the product control panel to indicate that the update was interrupted.</p> |
| PERFORMING UPGRADE | <p>This message appears while the product is actually reprogramming the firmware.</p> <p>NOTE: If power is lost during the flash DIMM update (while PERFORMING UPGRADE appears on the control-panel display), the update is interrupted and the message RESEND UPGRADE appears on the control-panel display.</p> |
| INITIALIZING | <p>This message appears from the time the product has finished reprogramming the DIMM until the product reinitializes.</p> |
| RESEND UPGRADE | <p>This message appears (in English only) if the firmware update fails because the RFU process is interrupted. It can also occur if firmware for accessories (such as the duplex unit or an output device) fails to update. Perform another update by any means that is supported by the product, regardless of the connection (network, parallel, or USB).</p> |
| RFU LOAD ERROR SEND RFU UPGRADE ON <X> PORT where X = Network or USB | <p>This message appears (in English only) if the firmware update fails because the print-engine firmware is corrupted.</p> <p>NOTE: When this message appears, the firmware upgrade must be sent twice to upgrade all firmware components, even though the product returns to ready after the first upgrade.</p> |
| DOWNLOAD FILE NOW SEND RFU UPGRADE MISMATCH BETWEEN PRODUCT AND FILE | <p>The wrong firmware file was sent to the product. Send the correct firmware file.</p> |

 **NOTE:** To verify that the firmware update succeeded, print a new configuration page from the control panel and verify that the firmware date code on the configuration page has changed.

NOTE: If the product exhibits unexpected behavior after correcting a firmware update, turn the power off, and then back on.

Downloading custom color profiles

Obtain custom color profiles just as you would any other remote-firmware update, using the procedures described in these sections.

Custom color-profile .RFU files are named as follows:

clj####_<what>_<version>.RFU

where:

- ##### is the product-model number of the color table
- <what> is a one-word description of what the table does
- <version> is a two-part version number consisting of a major and a minor value

The custom color-profile .RFU files that are available include:

- A simulation of the color settings for the HP LaserJet 4650 product:
clj4650_.RFU
- A remote-firmware-update file that resets your product to its original state:
reset_.RFU

While every care is taken to ensure a close match with the colors available on the product, several factors can affect the outcome of the match:

- Differences between products within and between a given model line
- paper type
- The age and state of the custom-profile product and the product to which the profile is to be downloaded
- The use or non-use of genuine HP supplies
- Environmental conditions


Remote firmware update by using FTP through a browser


Complete the following steps to update the product firmware by using file transfer protocol (FTP) through a browser.



NOTE: The following instructions can be used in Windows operating systems only.

1. Make note of the TCP/IP address on the EIO-Jetdirect page. The EIO-Jetdirect page is the second page of the configuration page printout. To print a configuration page, see [Determining the current level of firmware on page 276](#)
2. Open a browser window.
3. In the address line of the browser, type `ftp://<IPADDRESS>`, where <IPADDRESS> is the TCP/IP address of your product. For example, if the TCP/IP address is 192.168.0.90, type `FTP://192.168.0.90`
4. Locate the downloaded .RFU file for the product.
5. Drag and drop the .RFU file onto the **PORT1** icon or onto any open space in the browser window.


 **NOTE:** If the **PORT1** icon does not appear as a folder name, you might have to enable folder viewing for FTP sites in your Web browser. In Microsoft Internet Explorer, use the following procedure to enable the folder view.


- a. Select **Tools**, select **Internet Options**, and then select the **Advanced** tab.
 - b. Select the **Enable folder view for FTP sites**.
 - c. Click **OK** to save the setting.
6. The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the product. This can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or the computer. The messages described in the section [Printer messages during the firmware update on page 277](#) appear on the control panel.
-  **NOTE:** The product automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel. Do *not* turn off the product or interfere with the update until you see this message.
7. Print a configuration page and verify that the firmware revision number matches the revision of the current update.

Remote firmware update by using FTP on a direct network connection

If the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 uses a direct network connection, use file transfer protocol (FTP) to update the firmware. Complete the following steps for your operating system.

Windows operating systems

1. Make note of the TCP/IP address on the Embedded Jetdirect page. The HP Embedded Jetdirect page is the second page of the configuration page printout. To print a configuration page, see [Determining the current level of firmware on page 276](#)
-  **NOTE:** Before connecting to the product, make sure that the product is not in Powersave mode. Also make sure that any error messages are cleared from the control-panel display.
2. Open a command window on the computer.
3. Type `ftp <TCP/IP product ADDRESS>`. For example, if the TCP/IP address is 192.168.0.90, type `ftp 192.168.0.90`.
4. Press **Enter** on the keyboard.
5. When prompted for the user name, press **Enter**.
6. When prompted for the password, press **Enter**.
7. Type `bin` at the command prompt.
8. Press **Enter**. The message **200 Type set to I, Using binary mode to transfer files** appears in the command window.
9. Type `put <FILENAME>`, where <FILENAME> is the name of the .RFU file that was downloaded from the Web, including the path. For example, type `put C:\LJ\CP3525FW.RFU`, and then press **Enter**.

 **NOTE:** If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type the following path:

```
put "c:\My Documents\LJ\CP3525fw.rfu"
```

The following series of messages appears in the command window:

200 PORT command successful

150 Opening BINARY mode data connection


226 Ready

226 Processing Job

226 Transfer complete

After these messages appear, a message containing transfer-speed information appears.


10. The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the product. This can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or the computer. The messages described in the section [Printer messages during the firmware update on page 277](#) appear on the control panel.

 **NOTE:** The product automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel. Do *not* turn off the product or interfere with the update until you see this message.

11. Print a configuration page and verify that the firmware revision number matches the revision of the current update.
12. At the command prompt, type `bye` to exit the FTP command.
13. At the command prompt, type `exit` to return to the Windows interface.


Macintosh operating systems

1. Make a note of the TCP/IP address on the EIO-Jetdirect page. The EIO-Jetdirect page is the second page of the configuration page printout. To print a configuration page, see [Determining the current level of firmware on page 276](#).
2. Open a Terminal window on the computer. You can find the Terminal program on the computer hard drive in the Applications/Utilities folder.
3. Type `FTP <TCP/IP product ADDRESS>` For example, if the TCP/IP address is 192.168.0.90, type `FTP 192.168.0.90`
4. Press **Enter** on the keyboard.
5. When prompted for a user name and password, press **Enter**.
6. Type `put <path>`, where `<path>` is the location where the .RFU file was downloaded from the Web, including the path. For example, type `put /username/desktop/CP3525fw.rfu`, and then press **Enter**.

 **NOTE:** If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `put "/user name/desktop/CP3525FW.RFU"`.

To ensure that the entire path to the .RFU file is placed in the `put` command, type `put` and a space, and then drag and drop the .RFU file onto the terminal window. The complete path to the file is automatically placed after the `put` command.

7. The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the product. This can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or the computer. The messages described in the section [Printer messages during the firmware update on page 277](#) appear on the control panel.

 **NOTE:** The product automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel. Do *not* turn off the product or interfere with the update until you see this message.

8. Print a configuration page and verify that the firmware revision number matches the revision of the current update.

Remote firmware update through a local Windows port


If the product is connected through a local port (parallel), then you can send the .RFU file directly to the product by using a `COPY` command from a command prompt or an MS-DOS window. At the command prompt, perform the following steps for your operating system.

Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, or Windows Server 2008


The .RFU file can be sent directly to the product by typing a **copy** command at a command prompt or in an MS-DOS window.

1. At a command prompt, type `copy /b <FILENAME> <PORTNAME>`, where <FILENAME> is the name of the .RFU file (including the path) and <PORTNAME> is the name of the appropriate printer port (such as LPT1). For example, type the following:

```
C:\>copy /b c:\CP3525fw.rfu lpt1
```

 **NOTE:** If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `C:\>copy /b "c:\My Documents\CP3525fw.rfu" lpt1`

2. Press **Enter** on the keyboard.
3. The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the product. This can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or the computer. The messages described in the section [Printer messages during the firmware update on page 277](#) appear on the control panel.

 **NOTE:** The product automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel. Do *not* turn off the product or interfere with the update until you see this message.


4. Print a configuration page and verify that the firmware revision number matches the revision of the current update.
5. At the command prompt, type `exit` to close the command window.

Remote firmware update through a USB port


If the product is connected over a USB connection, follow these instructions:

1. From a command prompt or in an MS-DOS window, type `copy /b <FILENAME>\<COMPUTERNAME>\<SHARENAME>`, where <FILENAME> is the name of the .RFU file (including the path), <COMPUTERNAME> is the name of the computer from which the product is being shared, and <SHARENAME> is the product share name. For example, type the following:

```
copy /b CP3525fw.rfu\\your_computer\clj3525
```

 **NOTE:** If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `C:\>copy /b "c:\My Documents\CP3525fw.rfu" \\your_computer\clj3525`

2. Press **Enter** on the keyboard. The messages described in the section [Printer messages during the firmware update on page 277](#) appear on the control panel. The message **1 file(s) copied** appears on the computer screen.
3. The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the product. This can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or the computer. The messages described in the section [Printer messages during the firmware update on page 277](#) appear on the control panel.

 **NOTE:** The product automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel. Do *not* turn off the product or interfere with the update until you see this message.


4. Print a configuration page and verify that the firmware revision number matches the revision of the current update.

Remote firmware update through a Windows network


If the product is shared on a Windows network, follow these instructions:

1. From a command prompt or in an MS-DOS window, type `copy /b <FILENAME> \<COMPUTERNAME>\<SHARENAME>`, where <FILENAME> is the name of the .RFU file (including the path), <COMPUTERNAME> is the name of the computer from which the product is being shared, and <SHARENAME> is the product share name. For example, type the following:

```
C:\>copy /b c:\CP3525fw.rfu \\your_server\your_computer
```

 **NOTE:** If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `C:\>copy /b "c:\My Documents\CP3525fw.rfu" \\your_server\your_computer`

2. Press **Enter** on the keyboard. The messages described in the section [Printer messages during the firmware update on page 277](#) appear on the control panel. The message **1 file(s) copied** appears on the computer screen.
3. The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the product. This can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or the computer. The messages described in the section [Printer messages during the firmware update on page 277](#) appear on the control panel.


 **NOTE:** The product automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel. Do *not* turn off the product or interfere with the update until you see this message.

4. Print a configuration page and verify that the firmware revision number matches the revision of the current update.

Remote firmware update for UNIX systems


For UNIX systems, any command method that delivers the .TAR file to the product is acceptable, including the following:

1. At the command prompt, type `cp /home/yourmachine/FILENAME /dev/parallel`, where `</home/yourmachine/FILENAME>` is the location of the .TAR file.
2. The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the product. This can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or the computer. The messages described in the section [Printer messages during the firmware update on page 277](#) appear on the control panel.

 **NOTE:** The product automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel. Do *not* turn off the product or interfere with the update until you see this message.

3. Print a configuration page and verify that the firmware revision number matches the revision of the current update.

Remote firmware update by using the LPR command

 **NOTE:** This remote firmware update method is for use in Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Server 2008.

Complete the following steps to update the firmware by using the LPR command.


1. From a command window, type the following:

```
lpr -P <IPADDRESS> -S <IPADDRESS> -o l <FILENAME>
```


OR

```
lpr -S <IPADDRESS> -Pbins <FILENAME>
```

where IPADDRESS can be either the TCP/IP address or the hostname of the product, and where FILENAME is the filename of the .RFU file.

 **NOTE:** The parameter `(-o l)` consists of a lowercase "O", not a zero, and a lowercase "L", not the numeral 1. This parameter sets the transport protocol to binary mode.

2. Press **Enter** on the keyboard. The messages described in the section [Printer messages during the firmware update on page 277](#) appear on the control panel.
3. The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the product. This can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or the computer. The messages described in the section [Printer messages during the firmware update on page 277](#) appear on the control panel.

 **NOTE:** The product automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel. Do *not* turn off the product or interfere with the update until you see this message.

4. Print a configuration page and verify that the firmware revision number matches the revision of the current update.
5. Type `exit` at the command prompt to close the command window.


HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility

Use the HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility to send a firmware file to the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series.

When a firmware file is downloaded from the HP Web site, the .ZIP file contains two files, the HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility self-extracting firmware executable and the readme file that is applicable for the product and firmware revision you are downloading.

The HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility uses the current print path, USB, or network connection to communicate with the device, and does not require the use of the Windows spooler. This utility is only available for Windows operating systems.

Follow these instructions to complete the firmware update.

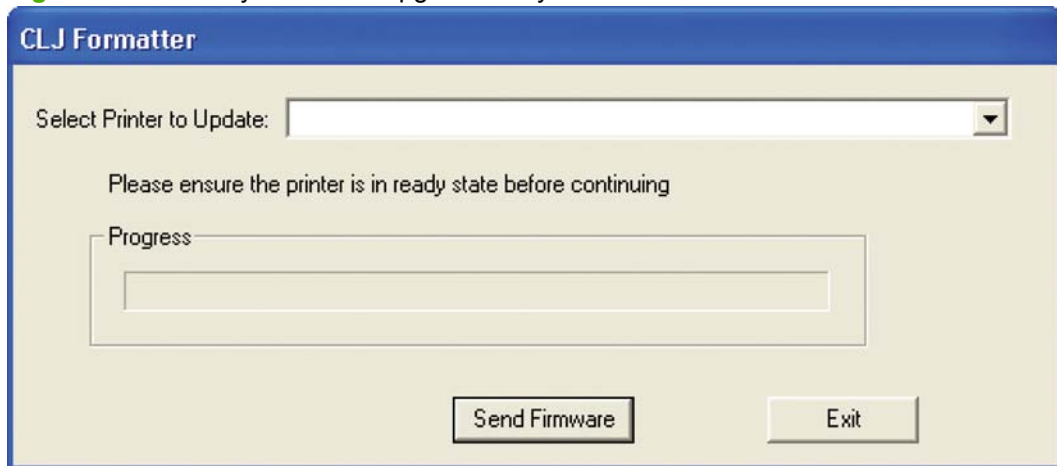
 **NOTE:** In some circumstances, the update might require ten minutes or more to complete.

Do not power cycle the product or the computer during this process or the product may become unstable and or unusable.

1. Download the HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility from the following Web site.
www.hp.com/go/cljcp3525_firmware
2. Double-click and extract the downloaded file to your desktop.
3. Print a configuration page from the device. Under the Device Information heading, note the datecode and version number. These should change after you have successfully completed the firmware update. To print a configuration page, see [Determining the current level of firmware on page 276](#).
4. Verify that the printer is at a **Ready** state.
5. On your computer, locate the HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility file.

6. Double-click the HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility file. The following dialog box appears.

Figure 7-1 HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility screen 1



7. Click the down arrow next to the **Select Printer to Update:** drop-down list and select the device you want to update.


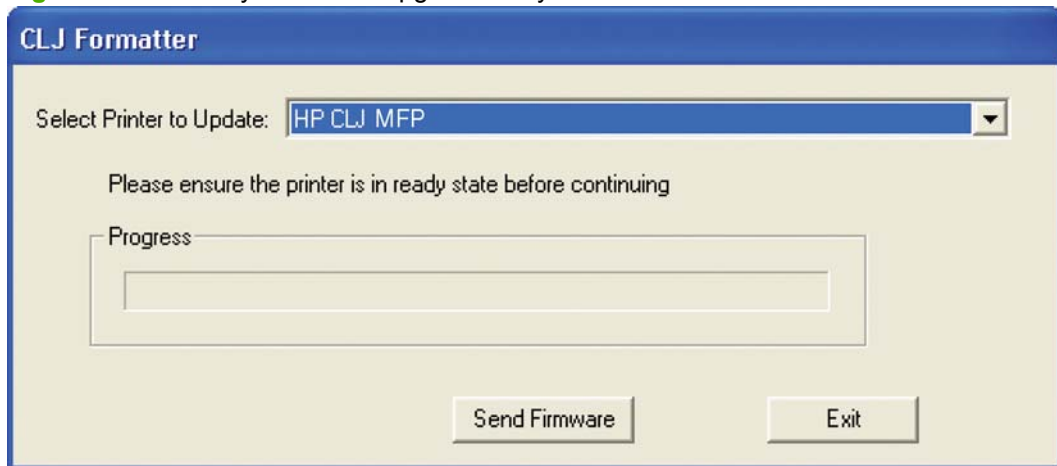
 **NOTE:** If the device you want to upgrade is not in the list, you must install a printer-driver for the device and be able print to the device with the printer-driver before continuing.

Figure 7-2 HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility screen 2



8. Click the **Send Firmware** button to begin the update process.

△ **CAUTION:** Interrupting the firmware upgrade process by turning the printer off and then turning it on again or by attempting to send a print job to the printer might cause the printer to go into an unrecoverable state.

9. The progress bar gradually moves to the right during the firmware upgrade process.


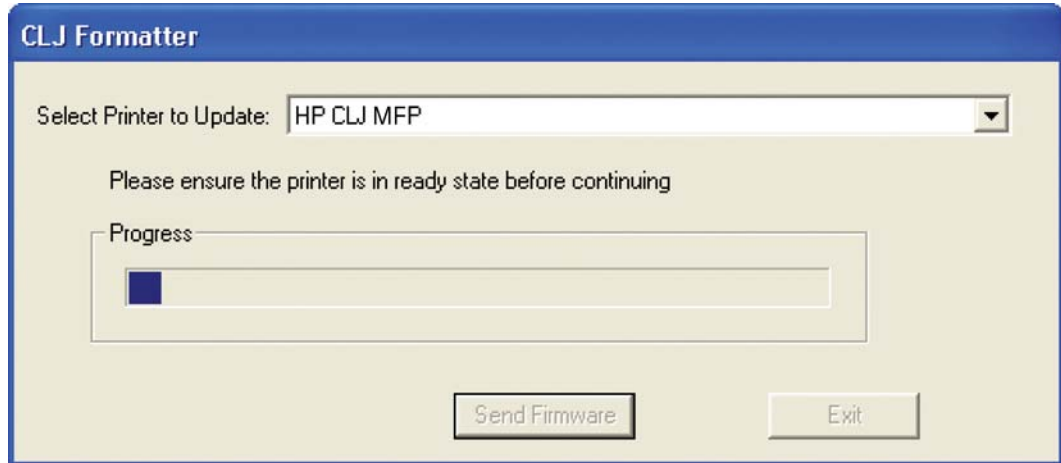
 **NOTE:** The progress bar does not necessarily reflect the actual time needed for the firmware upgrade to complete.

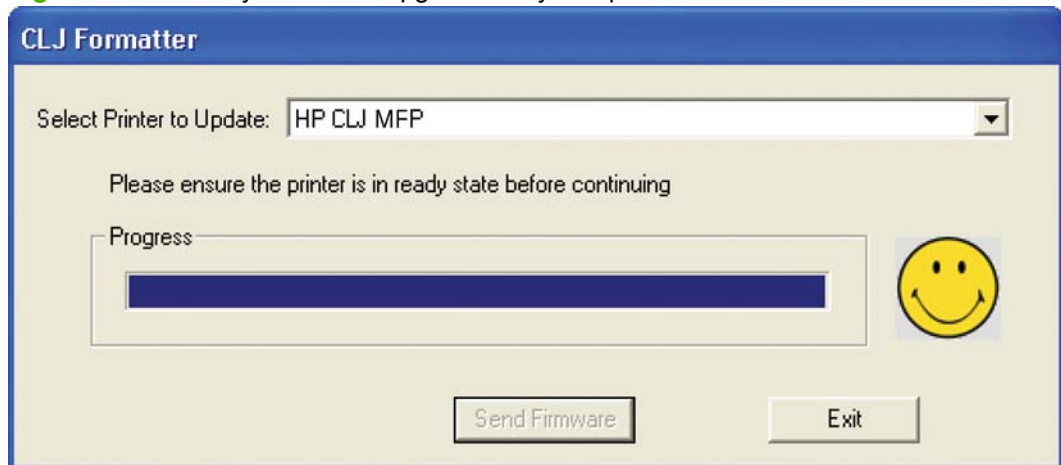
Figure 7-3 HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility progress screen



10. The upgrade process is complete when an icon appears in the lower-right corner of the dialog box. A smiling icon appears when the utility completes successfully. A frowning icon appears when the utility completes unsuccessfully.

If the frowning icon appears, check to make sure the printer is on and at a **Ready** state. Verify that you can send print jobs to the printer, and then try again to perform the firmware update.

Figure 7-4 HP Easy Firmware Upgrade utility complete screen



11. Click **Exit** to close the dialog box.
12. Turn the device off and then turn it on again.
13. When the device is at a **Ready** state, print a Configuration page to verify that the version has changed.

Remote firmware update through HP Web Jetadmin

This procedure requires that you install HP Web Jetadmin V7.8 or later on the computer. Complete the following steps to update a single product through HP Web Jetadmin after downloading the .RFU file from the HP Web site.

1. Start HP Web Jetadmin.
2. Type the TCP/IP address or IP host name of the product in the **Quick Device Find** field, and then click **Go**. The product Status window opens.
3. Open the **Device Management** folder in the drop-down list in the Navigation panel. Navigate to the **Device Lists** folder.
4. Expand the **Device Lists** folder and select **All Devices**. Locate the product that you want to update in the list of products, and click to select it.
5. Locate the drop-down box for **Device Tools** in the upper-right corner of the window. Select **Update Printer Firmware** from the **choose action** list.
6. If the name of the .RFU file is not listed in the **All Available Images** dialog box, click **Browse** in the **Upload New Firmware Image** dialog box and navigate to the location of the .RFU file that you downloaded from the Web at the start of this procedure. If the filename is listed, select it.
7. Click **Upload** to move the .RFU file from your hard drive to the HP Web Jetadmin server.
8. Refresh the browser.
9. Select the .RFU file from the **Printer Firmware Update** drop-down menu.
10. Click **Update Firmware**. HP Web Jetadmin sends the selected .RFU file to the product.
11. The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the product. This can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or the computer. The messages described in the section [Printer messages during the firmware update on page 277](#) appear on the control panel.



NOTE: The product automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel. Do *not* turn off the product or interfere with the update until you see this message.

HP Web Jetadmin V7.8 and later can also be used to perform multiple or unattended installations. Complete the following steps for multiple or unattended installations.

1. Start HP Web Jetadmin.
2. Create a device group. A simple way to do this is to follow these steps:
 - a. Click **Device Management**, and then click **All Devices**.

-or-

 - b. Shift-click to select products that you want to be included in the group, and then click **OK**.

-or-

 - c. When prompted, type a name for the new device group, and then click **OK**.
3. To modify several products in a group, click the group name, and then click **Open**.


4. The drop-down menu for **Device Group Tools** appears on the right side of the window. Scroll if necessary to view it.
5. In the **Device Group Tools** drop-down box, select an action. Type the appropriate information. Click **Return to Device Group** when finished.

Printing print-ready documents

Several methods are available for printing documents independently of the original software program that was used to create the document. Normally, the document is printed by opening the original application and printing it to a file, or is printed by means of a distribution method such as internet downloading. The following print-ready file formats can be sent directly to the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product without first opening the original software program:

- HP LaserJet Printer Control Language (.PRN)
- Portable Document Format (.PDF)
- Postscript (.PS)
- Text (.TXT)

Use one of the following methods to send print-ready files to your product.

 **NOTE:** The examples that are used here are for printing .PDF documents. However, any print-ready file type can be substituted.

Print-ready file printing by using FTP through a browser


Complete the following steps to print print-ready files directly by using FTP through a browser.

 **NOTE:** The following instructions can be used on Windows or Macintosh operating systems.

1. Make note of the TCP/IP address on the Embedded Jetdirect page. The HP Embedded Jetdirect page is the second page of the configuration page printout. To print a configuration page, see [Determining the current level of firmware on page 276](#).
2. Open a browser window.
3. In the address line of the browser, type `ftp://<IPADDRESS>`. For example, if the TCP/IP address of your product is 192.168.0.90, type the following:

```
FTP:// 192.168.0.90
```

4. Locate the print-ready file for the product.
5. Drag and drop the print-ready file onto the **PORT1** icon in the browser window.

 **NOTE:** If the **PORT1** icon does not appear as a folder name, you might have to enable folder viewing for FTP sites in your Web browser. In Microsoft Internet Explorer, use the following procedure to enable the folder view.

1. Select **Tools**, then select **Internet Options**, and then select the **Advanced** tab.
2. Select the **Enable folder view for FTP sites**.
3. Click **OK** to save the setting.

Print-ready file printing by using FTP on a direct network connection

If the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series uses a direct network connection, use file transfer protocol (FTP) to print a print-ready file. Complete the following steps for the operating system:

Windows operating systems

1. Take note of the TCP/IP address on the Embedded Jetdirect page. The HP Embedded Jetdirect page is the second page of the Configuration page printout. To print a configuration page, see [Determining the current level of firmware on page 276](#).
2. Open a command window on the computer.
3. Type `ftp <TCP/IP product ADDRESS>`. For example, if the TCP/IP address is 192.168.0.90, type the following:

```
ftp 192.168.0.90
```

4. Press **Enter** on the keyboard.
5. When prompted for the user name, press **Enter**.
6. When prompted for the password, press **Enter**.
7. Type `bin` at the command prompt.
8. Press **Enter**. The message **200 Types set to I, Using binary mode to transfer files** appears in the command window.
9. Type `put <FILENAME>`, where <FILENAME> is the name of the print-ready file to be printed, including the path. For example, type the following:

```
put C:\LJ\CP3525FW.PDF
```



NOTE: If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `put "c:\My Documents\LJ\CP3525FW.PDF"`

The following series of messages appears in the command window:

200 PORT command successful

150 Opening BINARY mode data connection

226 Ready

226 Processing Job

10. Press **Enter** on the keyboard.
11. The print-ready file prints.
12. At the command prompt, type `bye` to exit the FTP command.
13. At the command prompt, type `exit` to return to the Windows interface.

Macintosh operating systems

1. Make note of the TCP/IP address on the Embedded Jetdirect page. The HP Embedded Jetdirect page is the second page of the configuration page printout. To print a configuration page, see [Determining the current level of firmware on page 276](#).

2. Open a Terminal window on your Macintosh. You can find the Terminal program on the computer in the following location:

System/Applications/Utilities/Terminal

Open the Finder, select **Applications**, and then click **Utilities**. Double-click to open the Terminal utility.

3. Type `FTP <TCP/IP product ADDRESS>`. For example, if the TCP/IP address is 192.168.0.90, type the following:


```
FTP 192.168.0.90
```

4. Press **Enter** on the keyboard.

5. When prompted for a user name and password, press **Enter**.

6. You can drag and drop the firmware file into the Terminal folder (System/Applications/Utilities/Terminal). Alternatively, you can type `put <path>`, where `<path>` is the location where the print-ready file was downloaded from the Web. For example, type the following:

```
put /username/desktop/CP3525FW.PDF
```

 **NOTE:** If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `put "/user name/desktop/CP3525FW.PDF"`

To ensure that the entire path to the print-ready file is placed in the `put` command, type `put` and a space, and then click and drag the print-ready file onto the terminal window. The complete path to the file is automatically placed after the `put` command.

7. Press **Enter**.
8. The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the product. This can take about five minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or computer.
9. The product automatically turns off and on again to activate the update.

Print-ready printing by using a local Windows port

To print directly by using a local Windows port, follow the instructions for your operating system.


Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008, or Windows Vista

The print-ready file can be sent directly to the product by typing a `copy` command at a command prompt or in an MS-DOS window.

1. At a command prompt, type `copy /b <FILENAME> <PORTNAME>`, where `<FILENAME>` is the name of the print-ready file (including the path) and `<PORTNAME>` is the name of the appropriate printer port (such as LPT1). For example, type the following:

```
C:\>copy /b c:\CP3525FW.PDF lpt1
```

2. Press **Enter** on the keyboard.

 **NOTE:** If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `C:\>copy /b "c:\My Documents\CP3525FW.PDF"`. The message **PROCESSING JOB** appears on the control panel, and the job prints.


3. At the command prompt, type `exit` to close the command window.

Print-ready file printing in a Windows network

If the product is shared on a Windows network, complete the following steps.

1. From a command prompt or in an MS-DOS window, type `copy /b <FILENAME> \<COMPUTERNAME>\<SHARENAME>`, where `<FILENAME>` is the name of the print-ready file (including the path), `<COMPUTERNAME>` is the name of the computer from which the product is being shared, and `<SHARENAME>` is the product share name. For example, type the following:

```
C:\>copy /b c:\CP3525FW.PDF \\your_server\sharename
```

 **NOTE:** If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `C:\>copy /b "c:\My Documents\CP3525FW.PDF" \\your_server\sharename`

2. Press **Enter** on the keyboard. The message **PROCESSING JOB** appears on the control panel, and the job prints. The message **1 file(s) copied** appears on the computer screen.

Print-ready file printing in UNIX systems

For UNIX systems, any command method that delivers the print-ready file to the product is acceptable, including the following:

- At the command prompt, type `cp </home/yourmachine/FILENAME> dev/parallel>`, where `</home/yourmachine/FILENAME>` is the location of the print-ready file.

Print-ready file printing by using the LPR command

 **NOTE:** This direct printing method is for use in Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Vista.

Complete the following steps to print a print-ready file by using the LPR command.

1. Make note of the TCP/IP address on the Embedded Jetdirect page. The HP Embedded Jetdirect page is the second page of the configuration page printout. To print a configuration page, see [Determining the current level of firmware on page 276](#).


2. From a command window, type the following:

```
lpr -P <IPADDRESS> -S <IPADDRESS> -o l <FILENAME>
```

or

```
lpr -S <IPADDRESS> -Pbinps <FILENAME>
```

where IPADDRESS can be either the TCP/IP address or the host name of the product, and where FILENAME is the file name of the print-ready file.

 **NOTE:** The parameter (-o l) consists of a lowercase "O", not a zero, and a lowercase "L", not the numeral 1. This parameter sets the transport protocol to binary mode.

3. The file prints, but no messages appear in the command prompt window.
4. Type `exit` at the command prompt to close the command window.

Media attributes

This section includes the following information about paper attributes:

- [Paper sources and destinations](#)
- [Paper-source commands](#)
- [Driver-supported paper sizes](#)
- [Driver-supported paper types](#)
- [Custom paper sizes](#)
- [Paper-type commands](#)

Paper sources and destinations

The following table indicates the standard and optional paper sources and destinations for the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product.

Table 7-4 HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series paper sources and destinations

| | | |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------|---|
| paper sources | 100-sheet multipurpose tray (tray 1) | Standard |
| | 250-sheet paper tray (tray 2) | Standard |
| | 500-sheet paper tray (tray 3) | Standard on the HP Color LaserJet CP3525x; option on all other HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series models |
| paper destinations | 250-sheet output bin | Standard |

Paper-source commands

The PCL 6 Print driver attribute for paper source is `ubyte # MediaSource` or `ubyte_array "string" MediaSource`. See the following table for values of #. For example, `ubyte 4 MediaSource` is the command for Tray 2.

The PCL 5 print driver escape sequence for paper source is `Esc&l#H` (the "l" is a lowercase "L" rather than the numeral "1"). See the following table for values of #. For example, `Esc&l1H` is the command for Tray 2.

 **NOTE:** The HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series products support Tray 1, Tray 2, and Tray 3 only.

Table 7-5 Paper-source commands ¹

| Input source | PCL 5 <code>Esc&l#H</code> | PCL 6 <code>ubyte # MediaSource ²</code> | PCL 6 <code>ubyte_array "string" MediaSource</code> | PostScript <code>/MediaPosition # or null/ ManualFeed true or false</code> |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|--|--|---|
| Automatically select | NA | NA | NA | NA |
| Printer auto select | 7 | 1 | AUTOSELECT | null false |
| Manual feed in tray 1 | 2 | 2 | MANUALFEED | 3 true |

Table 7-5 Paper-source commands (continued)

| Input source | PCL 5 <code>Esc&l#H</code> | PCL 6 <code>ubyte # MediaSource</code> ² | PCL 6 <code>ubyte_array "string" MediaSource</code> | PostScript <code>/MediaPosition # or null/ ManualFeed true or false</code> |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--|--|---|
| Tray 1 (100-sheet) | 4 | 3 | TRAY1 | 3 false |
| Tray 2 (250-sheet) | 1 | 4 | TRAY2 | 0 false |
| Tray 3 (500-sheet) | 5 | 5 | TRAY3 | 1 false |
| Tray 4 ¹ | 8 | 7 | TRAY4 | 4 false |
| Tray 5 ¹ | 9 | None | TRAY5 | 38 false |
| Tray 6 ¹ | NA | None | TRAY6 | 39 false |
| Tray 7 ¹ | NA | None | TRAY7 | 40 false |
| Tray 8 ¹ | NA | None | TRAY8 | 41 false |
| Tray 9 ¹ | NA | None | TRAY9 | 42 false |
| Tray # ³ | 20 to 39 | 8 to 55 | TRAY# (# depends on the number of internal trays) | 5 to 37 false |
| Envelope feeder ¹ | 6 | | ENVELOPETRAY | 2 false |

¹ Trays 4 through 9 and the envelope feeder are not options for the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series products. The options are included in this table only to show what the Universal Print Driver (UPD) generally supports.

² For the string value, you must include the quotation marks around the variable. For example, `ubyte_array "TRAY2" MediaSource` is the PCL 6 command for Tray 2.

³ Refers to optional trays.

Driver-supported paper sizes

The following table lists the features and attributes of various paper listed under the **Size Is:** drop-down menu on the **Paper** tab. The list order can vary, depending on the product and operating system. The list contains all of the following sizes, and might contain sizes from other drivers.

Table 7-6 Supported paper and print paper sizes

| Size | Dimensions | Tray 1 | Tray 2 | Trays 3 |
|-----------|--------------------------------|--------|--------|---------|
| Letter | 216 x 279 mm (8.5 x 11 in) | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ |
| Legal | 216 x 356 mm (8.5 x 14 in) | ✓ | | ✓ |
| A4 | 215 x 305mm (8.5 x 12.0 in) | ✓ | ✓ ✓ | ✓ |
| RA4 | 297 x 210 mm (11.69 x 8.27 in) | ✓ | | ✓ |
| A5 | 148 x 210 mm (5.83 x 8.27 in) | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ |
| B5 (JIS) | 182 x 257 mm (7.17 x 10.12 in) | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ |
| B6 (JIS) | 128 x 182 mm (5.04 x 7.17 in) | ✓ | | |
| Executive | 184 x 267 mm (7.24 x 10.51 in) | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ |
| Statement | 140 x 216 mm (5.5 x 8.5 in) | ✓ | | |

Table 7-6 Supported paper and print paper sizes (continued)

| Size | Dimensions | Tray 1 | Tray 2 | Trays 3 |
|------------|---|--------|--------|---|
| 4x6 | 101.6 x 152.4 mm (4 x 6 in) | ✓ | | ✓ The HP postcard media insert must be installed. |
| 10 x 15 cm | 101.6 x 152.4 mm (4 x 6 in) | ✓ | | ✓ The HP postcard media insert must be installed. |
| 5x7 | 127 x 178 mm (5 x 7 in) | ✓ | | |
| 5x8 | 127 x 203 mm (5 x 8 in) | ✓ | | |
| A6 | 105 x 148 mm (4.13 x 5.83 in) | ✓ | | |
| RA3 | 184 x 260 mm (7.2 x 10.2 in) | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ |
| 16K | 305 x 430 mm (12 x 16.93 in) | | | |
| 16k | 195 x 270 mm (7.7 x 10.6 in) | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ |
| SRA3 | 320 x 450 mm (12.6 x 17.7 in) | | | |
| 16K | 182 x 257 mm (7.17 x 10.12 in) | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ |
| B5 (JIS) | 197 x 273 mm (7.8 x 10.8 in) | | | |
| 8.5 x 13 | 216 x 330 mm (8.5 x 13 in) | ✓ | | ✓ |
| 16k | 98.4 x 148 mm to 216 x 356 mm (3.9 x 5.8 in to 8.5 x 14 in) | ✓ | | |
| Custom | 195 x 270 mm (7.68 x 10.63 in) | | | |
| Custom | 148 x 210 mm to 216 x 297 mm (5.83 x 8.27 in to 8.5 x 11.69 in) | | ✓ | |
| 16K | 148 x 210 mm to 216 x 356 mm (5.83 x 8.27 in to 8.5 x 14 in) | | | ✓ |
| Custom | 184 x 260 mm (7.2 x 10.2 in) | | | |

Table 7-7 Supported envelopes and postcards

| Size | Dimensions | Tray 1 | Trays 2, 3 |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------|--------|------------|
| Postcard (JIS) | 100 x 148 mm (3.9 x 5.8 in) | ✓ | |
| Double Postcard (JIS) | 148 x 200 mm (5.8 x 7.9 in) | ✓ | |
| Envelope Commercial #10 | 105 x 241 mm (4.13 x 9.49 in) | ✓ | |
| Envelope #9 | 100 x 226 mm (3.9 x 8.9 in) | ✓ | |
| Envelope B5 | 176 x 250 mm (6.93 x 9.84 in) | ✓ | |
| Envelope C5 ISO | 162 x 229 mm (6.38 x 9.0 in) | ✓ | |
| Envelope C6 | 114 x 162 mm (4.49 x 6.38 in) | ✓ | |

Table 7-7 Supported envelopes and postcards (continued)

| Size | Dimensions | Tray 1 | Trays 2, 3 |
|------------------|-------------------------------|--------|------------|
| Envelope DL ISO | 110 x 220 mm (4.33 x 8.66 in) | ✓ | |
| Envelope Monarch | 98 x 191 mm (3.9 x 7.5 in) | ✓ | |

Driver-supported paper types

The following table shows the paper types that the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series print-drivers support.

Table 7-8 Tray 1 paper information

| Type | Specifications | Quantity | Driver settings | Paper orientation |
|-------------------------------------|---|--|---------------------------------------|---|
| Paper and cardstock, standard sizes | Range: 60 g/m ² (16 lb) bond to 216 g/m ² (58 lb) bond | Maximum stack height: 10 mm (0.39 in) Equivalent to 100 sheets of 75 g/m ² (20 lb) bond. | Plain or unspecified | Load preprinted or prepunched paper facing down, with the top edge leading into the tray, or toward the back of the product |
| Envelopes | Less than 60 g/m ² (16 lb) bond to 90 g/m ² (24 lb) bond | Up to 10 envelopes | Envelope | Short edge leading, flap toward the front of the product, facing up |
| Labels | Maximum 0.102 mm (0.004 in) thick | Maximum stack height: 10 mm (0.39 in) | Labels | Side to be printed on facing down |
| Transparencies | Minimum 0.13 mm (0.005 in) thick | Maximum stack height: 10 mm (0.6 in) | Transparencies | Side to be printed on facing down |
| Heavy | 0.102 mm (0.004 in) thick | Maximum stack height: 10 mm (0.639 in) | Light glossy, glossy, or heavy glossy | Side to be printed on facing down |
| Glossy | Range: 96 g/m ² (20 lb) bond to 220 g/m ² (58 lb) bond | Maximum stack height: 10 mm (0.39 in) | Light glossy, glossy, or heavy glossy | Side to be printed on facing down |
| Photo paper | 60 g/m ² (16 lb) bond to 220 g/m ² (58 lb) bond | Maximum stack height: 10 mm (0.6 in) | Light glossy, glossy, or heavy glossy | Side to be printed on facing down |

Tray 2 capacity: 25 mm (0.98 in) height or 250 sheets of paper, whichever is less. Supported paper types include: transparencies, glossy paper, glossy film, photo paper, and tough paper. Basis Weight: 60-163 g/m² (16-43 lb).

Table 7-9 Tray 3 paper information

| Type | Specifications | Quantity | Driver settings | Paper orientation |
|-------|---|---|----------------------|---|
| Paper | Range: 60 g/m ² (16 lb) bond to 220 g/m ² (59 lb) bond | Maximum stack height: 56 mm (2.2 in) Equivalent to 500 sheets of 75 g/m ² (20 lb) bond | Plain or unspecified | Load preprinted or prepunched paper facing up, with the top toward the back of the tray or toward the right-hand side of the tray |

Table 7-9 Tray 3 paper information (continued)

| Type | Specifications | Quantity | Driver settings | Paper orientation |
|------------------|---|-----------------------|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Transparencies | Minimum 0.102 mm (.004 in) thick | Maximum stack height: | Transparencies | Side to be printed on facing up |
| Minimum 0.102 mm | | 56 mm (2.2 in) | | |
| Glossy paper | Range: 96 g/m ² (26 lb) bond to 220 g/m ² (59 lb) bond | 56 mm (2.2 in) | Light glossy, glossy, or heavy glossy | Side to be printed on facing up |

Tray 3 capacity: 56 mm (2.2 in) height or 500 sheets of paper, whichever is less. Supported paper types include: labels, transparencies, glossy paper, glossy film, photo paper, and tough paper. Basis Weight: 60-220 g/m² (16-59 lb).



NOTE: For a complete list of specific HP-brand paper that this product supports, go to www.hp.com/sbso/product/supplies.

Custom paper sizes

The following table shows custom paper sizes that are available for the HP Color LaserJet CP3525 Series product.

Table 7-10 HP PCL 6 print driver custom paper sizes

| Tray | Dimensions | Minimum | Maximum |
|---------------------------------|------------|------------------|-------------------|
| Tray 1 (100-sheet multipurpose) | Width | 98.4 mm (3.9 in) | 216 mm (8.5 in) |
| | Length | 148 mm (5.8 in) | 356 mm (14.0 in) |
| Tray 2 (250-sheet) | Width | 148 mm (5.83 in) | 216 mm (8.5 in) |
| | Length | 210 mm (8.27 in) | 297 mm (11.69 in) |
| Trays 3 (500-sheet) | Width | 148 mm (5.83 in) | 216 mm (8.5 in) |
| | Length | 210 mm (8.27 in) | 356 mm (14.0 in) |

Paper-type commands

The PCL 5 print driver escape sequence for paper type is "Esc&n#Wdpapertype", where "n#" is the number of characters in the paper type plus 1. For example, in the sequence "Esc&n6WdPlain", "Plain" has 5 letters plus 1, for a total of 6.

Table 7-11 paper-type commands

| Esc& | n# | Wd | Paper type |
|------|----|----|---------------------------|
| Esc& | 6 | Wd | Plain |
| Esc& | 11 | Wd | Preprinted |
| Esc& | 11 | Wd | Letterhead |
| Esc& | 13 | Wd | Transparency ¹ |

Table 7-11 paper-type commands (continued)

| Esc& | n# | Wd | Paper type |
|------|----|----|------------------------|
| Esc& | 11 | Wd | Prepunched |
| Esc& | 7 | Wd | Labels |
| Esc& | 5 | Wd | Bond |
| Esc& | 9 | Wd | Recycled |
| Esc& | 6 | Wd | Color |
| Esc& | 6 | Wd | Light |
| Esc& | 13 | Wd | Interpaperte |
| Esc& | 6 | Wd | Heavy |
| Esc& | 12 | Wd | Extra Heavy |
| Esc& | 11 | Wd | Cardstock ² |
| Esc& | 6 | Wd | Rough |
| Esc& | 7 | Wd | Glossy |
| Esc& | 12 | Wd | Tough Paper |
| Esc& | 9 | Wd | Envelope |

¹ You must spell out the word "Transparency" in the string, although it is abbreviated as TRNSPRNCY on the control panel.

² The correct command for cardstock is "Esc&n11WdCard Stock", with a space between the "d" and the "S", and with an uppercase "S".

Index

Symbols/Numerics

500-sheet paper and heavy media tray
models including 6

A

accessibility
documentation 16
accessories, automatic configuration 27
ADA
compliance 16
Add Printer installation 72
Add Printer Wizard, detailed install
existing port for a direct connection, using 73
print server connection 84
TCP/IP port for direction connection, creating 80
administrator
documentation 18
Adobe Acrobat Reader
printing PDF files without 290
viewing documentation 15
Advanced Installation
choosing 23
alerts, e-mail
Macintosh 268
Alternative Letterhead Mode
supported products 125
Americans with Disabilities Act
compliance 16
Apple Mac OS
see Macintosh OS 25
autoconfiguration, driver support for 27
autoconfiguration, Enterprise
about 27
Windows support 28
autorun CD, Windows 23

B

Back button, Windows installation
dialog boxes 104
bidirectional communication
about 27
Enterprise
AutoConfiguration 27
bins
capacities 4
blank or preprinted pages
options 142
booklet printing
Booklet Layout settings 156, 215

C

Cancel button, Windows installation
dialog boxes 104
capacity
output bins 4
cardstock, paper type
commands 300
CD
directory structure,
Macintosh 245
directory structure,
Windows 9
documentation 15, 24
installer, Windows printing-system software 22
languages 9
Macintosh printing-system software installation 245
CD-ROM
installing Windows printing-system software 72
chapter separator pages 142
CHM files
viewing 15

Color

Color Options settings 168, 227
Color Themes settings 171, 230
Custom Profile setting 171, 231
Default (sRGB) setting 171, 230
features, print drivers 167, 226
Neutral Gray settings 170, 229
None 171
Photo (Adobe RGB 1998) setting 171, 230
Photo (sRGB) setting 171, 230
Vivid setting 171
color
change default settings, manually 168, 227
Edge Control settings 170, 229
enable access 19
fine-tune default settings 168, 227
Halftone setting 170, 229
PANTONE color profiles 37
printing settings, controlling 34
restricting printing 34
track usage 19
color printing
access and usage 19
ICC profiles 36
Pantone color profiles 37
Color Usage log, Macintosh 263

- command-line printing,
 - Windows 290
- common installer, features 25
- configurations, models 6
- connectivity
 - bidirectional communication support 27
- connectivity features 4
- constraint messages
 - print drivers 120, 187
- continuous export 32
- copies
 - Quick Copy setting 163, 222
- covers
 - settings 140
- custom paper types
 - adding 140

D

- DDU
 - see HP Driver Deployment Utility 31, 62
- default printer, setting 114
- device connection
 - installation 99
- Device Status screen
 - EWS 174
- diagnostics
 - troubleshoot 173, 232
- dialog boxes, printing-system
 - software installation
 - Mac OS X 246
- direct printing
 - FTP, Windows 290
 - local port, Windows 292
 - LPR 293
 - networks, Windows 293
 - UNIX 293
- direct-connect installation 72
- directory structure, software CD
 - Macintosh 245
 - Windows 9
- disabling
 - driver features 32
- documentation
 - accessibility 16
 - administrator 18
 - availability by operating system 15

- color printing access and
 - usage 19
- embedded web server 19
- file formats 15
- HP driver preconfiguration 19
- HP Embedded Web Server User Guide 19
- HP Jetdirect 19
- HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide 19
- install notes 17
- languages 13
- user guide 16
- viewing 15, 24
- download
 - firmware 276
- drivers
 - accessory configuration 27
 - Add Printer installation 72
 - Automatic Configuration
 - setting 179, 241
 - continuous export feature 32
 - diagnostics 33
 - Enterprise
 - AutoConfiguration 27
 - HP Driver Preconfiguration
 - support 32
 - HP Driver Preconfiguration User Guide 19
 - included 25
 - languages 11
 - license agreement,
 - installation 89
 - Linux OS 8
 - lockable features 32
 - network preconfiguration 30
 - Point and Print installation 94
 - UNIX OS 8
 - Update Now, bidirectional
 - communication 179, 241
- drivers, install
 - license agreement 98
- duplexing
 - supported products 130
- Tray 3 180

E

- e-mail alerts
 - Macintosh 268

- Easy Printer Care
 - about 38
 - access 38
 - Device Management pane 52
 - Find Other Printers 40
 - My HP Printers screen 45
 - Support tab 51
 - Troubleshooting and Help pane 53
- embedded Web server 54
- embedded web server
 - documentation 19
- Enterprise AutoConfiguration
 - about 27
 - Novell NetWare operating systems supported 29
 - Windows operating systems supported 28
- envelopes, paper type
 - commands 300
- escape sequences
 - paper source 295
 - paper type 299
- Ethernet cards 4
- exporting driver parameters 32

F

- features 3, 6
- File Upload, Macintosh 264
- Find Other Printers, Easy Printer Care 40
- firmware
 - determine current level 276
 - download 276
 - FTP updates, Windows 280
 - HP Web Jetadmin
 - updates 288
 - LPR command updates 284
 - Macintosh updates 265, 281
 - messages during update 277
 - remote update,
 - Macintosh 265
 - troubleshoot updates 277
 - UNIX updates 284
 - update remotely 276
 - upload, HP Printer Utility 265
 - verifying installation 278

- Windows network
 - updates 283
- Windows, local port
 - update 282
- fonts
 - included 4
 - install/remove external
 - fonts 176, 236
 - Macintosh 244
 - Send True Type as Bitmap, print
 - drivers 124, 192
 - supported by Windows 56
 - True Type, print drivers 123, 190
 - Upload Fonts, HP Printer
 - Utility 265
 - upload, Configuration Settings
 - menu 265
 - Windows 58
- FTP
 - direct printing, Windows 290
 - Windows firmware
 - updates 280

G

guides. See documentation

H

- heavy paper, paper type
 - commands 300
- help
 - Macintosh 244
 - print drivers 120, 187
 - What's this? 187
- Help button, Windows installation
 - dialog boxes 104
- HP Driver Deployment Utility
 - common problems 69
- HP Driver Deployment Utility (DDU) 31, 62
- HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check
 - Tool 33
- HP Driver Installation Utility (HPDIU)
 - device connection
 - options 109
 - for advanced installations 105
- HP Driver Preconfiguration
 - HP Driver Configuration
 - Editor 30

- HP Web Jetadmin Driver
 - Configuration Plugin 31
 - OS and drivers supported 32
 - support guide 32
- HP Easy Printer Care
 - see Easy Printer Care 38
- HP Embedded Web Server
 - accessing from HP Easy Printer
 - Care 53
 - HP Printer Utility, accessing
 - from 272
 - Macintosh support 244
- HP Embedded Web Server User
 - Guide
 - accessing 54
- HP Jetdirect
 - documentation 19
- HP Jetdirect print server
 - models including 6
- HP PCL 5 Universal Print Driver
 - HP Driver Preconfiguration
 - support 32
 - included 25
- HP PCL 6 Print Driver
 - features 117
- HP Driver Preconfiguration
 - support 32
 - included 25
 - settings 117
 - supported operating
 - systems 25
- HP Printer Utility for Macintosh
 - firmware update 265
- HP Printer Utility, Macintosh
 - about 260
 - access 260
 - Color Usage log 263
 - Device Information 262
 - E-mail Alerts 268
 - Embedded Web Server
 - access 272
 - File Upload 264
 - HP Support 262
 - Network Settings 269
 - Supplies Management 271
 - Supplies Status 261
 - trays configuration 267
 - Upload Fonts 265

- HP PS Universal Print Driver
 - HP Driver Preconfiguration
 - support 32
 - included 25
- HP PS Universal Print Driver and
 - PCL 5 Universal Print Driver
 - features 183
 - settings 183
- HP PS Universal Print Driver and
 - PCL Universal Print Driver
 - supported operating
 - systems 25
- HP Web Jetadmin
 - downloading 24
 - firmware updates 288
- HTM files
 - viewing 15

I

- ICC profiles. See International
 - Color Consortium profiles
- ICM. See Image Color
 - Management
- Image Color Management
 - color graphics printing 123, 190
 - enabling 123
- Incompatible Print Settings
 - messages. See constraint
 - messages
- input trays. See trays
- install notes 17
- installation
 - Add Printer 72
 - additional options 114
 - advanced 105
 - component languages 12
 - device connection 99
 - dialog boxes, Mac OS X 246
 - HP Driver Installation
 - Utility 96
 - Macintosh printing-system
 - software 245
 - Point and Print 94
 - troubleshooting
 - Macintosh 257
 - Windows printing-system
 - software 72

- installers
 - common, features 25
 - Windows 22
- interface ports
 - included 4
- International Color Consortium
 - profiles
 - viewing 36

J

- Jetadmin. *See* HP Web Jetadmin
- Jetdirect Administrator's Guide 19
- Jetdirect print server
 - models including 6
- job name
 - create 224
 - replace 224
- job name settings 224
- Job storage
 - Macintosh 268
- job storage mode
 - personal job 163, 222
 - proof and hold 162, 221

L

- LAN-connector 4
- languages
 - CD 9
 - driver 11
 - installer component 12
- languages, printer 4
- Linux OS
 - driver availability 8
- local port command line printing, Windows 292
- localized CD 9
- lockable features, drivers 32
- LPR commands
 - firmware updates 284
 - printing PDF files 293

M

- Macintosh OS
 - Color Usage log 263
 - components, software 244
 - Device Information 262
 - dialog boxes, Mac OS X printing-system software
 - installation 246
 - direct printing 290

- directory structure, software
 - CD 245
- e-mail alerts 268
- File Upload command 264
- firmware upgrades 265, 281
- fonts supported 244
- HP EWS 244
- HP Printer Utility 260
- install notes 244
- Macintosh operating systems 281
- network settings 269
- network setup 245
- online help 244
- PDEs 244
- printing-system software
 - installation 245
- setting up products with Mac OS X 255
- software availability 259
- stored jobs 268
- Supplies Management 271
- supplies status 261
- supported 7
- trays configuration 267
- troubleshooting setup 257
- uninstalling printing-system software 257
- Upload Fonts 265
- manuals. *See* documentation
- memory
 - included 6
- messages, constraint
 - print drivers 120, 187
- model scripts, UNIX 8
- models, features 6
- mopy 180, 240
- multiple-original print. *See* mopy
- My HP Printers screen
 - Easy Printer Care 45

N

- networks
 - color printing, restricting 34
 - connectivity features 4
 - direct printing 293
 - firmware updates 283
 - HP Driver Preconfiguration 30
 - HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide 19

- Macintosh settings 269
- Macintosh setup 245
- Point and Print installation 94
- print servers included 6
- Web Jetadmin,
 - downloading 55
- Windows printing-system
 - software installation 88
- Novell Netware operating systems
 - Enterprise AutoConfiguration support 29

O

- operating systems
 - Enterprise AutoConfiguration support 28
 - supported 7
- Options Cannot be Combined messages. *See* constraint messages
- order supplies 47
- ordering supplies 24
- OS. *See* operating systems
- output bins
 - capacities 4

P

- package creation
 - suppress user error messages 66
- pages
 - blank or preprinted 141
- Pantone
 - color profile 37
- paper
 - adding custom types 140
 - Alternative Letterhead Mode 125
 - custom sizes 137, 299
 - duplex binding settings, print drivers 155, 214
 - envelopes and postcards 297
 - orientation 158, 217
 - settings, print drivers 135, 197
 - size limits 199
 - source commands 295
 - source options 199
 - source setting 138
 - sources and destinations 295

- Tray 1 298
- Tray 3 298
- type commands 299
- type options 199
- type setting 138
- types and sizes
 - supported 295
- parallel port direct-connect
 - installation 72
- PCL files, command-line
 - printing 290
- PDEs (Printer Dialog Extensions) 244
- PDF files
 - command-line printing 290
 - LPR commands, printing 293
 - Macintosh, File Upload
 - command 264
 - viewing 15
- personal job option
 - job storage 163, 222
- PIN
 - Personal Job setting 163, 222
 - PIN to print setting 164, 223
- Point and Print installation,
 - Windows printing-system
 - software 94
- ports
 - included 4
- PPDs, Macintosh
 - troubleshooting 257
- preconfiguration, driver 30
- print driver
 - Page Order settings 216
 - supported operating
 - systems 25
- print drivers
 - About tab contents 182, 242
 - access 118, 185
 - Add Euro Currency Symbol to
 - PostScript Fonts, PS Universal
 - Print Driver 239
 - Advanced Printing Features
 - settings, print drivers 124, 190
 - Advanced tab content 122, 188
 - Allow Manual Duplexing setting,
 - Device Settings tab 180
 - Alternative Letterhead Mode,
 - Advanced tab 125
 - Automatic Configuration setting,
 - Device Settings tab 179, 241
 - Automatic settings, Color
 - tab 168, 227
 - available PostScript memory,
 - PS Universal Print
 - Driver 237
 - Booklet Layout settings,
 - Finishing tab 156, 215
 - collation settings 181, 240
 - Color Options settings, Color
 - tab 168, 227
 - Color tab contents 167, 226
 - Color Themes settings, Color
 - tab 171, 230
 - continuous export 32
 - Convert Gray Graphics to
 - PostScript Gray, PS Universal
 - Print Driver 238
 - Convert Gray Text to PostScript,
 - PS Universal Print
 - Driver 238
 - Copy Count settings, Advanced
 - tab 123, 189
 - custom paper sizes 299
 - device services, Services
 - tab 174
 - Device Settings tab
 - content 175, 234
 - Document Options setting,
 - Advanced tab 123, 190
 - Document Options settings,
 - Finishing tab 152, 211
 - document preview image 131, 143, 147, 158, 172, 195, 202, 206, 217, 231
 - duplex unit, Device Settings
 - tab 180
 - Effects tab content 145, 204
 - Envelopes setting, Printing
 - Shortcuts tab 131
 - Factory Defaults setting, Printing
 - Shortcuts tab 131, 195
 - Finishing tab contents 152, 211
 - Flip Pages Up setting, Finishing
 - tab 155, 214
 - Font Substitution Table settings,
 - Device Settings tab 176, 236
 - Form to Tray Assignment
 - setting, Device Settings
 - tab 175, 235
 - General Everyday Printing
 - setting, Printing Shortcuts
 - tab 127
 - General settings, Color
 - tab 170, 229
 - Graphic setting, Advanced
 - tab 123, 190
 - Graphics Mode - PCL 5
 - Universal Print Driver
 - only 192
 - Halftone setting, Color
 - tab 170, 229
 - Help system 120, 187
 - ICM options, Advanced
 - tab 123, 190
 - incompatible print settings
 - messages 120
 - installable options, Device
 - Settings tab 179, 239
 - Internet Services options,
 - Services tab 173, 232
 - job name settings, Job Storage
 - tab 165, 224
 - job notification options, Job
 - Storage tab 164, 223
 - Job Separator setting, Device
 - Settings tab 180
 - Job Storage Mode settings, Job
 - Storage tab 162, 221
 - job storage settings, Job
 - Storage tab 165, 224
 - Job Storage tab contents 160, 219
 - Job Timeout, PS Universal Print
 - Driver 239
 - JPEG Passthrough - PS
 - Universal Print Driver
 - only 240
 - Layout Options setting,
 - Advanced tab 125, 192
 - Manual settings, Color
 - tab 168, 227

- Maximum Font Size to Download as Outline, PS Universal Print Driver 239
- Minimum Font Size to Download as Outline, PS Universal Print Driver 239
- mopier mode, Device Settings tab 180, 240
- Neutral Grays settings, Color tab 170, 229
- Options Cannot be Combined messages 187
- Orientation settings, Finishing tab 158, 217
- Output Protocol, PS Universal Print Driver 238
- Page Order settings, Finishing tab 157
- Pages per Sheet setting, Finishing tab 157, 216
- Paper Options settings, Paper/Quality tab 135, 197
- paper source commands 295
- Paper source setting, Paper/Quality tab 138, 199
- paper supported 295
- paper type commands 299
- Paper type setting, Paper/Quality tab 138, 199
- Paper/Output settings, Advanced tab 122, 189
- Paper/Quality tab contents 134, 196
- Personal Job setting, Job Storage tab 163, 222
- PIN to print setting, Job Storage tab 164, 223
- PostScript Output Options, Advanced tab - PS Universal Print Driver only 191
- PostScript Passthrough - PS Universal Print Driver only 240
- Print All Text as Black setting, Advanced tab 124, 192
- Print on Both Sides settings, Finishing tab 153, 212
- Print Optimizations setting, Advanced tab 124, 191

- Print Quality settings, Paper/Quality tab 144, 203
- Printer Features setting, Advanced tab 124, 192
- printer hard disk, Device Settings tab 180
- Printing Preferences tab, driver access 118, 185
- Printing Shortcuts tab contents 126, 194
- Proof and Hold setting, Job Storage tab 162, 221
- Properties tab, driver access 119, 186
- PS Universal Print Driver Device Settings 237
- Quick Copy setting, Job Storage tab 163, 222
- Raster Compression feature, Advanced tab 124
- Resizing Options settings, Effects tab 145, 204
- Send Ctrl-D After Each Job, PS Universal Print Driver 238
- Send Ctrl-D Before Each Job, PS Universal Print Driver 238
- Send True Type as Bitmap setting, Advanced tab 124, 192
- Services tab content 173, 232
- status message, Job Storage tab 162, 221
- Stored Job setting, Job Storage tab 163, 222
- tray 3, Device Settings tab 180
- True Type font settings, Advanced tab 123, 190
- Two-sided (Duplex) Printing setting, Printing Shortcuts tab 130
- user guide print settings, Printing Shortcuts tab 195
- user name settings, Job Storage tab 164
- version numbers 26
- Wait Timeout, PS Universal Print Driver 239

- Watermarks settings, Effects tab 147, 206
- What's this? Help 120, 187
- print job
 - delete stored job 166, 225
 - hard disk, job storage 180
 - job name 224
 - job name settings 165
 - job separator 180
 - job storage 180
 - Personal Job setting 163, 222
 - Proof and Hold setting 162
 - Quick Copy setting 163, 222
 - release stored job 166, 225
 - Stored Job setting 163, 222
 - user name 164
- print on both sides
 - automatically 153
 - manually 154
 - supported products 130, 212
 - Tray 3 180
- print pages on different paper settings 142
- print-ready files
 - command-line printing 290
 - printing by FTP 290
 - printing by local Windows port 292
 - printing by Windows network 293
 - printing in UNIX systems 293
 - printing with LPR command 293
- Printer Dialog Extensions (PDEs) 244
- printer languages 4
- printer, setting default 114
- printing
 - direct in a Windows network 293
 - direct in UNIX 293
 - direct using FTP 290
 - direct using local Windows port 292
 - direct using LPR command 293
 - user guide 17

- Printing Shortcuts tab
 - paper size options 128
 - paper type options 127
- printing-system software
 - about 7
 - availability 8
 - installation 89
 - installation options 23
 - installation, Macintosh 245
 - license agreement,
 - installation 89
 - Macintosh 244
 - Macintosh, availability 259
 - requirements 7
 - software CD, Windows 22
- printing-system software, install
 - license agreement 98
- proof and hold 162, 221
- PS emulation fonts 58
- PS files, command-line
 - printing 290
- PS Universal Print Driver 183

R

- raster compression
 - HP PCL 5 Universal Print
 - Driver 192
- Recommended Installation
 - choosing 23
- regional versions, CD 9
- remote firmware updates
 - about 276
 - determine current firmware
 - level 276
 - downloading 276
 - FTP, Windows 280
 - HP Web Jetadmin 288
 - LPR commands 284
 - Macintosh 265, 281
 - messages 277
 - troubleshoot 277
 - UNIX 284
 - verifying installation 278
 - Windows network 283
 - Windows, using local port 282
- RFU. *See* remote firmware updates
- RTF files
 - viewing 15

S

- screen-readable
 - documentation 16
- security features 5
- settings
 - continuous export 32
 - locking 32
- software
 - embedded Web server 54
- software license agreement 89, 98
- Special Pages
 - covers 140
- sRGB
 - Vivid (sRGB) 230
- standard output bin
 - capacity 4
- status
 - Macintosh supplies 261, 271
- storage, job
 - Macintosh 268
- supplies
 - Macintosh status 261, 271
 - order 47
 - ordering 24
- Support tab, HP Printer
 - Utility 262
- system requirements
 - printing-system software 7

T

- TCP/IP port creation 80
- text files, command-line
 - printing 290
- transparencies, paper type
 - commands 300
- Tray 1
 - paper information 298
- Tray 3
 - paper information 298
- trays
 - Alternative Letterhead
 - Mode 125
 - duplex unit 180
 - included 6, 295
 - Macintosh configuration 267
 - paper source commands 295
 - paper type commands 299
 - specify paper size 175, 235
 - tray 3 180

- troubleshoot
 - diagnostics 173, 232
 - firmware upgrades 277
 - HP driver Diagnostic Printer
 - Check Tool 33
- troubleshooting
 - Macintosh setup 257
- TrueType fonts included 4
- tutorial
 - CD tutorial 18
- TXT files, command-line
 - printing 290
- typefaces
 - included 4

U

- uninstall
 - products 115
- uninstallation
 - Macintosh printing
 - system 257
- universal print drivers
 - PCL 5 183
 - PS 183
- UNIX OS
 - direct printing 293
 - driver availability 8
 - print-ready printing 293
 - remote firmware update 284
- Update Now feature
 - steps to activate 29
- updating firmware remotely. *See* remote firmware update
- Upload fonts
 - Configuration Settings
 - menu 265
- USB direct-connect
 - installation 72
- user guide
 - HP Driver Preconfiguration 19
 - print 17
 - viewing 16
- User Name 223

V

- version numbers
 - print drivers 26

W

Web Jetadmin

- configuration plugin 31
- downloading 55

Web sites

- download software 8
- firmware download 276
- Internet Services options,
Services tab 173, 232
- other OS support links 8
- support links 24

What's this?

- help 187

Windows operating systems

- Add Printer installation 72
- CD, print system 22
- default printer, setting 114
- Enterprise AutoConfiguration
support 28
- fonts supported 56
- installing printing-system
software 72
- PS emulation fonts
supported 58

Windows OS

- direct printing, FTP 290
- direct printing, local port 292
- direct printing, networks 293
- directory structure, software
CD 9
- driver versions 26
- HP Driver Preconfiguration
support 32
- HP PCL 6 Print Driver
features 117
- HP PS Universal Print Driver
and PCL 5 Universal Print
Driver features 183
- LPR commands 293
- Point and Print installation 94
- remote firmware update 282
- supported 7

